

**AUTOBIOGRAPHY**

**OF**

**WARREN FOOTE**

**SON OF DAVID FOOTE A DESCENDANT OF**

**NATHANIEL FOOTE THE SETTLER**

**WHO CAME FROM ENGLAND ABOUT 1633 AND**

**WAS ONE OF THE FIRST SETTLERS OF WETHERSFIELD**

**CONNECTICUT**

**VOL. 1**  
**AUGUST 10, 1817**  
**TO**  
**DEC. 31, 1879**

## CHAPTER 1

I was **born the 10th day of August 1817** in the town of **Dryden Tompkins County State of New-York**; and am the eleventh child and third son of David and Irene Foote. My genealogy as far as known is as follows; beginning with my Father and Mother:

## Where Born

Names	When Born	Town	County	State	When Died	No. in Foote Genealogy	No. in Record of Baptism for the Dead
David Foote	7 Aug. 1768	Harwinton	Litchfield	Conn.	22 Aug. 1845	2160	Baptized Nov. 1833 at Montabella Hancock Co. Ill, Buried in Nauvoo
Son of							
Ebenezer Foote	21 May 1740	Branford	New Haven	Conn.	June 1778	1994	5
Son of							
Moses Foote	13 Jan. 1702	Branford	New Haven	Conn.	Feb. 1770	1916	4
Son of							
Nathaniel Foote	13 Apr. 1660	New Haven	New Haven	Conn.	1714	1904	3
Son of							
Robert Foote	1629		Old England		1681	2	2
Son of							
Nathaniel Foote	1593		Old England		1644	0	1
<b>On My Mother's Side</b>							
Irene Lane	2 Nov. 1774	Chesterfield		Mass.	5th March 1846		Baptized 28 Feb. 1846 (Hancock Co. Ill. Buried in Nauvoo.)
Daughter of							
Nathan Lane	20 Mar. 1750			Mass.	4th March 1817		91
Son of							
Ebenezer Lane	1712			Mass.	1791		
Son of							
Samuel Lane	16 Mar. 1678	Hingham			7 Dec. 1725		
Son of							
John Lane					23 Nov. 1712		
Son of							
George Lane		Dorchester	Old England				
Son of							
William Lane who came from Dorchester England and Settled in Dorchester Mass 1654							

\*Nathaniel Foote came from England. But in what year he arrived in this country is not known. The first mention of his name is found in the Records of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay in 1633 when he took the oath of freeman. The first settled at Waterfown Afterwards was one of the pioneers of Weathersfield Conn.

+Wm Lane came from Dorchester England with his adult family and settled in Dorchester Mass. A.D. 1635.

In my infancy I took a severe cold which settled on my lungs and a severe attack of the lung fever was the consequence. **My lungs ever since have been weak.**

I was of a sober turn of mind and often prayed to God in secret, I learned all the branches of education as taught in the Common Schools in that day. I read the Bible a great deal and was very fond of reading histories.

P. 4

Some time about the month of **Feb. 1830** my Father borrowed a Book of Mormon (which went by the name of Golden Bible) which I read through. I, like my Father believed it to be a true record. My Mother and two youngest Sisters being members of the Presbyterian Church, I was sent to the Sunday school taught by that church. I had to learn ten verses in the New Testament and repeat them every Sabbath. Our teacher would comment on these verses and try to explain them to us. His comments were never very satisfactory to me. I read in the gospels about the great miracles that were performed by Jesus and his disciples, and wondered why the same miracles were not wrought in our day.

My health being very poor many thought that I would not live to manhood. I often prayed to the Lord in secret to spare me life that I might one day become a preacher of the gospel. I could not believe in the gospel as taught by any of the sects. I often went to the Methodist revival meetings to see them jump and hear them shout and sing, and when they all got to praying, shouting and singing at once it was fun to me to hear them, I could not see any thing in such proceedings, like the gospel as taught by the ancient apostles of Christ. I read in their teachings that God was not the author of confusion, also that the house of God is the house of order etc.

In the year **1831** my Father sold his place in Dryden, and in **March 1832** moved with his family to Greenwood Steuben Co. New York distant one hundred miles from Dryden. After we came to this place my health was much better and I got able to do considerable work.

In the spring of **1833** I borrowed a Book of Mormon, of Uncle Josiah Richardson, and read it through. I had by this time read the Bible three times through by course, and could bring almost any passage of scripture to my mind. In the fall of the same year two men by the name of Landon and Orton who professed to be elders of the Church of Latter Day Saints, came to my Father's house. I paid strict attention to their conversation with Father, -setting forth the principles of the gospel as taught by the Latter Day Saints. Being familiar with the scriptures, I saw at once that these principles accorded with those taught by Christ and his apostles. On the following Sunday, Landon preached in our school house. While on the road to this meeting I had very serious reflections on the principles of the gospel. I believed that I was going to hear the truth from these men. Landon's subject was the gathering of Israel in the last days. He seemed to have the prophecies of Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel and other prophets; all on his tongue's end, and proved conclusively that the children of Israel would be gathered back to the land of their fore fathers in the last days. He said nothing about the first principles of the gospel.

P. 5

On their departure they invited Father and some others to visit them at Geneseo Livingston County, distant from Greenwood 40 miles. In November Father and three of the neighbors went to Geneseo to learn more as taught by the Latter Day Saints.

On arriving there, they found that Landon and Orton and several others had been excommunicated from the branch of the church at Geneseo; and elder John Murdock was presiding there instead of Landon. Landon and others had been cut off from the church for rejecting the vision concerning the three glories etc., as recorded in the Book of Doctrine and Covenants. After being further instructed in the first principles of the gospel, Father was baptized, and procuring a Book of Mormon returned home.

During the following winter I made the Bible and Book of Mormon my particular study; I could now begin to understand the words of the prophets with regard to Israel and the setting up of the Kingdom of God in the last days, and the preparatory work for the coming of our Saviour. I could begin to comprehend these things in a very small degree.

In the Spring of **1834** Elders John Murdock, and Orson Pratt, came to my Father's house, and taught the principles of the gospel more perfectly. In the evening after their arrival Elder Murdock gave a very interesting account of the peculiar manners and customs of the Missourians, which made a great deal of laughter amongst us, young folks; and I remember that Elder Pratt in his evening prayer prayed the Lord to forgive us for our much laughter. They preached a few times, and baptized one or two (who afterward apostatized) and then went on their journey.

About **Feb. 1835**, Elders John Gould, and-Babcock came to Greenwood, and preached a short time. My Father having been ordained an Elder had been preaching some during the winter, and some were believing. Elder Gould baptized a few, and a branch of the church was organized, and Father was appointed Presiding Elder. They now held regular meetings, which I generally attended.

My brothers David and George attended occasionally but George soon became a convert to Methodism, and joined that sect. He became bitterly opposed to the Latter Day Saints, believing all the lies about Joseph Smith which were put in circulation by the ministers of his church. My brother-in-law who lived within a few rods of Father's house belonged to the

Methodist and the Circuit preachers generally put up with him. I have repeatedly heard one of them tell the stories then in circulation about Joe Smith, one especially with regard to his attempt to walk on the water, which story ran about like this "On a certain occasion, J. Smith proclaimed that he would perform a miracle the next Sabbath, by walking on the water. Accordingly he went to work and fixed some planks on some posts, just under the water of a pond. After all things were arranged, some fellows went in the night, and sawed his plank nearly in two. When Sunday came a multitude

**P. 6** came to gather to witness the miracle. When the hour appointed arrived, "Joe Smith" walked boldly into the water, and on reaching the middle of his last plank, down he went, and came nearly being drowned, before he could be got out." I have heard that Methodist Priest relate that story to my brother-in-law, and Sister, and chuckle over it, as though it was a splendid joke on "Joe Smith," and that story was sufficient to burst up "Mormonism." I could relate other stories, but this will serve for a sample; to show what foolish lies the first members of the church had to contend with.

My brother-in-law, and Sister, and brother George professed to believe these lies, for surely their pious "ministers could not lie." My bother David had served his time learning the cabinet trade in Dryden, and when Father moved to Greenwood, he came as far as Bath, the county seat of Steuben Co. and worked at journeyman work. Here he became acquainted with Mary Bidwell whom he married. He soon after came to Greenwood and set up his trade. George and I worked in the shop with him. After George joined the Methodist he would sometimes get to talking to me about the "Mormons," as they were called, rehearsing some of the lies he had heard. I would then quote scripture from the bible and prove to him the truth of "Mormonism," and by comparing Methodism with the gospel, as preached by the ancient apostles, showed to him the inconsistencies, and foolishness of the creed of his church. He would sometimes get almost fighting mad. I had a great deal the advantage of him for I had studied the scriptures a great deal, but he had but little knowledge of what was in the bible, having never read it much. Previous to his joining the Methodist he had cared very little about any book. During our arguments, David would sit and laugh, when he saw how nicely I would confound George with the scripture. At that time he cared nothing for religion of any kind. I was always a particular favorite of his.

During the **summer of 1835**, several elders visited Greenwood, among whom was George A. Smith. The branch now numbered about twenty members, among whom were my Sisters Almira and Clarissa. Not being able to labor much I spent a good portion of my time reading the Bible, Book of Mormon, and Doctrine & Covenants. I was fully satisfied that the doctrine taught by the Latter Day Saints was in very deed the gospel of Christ. I prayed much in secret, and I believe that I was fully as firm in the faith as any of the members of the church although I had not been baptized. In fact I had never had a doubt from the first time I read the Book of Mormon.

**P. 7  
1837**

The following winter I spent my time in studying grammar and arithmetic at home. I mastered all the sums in Daybell's Arithmetic. In the **spring of 1836**, the most of the Saints in Greenwood removed, some to Kirtland, and some to Missouri. My Father and Sister Almira went to Kirtland. George went to work for a man in Lima Livingston Co. (N.Y.). This left but three of us at home. My Mother, Clarissa, and myself. I spent the summer doing the chores, gardening etc.

Father returned from Kirtland in the fall, and I took him to Livingston County, where he intended to stay during the winter, and brought George home with me. We concluded to go to school this winter and accordingly went to work and got up our winter's wood, and attended strictly to our studies. Father had subscribed for the Messenger and Advocate, printed in Kirtland, and had them sent to this place, by which means we often got intelligence from that place.

Father came home early in the **spring of 1837**, intending to visit Kirtland again. Being anxious to see that country, and especially the prophet Joseph Smith I concluded to go with him. My brothers David and George, believing that they could find a better country than Greenwood, concluded to go and look at Michigan, and prepared to accompany us as far as we went. There were four other persons who were going west, who joined with us, in hiring a man to take us to Buffalo. I will here say, that after the school closed to which George and I went, the people wished to continue it a month longer, so they hired me to teach it, by which means I obtained money to bear my expenses on this journey.

**On the 8th day of May 1837** we started on our journey in a snow storm which continued until about ten o'clock. It then cleared up and was very fine. We traveled 31 miles and staid over night at K. Nous. Tavern, near Danville, Livingston County. The next day it rained. We crossed the Geneseo river at Jones' Bridge and staid over night in the town of Perry.

I will now copy from my journal-kept during the journey.

**10th** We went westward through Wales Center, and from thence to Aurora where we staid over night. This region looks like a poor country.

**11th** At this place we heard that the ice was not out of the lake at Buffalo, and on learning that there was a steamboat

**P. 8**  
**1837** 16 miles above the mouth of Cataraugus Creek, we turned our course for that place, where we arrived about six o'clock, and got on board of the steamer Michigan. It is a very large and handsome boat. There are about 400 passengers aboard. About nine o'clock they weighed anchor and started for Detroit. When entering the harbor of Dunkirk, they ran on a rock (about ten o'clock at night) and stuck fast and did not get off until one o'clock in the morning. They ran into the harbor, and stopped three hours.

**12th** Left Dunkirk at four A.M. and arrived at Fairport at 8 P.M. Here our company all landed and put up at the tavern over night.

**13th** The rest of our company being somewhat anxious to see the Prophet Joseph, and the Temple, concluded to accompany Father, and myself to Kirtland. We hired a man to take us to that place for \$5.00—distant 12 miles. We arrived there about noon.

In the afternoon **we went into the Temple, and saw the mummies and the records which were found with them** (we went to the prophet's house to see him. This is **the first I saw him**, and shook hands with him.). Joseph Smith Sen. explained them to us, and said the records were the writings of Abraham & Joseph, Jacob's son. Some of the writing was in black, and some in red. He said that the writing in red, was pertaining to the Priesthood. We were also shown through the Temple.

I stayed over night at Lyman Johnson's, where I found my Sister Almira. She was working for Mrs. Johnson. I was glad to find her enjoying a good degree of health, as she had not been able to do but little for several years previous to leaving Greenwood. Oh how pleasant it is to meet with our kindred in distant lands, and among strangers. It cheers our hearts, and brings vividly to mind the pleasant associations, of our childhood, while under the parental roof.

**14th** I felt quite unwell this morning, which made me think some of home. I took leave of my brothers, who continued their journey to Michigan. In the afternoon I went to the Temple, to meeting, and heard Hiram Smith preach. After meeting, Father, and I went home with Uncle Josiah Richardson, who lives about five miles from Kirtland.

**15th** We returned to Kirtland. It rained all day. I feel very homesick this afternoon. I stayed over night with my Sister at L. Johnson's.

**16th** I felt sick at my stomach this morning. In the afternoon I tried to get employment, but could not. Times were very dull, and there was but little building going on. The **Kirtland Bank** was going down which made it still worse. Several were willing to hire if they could pay in those notes. I found that they were worth but little, and was getting more worthless every day. Father and I went to Elihu Allen's and stayed over night. I will here say that after my Sister Laura

died in Dryden, my brother-in-law Elihu Allen married my cousin Lowly Clauson daughter of my Father's Sister Lowly by her first husband Ebenezer Clauson. They joined the church in Greenwood.

**P. 9**  
**1837**

**17th** I went down to the village, and succeeded in getting work for 1-1/2 days on the frame of a house, of Mr. Burgess. We finished the frame and raised it.

**19th** I made a bargain with one Beaman to work on a house, weather boarding it.

**20th** I commenced my job dressing up weather boarding. It being Saturday the other workmen quit work at noon, but I continued on. About three o'clock my brother David came in where I was at work. I was very much astonished to see him. He informed me, that when he and George arrived at Detroit, he took sick. After he had recovered so as to get around a little and feeling that there would be no prospect of being able to do any thing soon, he concluded to return home, while he had the means to do so. He wanted me to accompany him, which I was very willing to do, as it agreed very much with my feelings; and I had wished myself home many a time. His health was still very poor, and I could not think of his going alone.

**21st** We went to meeting and **heard Sidney Rigdon preach**. After meeting we went home with Uncle Josiah Richardson.

**22nd** We returned to Kirtland and prepared to return home.

**23rd** We took leave of Father, and took passage in an extra stage for Fairport, our Sister Almira accompanying us to that place. Here we found the steamer "Uncle Sam" bound for Buffalo. We bid adieu to our Sister, and went on board, and left Fairport about two o'clock P.M. As we steamed out of the harbor, we met a steamer going in, which was also bound for Buffalo. As the ice in Lake Erie was just breaking up at Buffalo, "Uncle Sam" wanted to be the first boat of the season to reach that place, so the two boats concluded to have a race for it, but our boat kept about the same distance ahead, for we met them going in to every harbor along the lake, as we were going out.

**24th** There was not a ripple on the lake this morning. The sky was clear and the sun seemed to rise out of the placid waters. On nearing Buffalo we met a great many vessels, which had been icebound through the winter, starting out on their first trip. We landed at Buffalo thirty minutes past eleven A.M. We had a beautiful passage.

We immediately took passage aboard the canal boat "Thomas Jefferson" for Montezuma on the Erie Canal. From this place we went up the Cayuga canal to Geneva, and from thence by stage to Bath where we stayed over night with David's father-in-law.

**P. 10**  
**1837** **29th** Bath is 30 miles from Greenwood. We started out on foot this morning. The weather is very warm and our health poor, and not being accustomed to walking it fatigued us very much. We traveled 20 miles, and stayed over night at Bennett's tavern on the Canisteo river.

**30th** David was quite unwell this morning—we walked three miles and he was obliged to stop. We were now within seven miles of home, David stopped with one of our acquaintances. I got home about noon. Our folks were much surprised to see me return alone. I got Wm. Ferguson to go after David with a wagon. He returned towards night—David was some better than he was when I left him in the morning but his health continued very poor nearly all summer. My health was very poor also—did but little work during the summer.

Father came home about the last of August and we concluded that we would move to Ohio. My brother David and brother-in-law William Ferguson came to the same conclusion, and we all set about making preparation to move. After we had sold out and fitted up a team, Father took David, and a load of our household goods to Buffalo, to go by water to Fairport. On his return we were ready for the journey.

**Oct. 5th 1837** This is the day that we had set to start on our journey. It began to rain in the morning, and continued until about the middle of the afternoon, when we started and drove five miles and stopped at Mr. Krusen's tavern for the night. Many of our old neighbors assembled to give us the parting hand when we started.

**6th** We were in fine spirits this morning and after breakfast started on our journey. We had a very rough road. We passed through the village of Andover, and Wellsville. We traveled 27 miles and put up for the night in Philipsburgh. Our bill today for feed lodging etc. was \$1.12.

**7th** Went down the Genesee river about 14 miles, and then turned towards Rushford, where we arrived about sundown. Traveled 20 miles—Bill today \$2.00

**8th** Rushford is a fine town situated in a very good country. In the afternoon we passed over a rough country, and had very bad roads until we came to Fredonia; here we found a level country and fine roads. We stayed over night at Crosby's tavern on Cataaugus Creek it being 23 miles from Rushford. We paid out today \$1.22.

**9th** Today we found the country very hilly until we came to Springville. Here we took the north road to Lodi, and found it very muddy. We traveled 21 miles and stopped within two miles of Lodi. Bill today \$1.81

**P. 11**  
**1837** **10th** Passed through Lodi and after crossing Cataaugus Creek we traveled over some very high land, from which we could see Lake Erie far away to the Northwest. We came to what is called the "Lake Road" a few miles east of Fredonia. It is a beautiful road. We stayed over night in the village of Fredonia. Traveled today 25 miles and paid out for feed lodging, etc. \$3.00.

**11th** Fredonia is quite a large village and is situated on a small stream which empties into Lake Erie to Dunkirk. We passed through a number of small villages today. Apples, and peaches, are plentiful. We traveled 23 miles, and put up in the town of Ripley, the last town in the State of New York (Bill \$2.64).

**12th** Passed into the State of Pennsylvania, and soon came to Northeast. It being very rainy we traveled 15 miles only, and stopped at Stillman's Tavern. Bill today \$2.08.

**13th** It is quite cool this morning, and a few flakes of snow is falling. William, and I went down to the town of Erie, while the rest went on with the team. There were two steamboats at the docks, the "Sandusky", and the "New England". We went on board the Sandusky-it is a vary large, and handsome boat-heavily laden, and bound for Detroit. The village of Erie contains some large, and handsome buildings. We overtook our team after some 5 or 6 miles travel. Traveled today 21 miles Payed out \$2.67.

**14th** We traveled 22 miles-passed through Conneaut, a very pleasant village on the west side of Conneaut river. We stayed over night at the American Hotel, a new tavern whose sign had been raised that day. Our expences today were \$2.38.

**15th** Passed through Ashtabula, situated on a river by the same name, and county seat of Ashtabula Co. Ohio. After traveling 24 miles we stopped over night in Centerville. Our bill today is \$1.56.

**16th** We arrived at Painesville about noon, where we found David, who came with the goods by water. He was to work for a Mr. Johnson and had rented a house for his family, which we left with him. This is a very pleasant place, situated on the west side of Grand river, which empties into Lake Eric at Fairport and forms one of the best harbors along the lake. We arrived at **Kirtland** about sundown and stayed over night at Johnson's tavern. Traveled 21 miles. Bill \$2.75

**17th** Kirtland is situated on a branch of Chagrin river nine miles from Painesville. It is a rough broken country. The buildings are generally small, and there is but one that can be called handsome that is the **Temple**. It is built of stone with a hard finish on the outside it contains two rooms for worship one above the other, and it is intended to have both finished in the same stile. Besides these there are some: rooms in the attic for schools etc., we went from this place to Chester, (which place joins Kirtland on the south,) where we intended to stop for the winter; but we got disappointed in getting the house that Father had engaged for us before he went to Greenwood. Rodman Clark a member of the church of Latter Day Saints offered us a room in his house until we could find a place. We accepted of the offer.

**P. 12** **18th** Went to Kirtland and bought some provision.  
**1837**

**19th** I started for Fairport after our goods which we sent by water. I got there about three o'clock P.M. and loaded up and returned to Painesville and stayed over night with my brother David, who is doing "journeyman work", at the cabinet trade, and is doing very well

**20th** I arrived at Chester about sundown, and spent on the trip \$2.46.

**23rd** We obtained an Empty house in the southeast corner of Chester township of Mr. Stephen Markham, and moved into it.

**30th** Wm. Ferguson, and myself, concluded that we would take a trip south to see the country, and to get a job of work if we could. Mr. Markham engaged us to move a woman by the name of Miner as far as the town of Nelson Portage County.

**31st** We started on our trip about eight o'clock A.M. and had a very bad road until we got to the center of Newbury. It is a new country through this region, and the roads are not much worked. At noon we stopped at the little village of Burton, and fed ourselves and team. This village is built on very high land, from which we could see a long distance in every direction, and reminded me of the saying of the Saviour, "A city set on a hill cannot be hid." At this place we turned south, and crossed the Cuyahoga river, a very curious stream at this place. It spreads over a large surface of ground and looks more like a swamp than a river, but the bottom is hard and gravelly. We passed through the town of Parkman, the southeast corner town of Geauga County, and arrived in Nelson, Portage County, the place of Mrs. Miners destination, about Eight o'clock at night.

**Nov. 1st** We unloaded Mrs. Miners goods, and started on our journey. Nelson is an older town than any we passed through yesterday, there being large orchards, and a great many cornfield. We passed Garrettsville in the town of Freedom. At this place we took the road to Kevenna. The land here is more level and wet and has the appearance of a poor country. We drove to Shalersville and stopped to feed.

We had considerable difficulty in paying our bill which was 12-1/2 cents. I had no money smaller than a five dollar bill. The Landlady said that she could not change it, so I went to a store and got it changed. I offered a one dollar to her and she said that she could not change that. I told her that, that was the smallest change I had. "Well" said she "I cannot change it, for I have changed so much today that it has taken all the small change I have." She then turned to go into another room,

when a negro man came in to pay his bill which was the same as ours. He offered her a five dollar bill on some eastern bank. The old lady would not have that at all. He told her that he would be back in a day or two, and would call and pay her then. She did not like to do it, "for@ said she Aa great many had promised the same thing and that was the last I have seen of them." But at last she concluded to trust him.

**P. 13**  
**1837**

I then went to the store again to see if I could get small change for the one dollar bill but could not. William told her that if she could not change it, we could not pay her, and we must be going, for we had spent a great deal of time with her already. She told him to bring in the dollar bill. I went in with it, when she gave me the change very readily. The fact was she did not want paper money at all, but wanted silver.

We again pursued our journey. The land becomes dryer, and more gravelly. We passed through Revenna, the county seat of Portage county. It is quite a village. From this place we turned west toward Franklin. The land is quite rolling here. Franklin is a very handsome place situated on the Cuyahoga river, and has some large flouring mills. We arrived at the Center of Talmage, in the evening where we stayed over night. William was taken sick in the night with the cramp colic which turned to vomiting and purging. I gave him some brandy and loaf sugar after which he soon went to sleep, and rested the remainder of the night.

**Nov. 2nd** William is much better this morning. We arose very early and pursued our journey. Went through Middlebury, and a very fine region of country. We took a wrong road which led us south through a new country the timber consisting of oak shrubs and sassafras. The road running through the woods continually, made it lonesome traveling. The inhabitants are chiefly Dutch, and have built their houses some distance from the road, as we could see an opening in the woods occasionally. Their houses, and barns are chiefly built of logs, and we observed, as a general thing, a large pile of wheat straw about their barns, showing that the raising of wheat was the principal pursuit of the farmer.

While traveling through this country we enquired of a Dutch woman whom we saw washing clothes outside of the house, if we were on the right road to New Portage. She answered, "No!", appearing to be quite angry. We asked her if there was not a road on ahead that turned off towards New Portage. "No" she said "if you want to go to New Portage you will have to go back about a mile, and take another road". I told William that we would not go back, but "go ahead" and if we came to a road that turned in the direction of New Portage, we would take it. We drove on and had went not more than fifty rods, when we came to a road that turned in the right direction. We took it and soon came to a guide board directing us to New Portage.

When we arrived there, I was somewhat disappointed. I had expected to find a large town from what I had heard of it, but we only found it a mere stopping place for canal boats on the Ohio, and Cleveland Canal. It contained two or three storehouses and a tavern.

**P. 14**  
**1837** We now took the road to Wooster, Wayne Co. And found it very muddy and rough.

After traveling on this road about two miles we met two Dutch women. William asked them how far it was to a tavern. The youngest one replied, that it was about two miles. The old lady not being able to understand English asked the other what we said. On being told by her, she exclaimed in a very simple, honest, way "Ho, ho, it's not much more as a mile."

We stopped at the tavern, and fed our team, and as we had not been able to get work any place yet, we concluded to turn our course homewards. But a man driving up soon after we did, who was going to Knox County wished us to go on with him. He said that he had traveled a great ways alone. He was from Vermont.

We finally concluded to go on that afternoon at any rate, and see if we would meet with any better success in getting work. We went as far as Chipeway river, and put up for the night. During the evening we made up our minds to return home. On conversing with the Landlord, we found that Mr. Saunders had staid there the night previous. He left Greenwood a few days before we did. He was moving to Delaware County, about 100 miles distant from this place The inhabitants through this region are mostly Pennsylvania Dutch, and mostly large farmers. Nearly all of them had good barns.

**3rd** We turned homewards this morning, and retraced our steps as far as New Portage. Here we took a shorter route from the one we came. The road today was muddy and rough. We passed through Ackron about noon, and found it to be considerable of a place, situated on the Ohio State Canal, and almost surrounded with very curious hills. In going from this place to Cuyahoga Falls the road runs between two hills and very winding, and narrow, making it very difficult for wagons to pass each other. On arriving at Cuyahoga Falls, we stopped and fed our team. It is quite a place, and has some large flouring mills. After resting an hour, we continued our journey, and passed through Hudson, a fine place in a beautiful, and highly cultivated country. We stopped for the night at Streetsborough. Here they were making cider. We got some straws, and sucked from the barrel.

**4th** Passed through Aurora, then through Bainbridge, and from thence to Rupel where we fed our team. This is a new country through these towns. Got home at 4 P.M. (Traveled 140 miles).

**13th** Father, and I went to Mentor, to get a job husking corn. We worked 1-1/2 days and was obliged to quit on account of a snowstorm. We returned home the 15. Earned 3 3/4 bushels corn.

**Dec. 11th** Went to Painesville with Father and Clarissa, to see David and returned the 12th.

**31st** this closes the year of 1837. I have traveled this year 1600 miles.

## CHAPTER 2

**P. 15**

**1838 Jan. 1st 1838** The sun arose in a cloudless sky this beautiful morning sending forth its glorious rays of light and heat making all nature rejoice in the ushering in of a new year. I cannot but reflect upon the great changes which are yearly taking place with the inhabitants of this earth-what vast multitudes are daily ending their probation, while others are just beginning.

Thousands, who on last New Year's day, rejoiced and made merry in the dance were looking forward with fond anticipation, to behold this day. Where are they? Alas! disease and death has preyed upon them, and they are now mouldering beneath the cold clods, and naught remains of them on earth except in the memories of their kindred and friends.

What number are now this day dreaming, of some great exploit they shall have performed before the close of this year. The speculator to the heaps of gold he shall have hoarded up, the politician to the number of votes added to his party, the sectarian priest to the number of proselytes he has made to his creed, the servant of God to the success he shall have in declaring the gospel to the inhabitants of the earth, and in fact, there are none, but what have some anticipated object in view, but before the close of the year, how many of them will have gone the way of all the earth,-fallen through disease, the ravages of war, or by some fatal accident.

O time! Thou which hast witnessed the rise and fall of mighty nations, and empires, and seen the heart rending scenes of many generations, not only collectively but individually yea thou hast witnessed many bitter lamentations, and groanings, and some of them thou hast borne on thy wings, to the ears of this generation, but the millionth part thou hast not revealed.

O time! Thou, which art continually bringing thousands to their end, knowest thou not that thy end draweth nigh also? But O, what dreadful scenes thou hast yet to witness before thy end cometh,-scenes far more dreadful than thou hast hitherto beheld, for the prophets saith, "The great day of the Lord cometh cruel both with wrath and fierce anger to lay the land desolate etc.

It continued very pleasant throughout the day. I spent the most of the day in writing a letter for my Sister Clarissa to send to Greenwood. My brother David came to our house about sundown, and staid over night.

**2nd** David wished me to go home with him and stay awhile. I accordingly went. We arrived at his house in Painesville about dusk.

**5th** I have spent my time in reading newspapers and going about town. David concluded to leave this place, and went to Willoughby, to get a job of work. He had good success and is now preparing to move there.

**P. 16  
1838**

**6th** I wrote a letter to my brother George, who is in Ypsilanti, Michigan.

**7th** David, and I went to Fairport on foot. It was a very windy day, and I was tired enough when we got back. We went to see how the lake looked in a strong wind.

**8th** I went with David, and his family to Willoughby. It is a small village situated on the west side of Chagrin river, Cuyahoga County, ten miles southwest of Painesville, and 20 miles from Cleveland.

**9th** I started for home, where I arrived between two and three o'clock very much fatigued. The distance is 12 miles. I walked it on foot.

**12th** I went down to the Chair Factory in Kirtland, to see if I could get a job painting chairs, but I could not, so I went on to Willoughby and staid over night with David. I rode on horseback. I was very sick the most of the night, with a severe pain in my side, and shoulder. David and his wife succeeded in getting me into a profuse sweat, which relieved me before morning so that I got some sleep.

**13th** The pains have left me, and I concluded to return home, although David wanted me to stay another day, for fear that I was not able to ride home. But I felt inclined to go, as I was sure that Father and Mother would be worrying about me, not knowing where I was. I got home about two P.M. and did not feel any the worse for the ride.

**16th** Wm. Ferguson sent me word this morning, that the people in the northwest corner of this township wanted a school teacher, to teach one and an half months. I went up to Chester Center and passed an examination as the law requires, and got my certificate, and then went down to the district which is five miles from the Center. The trustees called a school meeting at night. I found them somewhat divided. The teacher who was then teaching was a drinking man, and appeared

very deficient in education. A few were for letting him teach his time out, but the majority were for dismissing him if they could agree with me in my wages. I agreed to teach for \$11.00 per month and my board, so the old teacher was turned out, -much against his will though,

**17th** I commenced my school today, and got along very well.

**March 2nd** From the 17th of Jan to this date I was engaged in my school. I had no difficulty with the schollars and I think gave general satisfaction.

**7th** I received a letter from my brother-in-law, Hiram McLean which brought the sad news of the death of my Sister **Melinda**. (H. McL. was still living in Dryden N.Y.) She **died** of the consumption on the **20th of Feb. 1837**.

**26th** I have been busily employed with Father in making maple sugar.

**P. 17** Today I went over to get my money for teaching school. Got \$5.21

1838

**27th** I went to Willoughby to see David. There is a Medical Institute in this place. It is now vacation, and David and I went into it to see the inside. We went into the dissecting room-saw the table on which the bodies were laid for dissecting. There were small fragments of flesh still sticking to it, which had a terrible stench. The seats were raised so that all the students could witness the dissection. The stink was so bad that we soon left the room. There were stories in circulation about the students robing the graveyard in Willoughby which no doubt was more or less true. I returned home the 29<sup>th</sup>.

**Apr. 1st** It thundered off at a distance all night and this morning it commenced thundering over head, and began to snow. It fell about three inches deep.

**16th** I went to a Mr. Judson's and bought a pair of boots for which I paid \$1.75.

**19th** It snowed about all day and was very cold and blustering.

**20th** It still continues cold. Snow is about three inches deep,

**24th** We finished making sugar. The weather is getting some warmer.

**26th** I went to get the balance of my pay for teaching school Got 88 cts.

**28th** My Brother George arrived from Michigan, on a visit.

**29th** I went to Chester Center with George to meeting. Mr. Wurrello a Methodist minister preached. Not very interesting to me.

**May 1st** George started for his home in Michigan. I went with him to Willoughby, and staid over night with David. I will here say - that David, and his wife had both embraced methodism in Willoughby. Although my brothers had had the gospel plainly taught to them, they rejected it, and took up with sectarianism, which was a cause of much sorrow to my Father. George had persuaded David to move to Michigan this spring, and another great cause of sorrow was that my Mother had concluded to go with him, instead of going to Missouri with Father-this caused me to feel very sorrowful also. She would not embrace the gospel.

**2nd** I purchased a fur hat-price \$4.00 and a palm leaf hat-37-1/2 cts., & returned home.

**7th** I went after the rest of my money-got \$1.50 and went on to David's.

**8th** I traded some and returned home. Snowed some-roads muddy.

**9th** Snowed again this morning and continues wet and cold.

**10th** Cleared off very pleasant. In the afternoon I went and got the remainder of my money. I had earned it again in running after it.

**20th** I went to Willoughby in company with my nephew, Harrison Ferguson to bid by Mother goodbye. She had gone to David's to go with him to Michigan as has been stated. It makes me feel very sad, as I never expect to see her again in the flesh. O that my Mother, and Brothers and Sisters, could see as I see, and understand the scriptures as I do, that we might not be separated, but journey together in this probation-for I most assuredly believe the Book of Mormon to be authentic, and that Joseph Smith is a prophet of God, although I have not yet been baptized.

**P. 18**

**1838**

But we must all act upon our own agency. They choose to reject the gospel, and go to Michigan, but I choose to go with my Father to Missouri where God has commanded his people to gather together to serve him. I returned home in the afternoon, very thoughtful.

**22nd** We began to pack up some of our goods, preparing to start for Missouri.

**25th** Today we finished our preparations for our journey. I went to Chester Center to bid farewell to my brother-in-law William Ferguson and Sister Irene, and their two children, Louisa, and Harrison. This was another sad parting. A parting to meet no more on earth.

**26th** All being in readiness we started for far off Missouri about noon. Father's family now consists of My Sister Almira, myself and Sister Clarissa, and her husband George Gates. They were married I think in March or April. There are three other families in company with us, namely, Stephen Markham, Abel Lamb, and Jefferson Dimick. We have one team apiece, and we are all dependent on S. Markham for expenses, and teams.

We met with some accidents this afternoon. In going up a little hill. Elder Lamb's horses stopped, and let the wagon run backward off a dugway and upset the wagon, with his wife, and four children. She struck on a fence, and hurt her back, but not seriously. I was walking a short distance behind the wagon when the accident occurred. We soon got it righted up again, and had not gone far before the kingbolt of another wagon broke. They fixed it so as to get as far as Russell Center, where they got it mended. We drove a mile south of the village, and pitched our tents, and put on our wagon covers. Mr. Markham had some trouble with some fellows, who said that he owed them, but the truth is, they are persecuting him because he is a "Mormon".

Many who left Kirtland had to steal away privately because of persecution. Their persecutors would swear out writs of attachments, and follow them, and attach their teams or goods, they would then have to stop and have a trial or pay an unjust demand; and sometimes both. Samuel Smith, a brother of the Prophet Joseph, had to secrete himself at Fathers house a short time, to evade his pursuers. Mr. Markham put \$116.00 into my hands for safe keeping, until he could get rid of his persecutors.

**P. 19** **27th** I slept last night in a wagon for the first time, and found it much more comfortable, than I had expected. About midnight we were aroused by the footsteps of horses and people talking. We found that it was a constable with a man

**1838** who said that Markham owed him. Mr. Markham had went to Kirtland the evening previous, to arrange some business, therefore they levied on some property, but as soon as Markham returned they settled it so that they went away satisfied.

It rained the most of the day. We did not travel any today but waited for more families from Kirtland, who were going to join us in our journey.

**28th** It rained the most of the night, and is quite cold this morning. We started on again about ten o'clock and drove as far as Streetsborough and stopped at what is called a "Mormon tavern ". There we were joined by the company from Kirtland, who had five teams. We now numbered 58 souls.

**29th** This morning the company organized and chose three persons to preside over spiritual matters, and appointed S. Markham Commissary. They made an axeltree and fixed up some of their wagons. We started out about one o'clock and traveled twelve miles and camped in the woods, one mile from Cuyahoga Falls. This place is 36 miles from Chester Center.

**30th** Traveled three miles, and broke an axeltree, which hindered a half a day. We then went to Ackron, and unloaded some things to send by water.

**31st** Passed through New Portage, which is 10 miles from Cuyahoga Falls. Soon after passing New Portage a skein of one of the wagons broke, which hindered us three hours. We traveled 14 miles and camped in the town of Chipaway.

**June 1st** We resumed our journey about ten o'clock. The roads are very muddy, and rough. Passed through Wooster, the county seat of Wayne County. It is a considerable place, and has some fine buildings, and is situated in a fertile country, 26 miles from New Portage. Traveled 16 miles.

**2nd** Broke two kingbolts today. We passed through Loudenville towards night, and found it rather difficult to get pasture for our teams. Loudenville is in Richland County, 20 miles from Wooster. It is situated in a rough broken country, but the soil appears to be good. We camped one mile west of this place, after traveling 19 miles.

**3rd** Traveled 11 miles, and camped at the National House 10 miles north of Mt. Vernon. This is a hilly country-timber chiefly oak.

**4th** Went through Amity, Knox County, and then through Mt. Vernon the county seat of Knox Co. It is a handsome place, 42 miles from Wooster. Today we saw corn and potatoes hoed. Wheat looks well. Traveled 20 miles.

**5th** Washed our clothes, and mended wagons. Did not travel any.

**6th** We got started again about noon, and had very rough and muddy roads-broke an axeltree, a skein, and two kingbolts, which hindered us three hours. We only traveled seven miles today.

**P. 20**  
**1838** **7th** We passed through Sunbury, and Galena, Delaware Co. Sunbury is 22 miles from Mt. Vernon. At Galena we crossed the Big Walnut river and went down it a few miles and turned west. The land is very low and wet, and very bad roads. The timber is beach and maple. Traveled 20 miles.

**8th** We got started about noon as usual, and soon passed through Columbus the capital of Ohio. It is a larger place than I had supposed it to be, and is 44 miles from Mt. Vernon, A beautiful country lies to the west of Columbus. Here we came on to the National Road which is McAdamized and very smooth. Traveled 19 miles and camped in a wet place.

**9th** We went through Jefferson, a small village 14 miles west of Columbus. We traveled seven miles today when the spokes of one of Mr. Dort's wagon wheels gave out, and we had to stop for the day. This is rather a poor country-very level and wet, with extensive barrens.

**10th Sunday.** Our horses ran away last night, and it took the most of the forenoon to find them. We have thus far been cooking and eating all together, as one family, which has created much Jealousy, strife and contention. They concluded to reorganize into three messes, or families, to make it more convenient for cooking.

**11th** Today we passed through Lafayette, and a number of small villages in Madison County. There arose a very heavy thunder shower towards night, but by chance we got into an empty house where we staid over night. Traveled 22 miles today.

**12th** Passed Springfield the county seat of Clarke Co. It is a fine place situated in a beautiful country, 43 miles west of Columbus. This appears to be a great grain country. Wheat is heading out. We traveled through Fairfield, Greene Co. 15 miles from Springfield in a southwest course. Traveled 22 miles today.

**13th** We got started about eleven o'clock. In the afternoon we went through Dayton, the county seat of Montgomery Co. It is situated on the east side of the Miami river, 25 miles west of Springfield.

**14th** Today they washed. In company with some others I went a fishing in the Miami river, but caught no fish. This is a beautiful stream, flowing through a rich and fertile country.

**15th** In the afternoon had very rough, and stony roads, which caused the breaking of an axeltree. Traveled 11 miles today.

**16th** Our roads continue very rough. The country here is very level, with rather poor soil, beach, and Maple timber principally. In the afternoon we went through Eaten, the county seat of Prebble Co. 25 miles from Dayton.

**17th** Sunday again. Yesterday we got in company with four more teams from Kirtland. We all stopped in one place for the purpose of holding a meeting. They obtained a private house for the purpose, and Elder Sherwood preached. After meeting, they arranged some of the affairs in our camp. Instead of having three to preside, they chose Mr. David Dort and three to assist him as counselors. As there had been much envying, strife and contention in camp, they thought it best to have a general settling up, and confessions. There were considerable wrangling, but they succeeded in getting things fixed up by twelve o'clock at night.

Not being a member of the church, of course I had nothing to say. I had tried to mind my own business thus far, and not meddle with theirs. But being a disinterested spectator I had many curious reflections. I thought some of them acted like children, in their pouting spells, and could not help to say in my heart, O! the folly and weakness of mankind, how full of selfishness.

**18th** We again resumed our journey, at the late hour of eleven. We crossed the State's line between Ohio, and Indiana, after which we went through New Boston, a small village in Wayne Co. 11 miles west of Eaten. Traveled 14 m.

**19th** Went through Waterloo which is 16 miles from New Boston. After passing through Connersville, the county seat of Fayette Co. we camped for the night. This place is 32 miles from Eaten. Traveled 16 miles,-went very slow, stopping often.

**20th** We met with no accident today. Passed through Rushville, the county seat of Rush Co. It is 16 miles to Connersville. This is a very wet country.

**21st** Traveled 11 miles, and was hindered again about mending wagons.

**22nd** They washed, and we did not travel any. In the afternoon Elder Lamb preached to quite a large, and attentive congregation.

**23rd** We have very bad roads today. We traveled 13 miles, when there came up a very heavy thunder shower. We obtained the privilege of going into a new barn where we staid over night.

**24th** This morning there was a sharp contention in camp among the head ones, some of whom are badly troubled with the "big Head" The lie was given several times, and the company was very near being broken up, but they finally succeeded in settling up their difficulties again, and we resumed our journey. It being Sunday we only traveled four miles, and camped, and held a meeting.

**25th** We came on to the National Road two miles east of Indianapolis. It is very badly cut up into ruts. Indianapolis is the capital of Indiana, and is a town of considerable size, but the houses are generally small, and built of wood. It is situated on the east side of White river, 39 miles from Rushville. The situation is very beautiful, and would admit of a large city. We crossed White river on a beautiful covered bridge. Traveled 17 m.

**26th** They had to make an axletree which hindered us until eleven o'clock. Had very good roads today, and traveled 17 miles. The country here is rather more rolling, and dryer soil, and of a better quality.

**P. 22** **27th** Traveled 16 miles and camped in Putnam county.

**1838**

**28th** Last night we had a shower, which swelled a small creek so that we had to wait about three hours for it to fall, so that we could cross it. We then traveled three miles, and came to Walnut creek, which we had to ferry over. While waiting to be ferried, there came up a black cloud from which hailstones fell of the size of a goose egg but not very plentifully, as the most of the shower went north of us. We traveled 9 miles today.

**29th** We had some showers today. Traveled 16 miles.

**30th** This morning we passed through Terre Haute, situated on the east side of the Wabash river, which is a beautiful stream. The city is built on a beautiful prairie, of exceeding rich soil, and level surface, which presents a beautiful prospect to the eye of the traveler as he comes from the east. It is 71 miles from Indianapolis, and the county seat of Vigo County. We traveled 7 miles today.

**July 1st** In the forenoon they made another axeltree. Today we crossed the State line into Illinois.

I here will make a short extract from a communication written by Sidney Rigdon who had passed through this country a short time previously going to Missouri. "As we passed through Indiana, I observed that there is a much greater uniformity of soil timber and surface than in Ohio. I mean in the parts through which we passed. From the time that we crossed the State line until say within 12 or 15 miles of Terre Haute there is a uniformity of soil timber and surface that amounts to a dull monotony in the eye of the observer. The timber is principally beach and maple. The surface is very flat and the soil not above second quality if it would be considered of that quality. The prices of land on the National Road is astonishing. Take it at any point you will, and you will find the wild land from twenty to fifty dollars per acre while the improved land is from fifty to a hundred according to the situation and improvements." The foregoing I found to be correct. This afternoon we passed through Paris, the county seat of Edgar Co. Ill. It is 20 miles from Terre Haute, and is situated on the east side of a very large prairie, which extends almost as far as the eye can reach. Traveled 16 miles and camped on the prairie.

**2nd** We found some very bad mud holes, one of which some of the horses got down, and we had to take them loose from the wagons and draw them (the wagons) out by hand. Traveled 10 miles and camped.

**3rd** Resumed our journey about eleven o'clock, and about four got across the prairie, and camped. It is about 18 miles across it.

**P. 23** **4th** We had trouble in the camp again. After considerable talking in, tongues, and confessions, it was again settled.  
**1838** 0 the folly and weakness of man. Mr. Markham has been sick, but is now getting better.

**5th** We started early this morning, and crossed Ambro river, on a ferry boat, and soon came to a prairie 17 miles across. We traveled very late at night, and found plenty of mud holes, where we had to double teams.

**6th** We crossed the prairie, and ferried over Kaskaskie river, and came on to another prairie, where we found mud holes worse than ever. Traveled eight miles, and camped on the prairie.

**7th** This prairie is very level and wet and is 14 miles across. We traveled 14 miles and camped in another prairie.

**8th** We had very good roads today. Crossed the prairie, (which is 12 miles wide) and camped in Macon County. Here we saw wheat ripe.

**9th** Washed their clothes. Traveled one mile and camped on a 2 mile prairie.

**10th** We traveled occasionally on the prairie, and in the timber. Here the prairies are rolling, and of a very rich soil. Corn is about five feet high, and the crops are beginning to ripen. Traveled 22 miles.

**11th** This is a fine country. Saw corn today 7 feet high. Traveled 20 miles.

**12th** Today we passed through Springfield, the capital of Illinois. It is a small town situated on the west side of a prairie. The buildings are small, and appear to be old. The village however appears to be improving. They are now building a stone State house. This place is 111 miles from Paris. The surrounding country is quite thickly inhabited.

**13th** Today we traveled 13 miles and stopped to noon. While nooning they heard of a man, who wanted to hire hands to cut his

wheat. The company concluded to stop and work awhile, as they were nearly out of money. The fact is we have been living on mush, and milk for a long time past: It has been mush and milk for breakfast, milk and mush for dinner, and for a change mush and milk for supper. When we commenced eating mush and milk for breakfast, I began to think that they would starve me out, as I could not eat enough to last me one hour, but before we got to this place, I could fill up, so as to stand it first rate. As long as our provision lasted that we started with, we lived splendidly. They had their tea, sugar, ham and eggs etc. Tea I did not use, not having drank any for about three years

**14th** They took some jobs harvesting wheat yesterday, and today we moved up to them, which is three miles from where we camped last night. After some more quarreling in our camp we went to work. They agreed that all the men should work as much as they were able, and the wages should be divided equally amongst them, but before they finished the first job, some of them got **P. 24** dissatisfied, for they found that some did not do half as much as others, who were strong, and able bodied. So after quarreling again, they concluded to pay every one according to what they earned. This broke up the company. Some of them united in small companies to work, and others worked by themselves. Father took some jobs mowing grass, and George Gates, and I worked some together.

On the **25th**, five teams of our company started for Missouri.

**August 13th** Father, G. Gates, and myself, began to prepare to pursue our Journey. Mr. Markham had traded the horses that we had used this far, and got a yoke of oxen for us, which proved to be excellent ones. Mr. Markham, and some others, had some jobs yet to finish, and consequently were not ready to go on.

**14th** We started out alone about ten o'clock. We had one cow with us which we brought from Greenwood, N.Y. and a most excellent one she was, she gave us all the milk we wanted on the road. It seemed rather lonesome traveling, as we had had so much company heretofore. We passed through Jacksonville, which is 6 miles from where we had been to work. It is quite a town situated in a rich, and highly cultivated country, 35 miles west of Springfield. It is the county seat of Morgan Co. We traveled 12 miles, and stopped over night with Mr. Merrick who was on his way to Missouri, but had stopped to recruit. This same man was afterward killed at the Haun's Mill massacre.

**15th** Last night there was a heavy shower, which made the roads very muddy this morning. The land here is rolling, and a very rich soil. We traveled 13 miles, and stopped with one Howard Smith, in the little village of Exeter, who wanted to learn something about "Mormonism". Father preached in his house, to quite a congregation. Some were mad, and some were pleased, some said one thing, and some another. Mr. Smith treated us well.

**16th** This forenoon we crossed the Illinois river, at Philip's ferry. It is a fine stream, three quarters of a mile wide. We passed through Griggsville, a small village 4 miles west of the ferry, and from thence through Pittsfield, the county seat of Pike Co. which is 34 miles from Jacksonville, and 12 from Philips' Ferry. We traveled 19 miles, and camped on a large rolling prairie.

**17th** We passed through Atlas, a small place on the east side of the Mississippi bottom. The road on the bottom was very dim, being overgrown with tall grass. We found several tracks running in various directions. We took the wrong one, **P. 25** and went about a mile out of our way. We turned back, and finally found one which took us to the ferry on the **1838** Mississippi.

The steam ferry boat had just arrived. We soon got on board, and started out at half past two P.M. The river was so high, that they had to go around the lower end of what is called Sny Island. We landed at the small village of Louisiana Mo. a quarter past three o'clock P.M. after a ride of 20 miles on the Mississippi.

This is the mighty river I had read so much about, and always desired to see. It is truly the "Father of Waters". How majestically it flows onward to the mighty deep, and what an immense traffic is caried on upon its broad bosom.

On the Illinois side there is a wide bottom covered with a very coarse rank grass. On the Missouri side there are very high cliffs which in some places being perpendicular, presents a sublime view, from the steamboats passing. Louisiana is 30 miles from Philips' ferry on the Illinois river. We traveled in all 35 miles today.

**18th** We traveled through a very rough, and broken country until we came to a prairie 16 miles from Louisiana, where the land is more rolling. We made 16 miles today.

**19th** The weather is very warm. We traveled five miles, and came to a twelve mile prairie. the flies being very

troublesome, we stoped until five o'clock P.M. and then proceeded onward across the prairie where we arrived about midnight. Traveled 15 miles.

**20th** It continues very warm. We crossed a number of small rolling prairies today destitute of water, but of good soil.

**21st** Passed through Paris, the county seat of Monroe Co. It is a small village, 60 miles west of Louisiana. From this place the country becomes more level. Last night we heard something about some trouble between the "Mormons", and Missouriians, and today we heard that the fuss commenced at an election. They had some difficulty about something and finally resulted in quite a battle in which some were wounded, but none killed. Traveled 16 miles today.

**22nd** The weather continues very warm and dry. Water is very scarce. There is but little that can be got, fit to drink. There does not seem to be any springs in this region, and their wells are mostly cisterns made to catch, and hold rainwater. Today the report is that the troops have been called out against the Mormons, and having a permit from the Governor they were going to take "Joe Smith", and Sidney Rigdon, but they had run away. Traveled 16 miles.

**P. 26**  
**1838** **23rd** We passed through Huntsville, the county seat of Randolph Co. It is a small village, 30 miles west of Paris. The land is very hilly and dry, west of this place, and mostly covered with timber. We traveled 18 miles and camped on a 7 mile prairie, near one Kellogg a "mormon".

Today we heard that they were preparing the big guns up west. We passed a camp of Indians, about sundown. They are the Pottawattamies, about 150 in number, and are moving from the northern part of Illinois to Council Bluffs, at the expence of Government. These are the first wild Indians I have ever seen. They looked terribly degraded to me.

**24th** We crossed the Charlton river which we had to ferry then passed through Keetsville, the county seat of Charlton Co. It is 23 miles from Huntsville. We continue to hear bad reports.

**25th** We went as far as Brunswick, near the mouth of Grand river, which empties into the Missouri; and hearing that the Missouriians were stopping the mormons at Carrolton, we turned our course up Grand river, towards Comton's ferry. This is a very hot day. We traveled 14 miles, and camped on a large prairie.

**26th** We crossed Grand river at Compton's ferry, which is 15 miles from Brunswick, and 25 from Keetsville. Here we came on to a large prairie, of a very rich soil. The weather continues very hot.

**27th** Continued our journey on the prairie in a westerly direction, and found our road to be a very blind one. We crossed some very high ridges, from which we could see miles in every direction with here, and there a grove of timber, like an island in the midst of the ocean. Fifteen miles to the west we could see the Blue Mounds which looked like a range of rough broken hills. We traveled 15 miles and camped on a small creek one mile from the Mounds.

**28th** I went up to the mounds to see what I could discover. The Blue Mounds is a range of rough broken hills running in an easterly direction. West of the Blue, is a mound about 40 feet high containing 8 squire rods of level ground on the summit. It is circular. We spent the most of the day in hunting our road. There had never been but half a dozen wagons through this route, which made but very little impression in the thick prairie grass. We found the track running directly across a main traveled road running north and south. We traveled three miles today.

**P. 27**  
**1838** **29th** We had some trouble to follow the wagon tracks, but finally succeeded in finding our way out, to Whitney's Mill on Shoal Creek. We traveled 13 miles and camped at Mr. Walker's a Mormon. The country from Compton=s ferry, to Whitney=s mill is not inhabited. It is a high rolling prairie. Mr. Walker lives on Shoal Creek, in the southeast corner of Caldwell county, 33 miles from Compton=s ferry, and 30 miles from Farwest, to go the prairie road, and 20 to go up Shoal creek. We got some excellent mellons here.

**30th** I was taken with a diarrhea in the night, and feel very weak this morning.

We took the road up the Creek by Haun's Mill, and arrived at Uncle Josiah Richardson's towards night. He lives 10 miles east of Far West. They were much pleased to see us, and were some what surprised, as they did not know that we were coming. We were pleased to get to our journey's end, although we were very much prospered on the way. We did not meet with any accident on the whole journey, and were well treated passing through Missouri.

The State of Missouri, for about 60 miles west of the Mississippi river is very broken, and generally covered with timber.

From that point west to Grand river, there are a number of prairies, but water is very scarce, and poor. West of Grand river the prairies are very large, and soil very rich. They are rolling, and generally dry. It is a beautiful sight, to view the country from the high ridges. A person can see 15 or 20 miles, and sometimes 30, in every direction, which presents a beautiful green landscape in the summer time dotted here, and there, with shady groves, but in the winter it looks like a dreary waste. These prairies are covered with a coarse grass, which grows from two, to three feet high. Timber grows only along the rivers, and small streams. These streams often rise very high. They rise very suddenly and fall as quick. The banks of shoal creek is from 15 to 20 feet high, with the same kind of soil from top to bottom.

The inhabitants of Missouri came from the Southern States. The most of them are very ignorant, being unable to read, and write. Although the soil is so exceedingly rich, they raise but little grain,-a patch of corn, and a drove of hogs running wild in the woods, is the height of their ambition. The corn makes their cornodger, and the hogs their bacon. Cornodger, bacon, and buttermilk, or clabber, constitutes the chief food of the lower classes, and in fact the upper classes do not live much better. Sometimes they have a little wheat flour, but they do not know how to make bread of it, being unacquainted with yeast, or saleratus.

**P. 28  
1838**

They appear to be the offscourings of the Southern States, their clothes are ragged dirty and filthy, and one would hardly know them from the savages of the forest, by their appearance. There are some of a better class who dress well and appear neat and clean. They are all very kind, and hospitable to strangers, and will set before them the best they have. They salt their pork in a corner of their house until it gets salt enough to make bacon, they then hang it in a smoke house, and smoke it a very little, but during the summer it often gets full of life, but they do not mind that. Wild bees being very plentiful, they generally have more or less honey. They have a dislike to eastern, and northern people, they call them all Yankees. The distance from Kirtland to Far West is 835 miles by my reckoning.

**31st** Today George Gates, and I went to look at some land with a view to taking up some for farms. We found some very good.

**Sept. 1st** I went up to Elihu Allen's, who lives five miles southeast of Far West. They scarcely knew me. Moses Clausen lives here also.

**3rd** Yesterday I went to meeting, and heard Almon W. Babbit preach, Today, I went back to Uncle Josiah Richardson's.

**5th** We found an empty house near Elihu Allen's place on Log creek, and moved into it today.

**6th** I went up to Far West. The Militia of this county, who were all "Mormons" had been ordered to meet at this place, to take measures to defend themselves against the mob; who were still actively engaged in spreading false reports, to incite the Missourians, to arise and drive the "Mormons" from the state. The report was, that they had set this day to begin their driving. Their place of operations at this time is in Daviess County, joining Caldwell on the north, and which is very thinly settled. They were not yet bold enough to attack Caldwell County. A few of the mob gathered at Millport, on Grand river, but did not do any damage. The Militia at Far West, were ordered not to leave that place under penalty of the law, but to hold themselves as minutemen, and be ready at a moments warning, armed and equipped to repel the mob.

Far West is situated on a high rolling prairie between Shoal creek on the north, and Goose creek on the south, which empties into Shoal creek a short distance east of Far West. The houses are very scattering, and small, being chiefly built of hewed logs.

The basement for the Temple is dug, and the corner stones were laid the 4th of July last. The town contains one printing press, one tavern, and a few small stores, and groceries. It will be a beautiful city, if it is every built up, as it is intended to be. The soil is excellent.

**7th** The Malitia were granted the privilege of returning home today.

**P. 29  
1838**

**9th** They were ordered to assemble at Far West again today, and some were sent to Adam-on-di-ahman, Daviess County, which is 25 miles north of Far West, to assist the Latterday Saints in that place against the mob, who are still collecting on Grand river. This river runs through the above named place. The mob had commenced plundering.

**12th** I went up to Far West today. The most of the Militia were disbanded. The Mormons were expecting the arrival of Major General Atchinson, with a body of armed men from Ray, and Clay Counties, who were said to be on their way to Daviess county, to disperse the mob. Gen. Atchinson and another officer arrived towards night. They had left their armed

men (about 300) eight miles south of Far West. They had heard that the "Mormons" had 20 or 30 cannon, and were fortified at Far West, and they durst not come in. The General told them that he was not afraid of all the cannon they had, and he would go in alone and see. He had a friendly chat with Joseph Smith, and the leading men, and appeared to be very friendly to the "Mormons".

**14th** The General passed through Far West today with his 300 men, on his way to Daviess County, to see if he could settle the difficulty.

**15th** I went to Mr. Guyman's horse mill and ground some wheat and had to bolt it by hand. They are poor substitutes for mills.

**18th** I commenced work for John P. Barnard today, at two bushels corn per day, and board. Barnard was one of our old neighbors in Greenwood.

**21st** Rainy. I went to Uncle Richardson's and stayed over night.

**23rd** There is a heavy frost this morning-ice 1/4" inch thick. I went home last night, and returned this morning, and went to Uncle's again.

**24th** I went home again, and we all moved down to Mr. Barnard's. He lives eight miles east of Far West, on Shoal Creek.

**Oct. 7th** Father, and I are both working for J. P. Barnard; cutting corn, and diging a well. We have bargained for 80 acres of his land. We heard today, that the mob commenced firing on the "Mormons", at De Witt, in Carroll county.

The Mormons had commenced a settlement at that place, near the Missouri river, and several had stopped there who were immigrating to Far West. The mob would not let them proceed further. The Militia, (who were Missourians), were called out, but they took sides with the mob, and the Mormons who were now surrounded with the mob were left to defend themselves as best they could. They finally made some kind of arrangement, so that the Mormons were allowed to go to Far West. I think that there were none killed here.

**14th Sunday.** Mr. Barnard, and I went to Far West to meeting. **Joseph Smith** preached. He Said that those who would not turn out to help to suppress the mob, should have their property taken to support those who would. He was very plain and pointed in his remarks, and expressed a determination to put down the mob or die in the attempt.

**P. 30  
1838**

The report was, that they had gathered in Daviess Co. to the number of 400 or 500. Just as meeting closed, there was an alarm given, that a company of armed men were approaching the town from the south. The men immediately ran for their guns, so as to be in readiness should they prove to be enimies. But they proved to be a company of Militia, who had been ordered to Daviess county, (they said,) to quell the mob.

Joseph Said that he wanted all the people (men) of Caldwell County to assemble at Far West tomorrow, in order to find out who will fight, and who will not. He said that the Mormons would have to protect themselves, as they could not put any dependence in the Militia of the State; for they were mostly mobocrats. On our way home from meeting, we met several families from De Witt, just getting in,-amongst whom was S. Markham, and company, whom we left in Illinois. They were among those that were detained at De Witt by the mob. During the Skirmish there, Markham was shot at several times, but not hurt.

**21st** The "Mormons" assembled at Far West last Monday, according to appointment, and about 300 volunteered to go to Daviess County, with Joseph Smith, to assist their brethren, while the rest were to stay, and guard this town.

On the 17th the snow fell about six inches, and the men at Far West were permitted to return home. I shall merely give a brief account of our troubles in this war, (for it cannot be called any thing else) as it is likely a full account will be published in the Church history.

The company who went with J. Smith jr, assisted by those living in Daviess County, dispersed the mob, and found their cannon buried in the road. In their flight they were unable to take it with them, and they buried it in the road, so that the wagons passing over it would obliterate all signs of any thing being buried there. The report is, that a sow had routed it up, so that the mormons discovered it, and took it away with them.

Now in order to sustain themselves, the Mormons took their enemies corn, cattle, hogs etc. according to the usages of war.

This so enraged the mobbers, that they swore that they would kill every Mormon in the State. They set their own houses afire, and ran into the adjoining counties, and declared that the "Mormons" had driven them out, and burned their houses etc. This they done to excite the people against the Mormons, in order to get them to join them in their persecutions.

**P. 31**  
**1838** There were several Missourians living in Daviess County, and they had become jealous of the AMormons@, who were filling up the county very rapidly. They were also very much prejudiced against their religion.

**25th** This morning there was a battle fought between a company of 60 Mormons commanded by David W. Patten, and about the same number of Mobbers on Crooked river. The mobbers were driven across the river, and several of them killed. The "Mormons" had one killed (Jared Corter) and seven wounded two of which were fatal. One of these was D. W. Patten, one of the Twelve Apostles and the other was Patrick Obanion a young man, with whom I was partially acquainted. They died the 26<sup>th</sup>.

The Saints in this region concluded to gather in at Mr. Lyon's place 7 miles east of Far West and 3/4 of a mile from where we are now living, that they may the better protect themselves against the mob. We being so close by did not move. A guard was kept out day and night in order to prevent the mob coming on us unawares. The whole State is in a terrible excited condition.

**28th** The Mormons are moving in their families, at Lyons; and some are going on, to Far West. At that place many are camped out in the open weather, and are suffering in the cold, It really looks like war times, and it appears that the Missourians are determined to drive the Mormons from the State, from the little information they could get, with regard to the movements of the mobbers.

**30th** Tonight while guarding the main road coming in from the South and leading to Far West, a company of Missourians came along and hearing a rumor just before, that a large body of them were near Far West, they concluded it best not to molest them but let them pass on, which they did without stopping.

Soon after they passed, two men came up from Haun's Mill, going to Far West. They reported, that a mob came on them that afternoon, at Hauns Mill, and had killed nearly all the "Mormons gathered at that place, and they expected the mob would come up the creek, and would kill all the Mormons that they could find.

On hearing all these reports, the men concluded to disperse, and those, who had horses, went to Far West, taking a roundabout way, so as not to fall into the hands of the Militia. They had also ascertained, very late in the evening, that 4000 some say 6000 Militia had encamped that night, one half mile south of Far West, with orders from the Governor of the state to exterminate the Mormons. Those who could not go to Far West, secreted themselves in the woods. My

**P. 32**  
**1838** Father, and I, with Mr. Ives, took our blankets, and went into the woods near the road, so that if the mobbers came along, we would hear them. It was a cold frosty night.

**31st** The mobbers did not pass. We got our breakfast this morning, and again secreted ourselves in the woods near the road, so as to see if any body passed. About nine o'clock we heard the firing of guns in the direction of Far West, and we supposed that a battle was raging at that place, but the firing soon ceased, and we did not know what to make of it. As all communication with Far West was cut off, we could not learn what was going on.

**Nov. 1st** We slept last night in the hollow of a large sycamore tree which had been cut down. We crawled into it about 20 feet and then had plenty of room to lay side by side.

We watched the road again today, and towards night Mr. Guyman came riding leisurely along. He told us, that they had made a treaty at Far West, and the Mormons had surrendered and agreed to leave the State in the Spring.

With regard to this treaty, and the betrayal of Joseph, and Hiram Smith, and some others into the hands of the Mob-Militia by the traitor, Colonel George M. Hinkle who had commanded the Malitia of Caldwell County. See the History of Joseph Smith.

**2nd** As had been stated, the massacre at **Haun's Mill** occurred the afternoon of the 30th of Oct. The Latter Day Saints in that part of the county had gathered at the mill in order to protect themselves from the mob, and several had stopped there, who were journeying to Far West, supposing that it was a place of safety. They numbered about 40 men altogether.

A party of 300 ruffians from Livingston county came suddenly upon them. The Mormons ran into a log blacksmith shop

(which belonged to James Houston, my wife's brother-in-law) for their arms, and the mobbers formed instantly so as to command the entrance, and fired upon them. There being no chinking between the logs they also fired through these open spaces.

Some of the Mormons broke out and succeeded in getting away safe, and about six were wounded in their flight. The mobbers then ran into the shop, and shot all in there that were wounded. One little boy whose name was Smith, had crawled under the bellows to hide, but the fiends discovered him and instantly shot his brains out. The number killed was 18. After the mob had gone, some of the AMormons@ came from their hiding places the next day and in a hurried manner, gathered up the dead, and cast them into a well, which was being dug, but had not yet found water.

**P. 33**  
**1838**

I will here say that the well spoken of belonged to **Jacob Myers, my wife's brother**, who was severely wounded and a year or so after ward had to have his leg amputated. George Myers another brother was shot through the body as he was trying to escape. The mobbers did not pursue him, and he succeeded in getting away, and recovered from his wounds, but was never as stout afterwards.

**Jacob Myers Sen. my wife's Father**, assisted in putting the dead in the well, and she also, was an eye witness of the sad scene, being in her 10th year.

After the Treaty which has been spoken of, was made, things began to assume a more settled appearance, although Bogart, (who bye the bye was a Methodist preacher) who had headed the mob, at the battle of crooked Creek, continued to scour the country with a posse of men in search of arms, and certain men whom they wanted to imprison.

One of the stipulations of their treaty was that the Mormons should deliver up their arms. The most of these arms, however, were returned to the Mormons during the winter. This war was waged against the Latter Day Saints, because they believed in prophets, and professed to have revelation from god. This was the statement of General Clark in his address to the Saints at Far West, after the surrender. Not because they had broken any law of the State of Missouri, but it was because they believed in the gospel, as taught by Christ, and his Apostles. This was the only accusation made against them by their enemies which shows conclusively, that they persecuted them because of their religion. The sectarian priests, the debauchee, and the drunkard, all combined to gather, to persecute, and destroy the innocent, and the amount of misery, and suffering they caused them, at this inclement season of the year, will never be known until the books are opened, when all will be judged from those things written therein.

The Saints will be crowned with glory, while their persecutors will sink to misery and woe. There not being any work going on this winter, my nephew Franklin Allen and myself concluded to build us a hut, and live by ourselves.

My niece Caroline Allen did our cooking. We had a great many spelling matches and parties in the neighborhood during the winter, and all enjoyed themselves, as well as they could under the circumstances. The mobbers did not allow the Saints to hold meetings but the young would have their amusements.

### CHAPTER 3

**P. 34**  
**1839**

There had been a committee appointed by the church to gather means from those who had to spare, to assist those who were not able to move themselves out of the State. Stephen Markham was one of that committee. Having lost all of our goods that we sent by water, we had nothing to help ourselves with. Mr. Markham succeeded in getting a team for us, and

on the first day of April 1839, my Father, George Gates, and wife, and my Sister Almira, and myself started for Illinois in company with Mr. Markham's family, and one or two other families.

We arrived in Quincy on the 14th. From this place we went out east about 15 miles, near Columbus, and hearing that Uncle Josiah Richardson was stopping five miles southwest of this place, Father went to see him. Uncle thought that we could rent some land there, and wanted us to move in the house with him. We accordingly did so.

The place where Uncle Josiah lives belongs to Isaac Ferguson, he having rented some land of him for this season. Father also rented three acres of him. Ferguson was a widower, his wife having died the fall previously leaving him three children,-he was boarding with Uncle. George Gates built him a house in the timber, on some vacant land, and lives by himself.

Since commencing this chapter, I have found a letter I received the last of February from our folks in Michigan which I will here copy it being in answer to a letter that I wrote to them after the war was over. This is the third letter I had received from them since we parted in Ohio. The following is **from my brother George**.

Ypsilanti Feb. 4th 1839

Dear Father, Brothers and Sisters,

We received your letter the first day of this month and with as great joy as can be imagined; for we knew not but what you were all killed, from the accounts in the papers.

My health is very good. When I wrote last to you, I thought I should take a school, but I have not. I had applications, but I thought I had better go to school this winter. I went to Grass Lake last Nov. to school-was gone most eleven weeks. It is 31 miles west of here. I am now going to school here, and board with David.

I am sorry to learn that you are doing nothing this winter; for I thought that you would try and enter into a course of study; knowing that you have a searching mind, and generally studious. I hope that you do not neglect your books, for science is marching forward at a quick pace and the greater part of the community are becoming scientific, or enlightened and shall we be on the back ground, ignorant of what is going on in the world?

**P. 35  
1839**

No ! My Brother, I hope our better judgment will teach us to persevere in knowledge, and to put it to such use, that the world may be some better for our living in it. We have every thing to encourage us,-the fields that are opening for missionary teachers, and this must be a delightful place for a Christian to occupy; but, I suppose according to your theory, they are better off in their heathen state, than to join the sects. But we have something more to stimulate us, to search for knowledge.

According to scripture our enjoyments in another world will be in proportion to the knowledge we gain, and perseverance we make in the Christian path, while in this probationary State.

Here let me remark that I have no evidence that you have ever met with a change of heart,-a yielding to Christ. and a forsaking of your sins, no more than you always have been well disposed toward The Christian religion. I suppose that you are well enough acquainted with the Bible to know that there must be a heart work; a breaking up of the old man; and putting on the new man Christ Jesus; and walk in newness of life. Now if you have not met with this change; I ask you to set about it now; go to Christ. He alone can do the work. Think not my brother, that because you have lived a moral life your sins are of so trifling a nature, that they need not to be repented of; you will be deceived if you trust in this.

If you have met with a change of heart you must know that you have a work to do, for it is impossible for a Christian to be idle. He learns, that there is more that ought to be accomplished than he can do in his short life, if he improve every moment. And if you believe that the Mormons are the only true people, or true followers of Christ, -you appear to be positive of it, for I have never heard you say that you did not believe in the Bible, but you say, that if you should say that you did not believe in the Mormons, you should say that you do not believe in the Bible.

If you are so positive that they are the only true people, I ask, why do you not join them, they certainly need all the strength they can get. You recollect that I wrote of you, that I expected to have heard something on the subject of Mormonism. In your last letter while writing to Mother, you gave rather an obscure answer, it may be a true one. But

**P. 36  
1839**

allow me to prophesy a little, and State a little fact; that the time is past that the mormons were going to accomplish many things, we do know, and that they have boasted, threatened and tried to scare people you know as well as I do: And the greater mass of people that have joined them are ignorant, and lead into the delusion on that account. And it is easy to predict that the judgments of God are on them now, and that they will have to give up their physical mode of warfare, and

take the Sword of the Spirit, or they will be extinguished from the earth, or annihilated.

Feb. 11th Do not understand me above to justify mobbing, or the proceedings of the Missourians against the Mormons. No ! far be this from me. For I believe that the Mormons have been shamefully abused, but at the same time, I also believe that the Mormons have provoked the inhabitants of Missouri, with their doctrines, in declaring, that they are the only true people on earth: assigning the others as doctrines of men, and devils; and that the time is at hand, that they will be swept from the earth, by the wrath of God.

If I understand the doctrine of the Mormons it is this. They hold that they have come out of the wilderness, and are placed on the same ground that the church was in the Apostles' days. Now if they have the gift of prophecy, speaking different tongues, and healing the sick, etc., why are they not holy and devout men, like the apostles were. And if J. Smith jr is the type and forerunner of Christ, why does he not fill the office in the least particular. That the whole system is scarcely a shadow to the church at the time in which it was established, by the apostles is a fact. Did they resort to physical force to bring about their undertaking or to establish the church of Christ? Me thinks that the disciples never resorted to arms to defend their religion--and it is a Bible doctrine. But they took the sword of the Spirit, and wielded it, like men endowed with the Spirit sent from the hand of the Almighty.

**P. 37  
1839**

When they throw down their arms,-boasting of their miracles,-speaking with tongues, and make it manifest by their holy living, and by their exercising the power in faith, that they pretend to be in possession of (the most of their doctrine is good) when they live up to their profession, and do the mighty works that they have pretended to do,-in a word,-when they become the people that they profess to be, I shall have charity for them. Yes when I see this take place I will strive to be one among them.

I suppose my brother by the time you read this far, you will be tired; but bear with me a little longer on the subject of Mormonism. I do not wish you to think that I am condemning the Mormons as a body; for I believe the most of them are sincere; but I must say, that, I do believe that the founders of Mormonism are as corrupt as they represent the different denominations to be. Yea more, I believe that satan is the father of it,-that he has come in the garb of prophets, almost assuming the authority of Christ, trying to deceive the children of men. But we read that such will come, and if possible deceive the very elect. I think a few years more will decide this matter. I hold myself open for information, and when I can be convinced that they are the only true church of Christ; that moment I will become a true advocate of that doctrine. I shall be pleased to hear from you on this subject.

**From your Brother George Foote**

The following is **from my Mother**, who was **living with David**.

**Ypsilanti Feb. 11th 1839.**

Dear Husband and Children.

It gave me much joy to hear from you, to learn that your lives are all spared, and that you enjoy a good degree of health. That is more than I expected to hear, from the accounts in the papers, which you must know has caused me many a sorrowful hour by day, and by night. But I strove to give up, and be reconciled to Him, who rules all things.

When the last was wrote you, I had a bad cold, it came on me when Charles was sick, it kept increasing with a violent cough, until I did not know but what it would be the means of ending my days. I got some medicine that helped my cough immediately, but I have been in a feeble state of health all winter, but not so bad but what I have done considerable sewing, and helped Mary some about house. It is better now than it has been before, since I was first taken.

I have thought many a time that I should be glad if I was with you, but since the war broke out I have thought that I would **P. 38** be better off here. You have often told about that being a place of safety; and I thought at the time; little did you know **1839** about a place of safety, in this world. Warren says that he is not a Mormon, but he is just as he always was. I can say pretty much the same. I do not know that my mind is changed much as to Mormonism.

I talk of going to William Ferguson's, in the Spring. Warren as to your coming after me, I think you had better not; if I can get any way to go without. You will want all you can earn. My Dear Son, I want to see you very much, and all the rest: but if we are not permitted to see each other again in this world, I would exhort you to put your trust in God, that you may not be deceived by the works of men. As for the Mormons, you must see that they have failed in many things; and I think that you are all disappointed by going there. I hope that you all will try to do the best you can. I know you must have trouble and trials. Give my respects to Sister, and Brother Richardson, Franklin, and Caroline Allen, and all other friends there. From your **Mother; Irene Foote**.

The following is **from my brother David**.

Dear Brother, As George has commenced a letter to you, I will write a few lines in it, and let you know how things go with me: and in the first place, my health is very good for me, I have not been so fleshy before in two or three years as I am now. I have been carying on the cabinet, turning, and house building this winter, in company with two other men; but did not find it very profitable and therefore I quit it, and have gone to work at "jur" work again. I like this place very much, and think if I had a place here, I should be contended to stay, but as I have none, and see no prospect of getting any, I should like to go to some place where I could. I have been here about nine months, and am about \$100.00 better off than I was when I came here (but not in money). I do not know whether I shall stay here through the summer or not. I should like to see Missouri, but cannot say that I ever shall with any degree of certainty. I think that a laboring man can get a living here easier than he can in York State, although provision is very dear. Flour is worth \$7.00 per hundred and butter is 25 cts per lb. and such a house as we left in Greenwood would rent for \$2.00 or \$2.50 per week.

**P. 39  
1839**

As George has wrote a considerable about the Mormons I shall not say much on that subject. But I do think whether they enjoy the spirit of religion or not, they have been shamefully abused; and I think it is a shame, and disgrace to any State that pretends to be governed by Republican laws to allow such mobbing. And if a gang of ruffians are permitted to go and destroy the lives, and property of one sect of people, who knows how soon they may do it to another, and if that be the case, who would be safe. I hope that there will be some measures taken to bring the mobbers to justice.

And if the Mormons are an innocent people, and live in the enjoyment of religion, the Lord will prosper them. Now if you have not given your heart to God, O do it without delay, if you would secure -to yourself happiness in this life, and the life to come. I would like to see you all very much, I could think of much more to talk about than I can to write.

I will write a few lines to Father. It is uncertain whether I shall every see you again, but O, let us live Christian lives, and walk humbly before God, so that we can have the happy privilege of setting down together in the kingdom of heaven. You are an old man and have met with a great many trials, and afflictions -through life, but the Lord is able to deliver you out of them all, and I would ask an interest in your prayers, that I may not led into temptations, but that I may live in the fear of God, that I may leave this world in peace, and meet all my friends, and relatives beyond this vale of tears, where trials and afflictions shall never come. I should like to write more, but have not time, nor room. Give my love to Almira and Clarissa, likewise to all our friends there.

This is from your affectionate Son.

(To Father)

**David Foote jr.**

The following is **from David's wife to my Sisters Almira and Clarissa**.

Dear Sisters, I will now attempt to write a few lines to you although I hardly know what to write that will be interesting to you. If I could see you I presume I should find enough to talk about, but I will inform you, that I have enjoyed very good health this winter. Helen has been quite unwell. She has had a hard cough most of the time since September. She was taken with a very violent fever in December, and was for eight or nine days that she did not eat any thing at all. The only nourishment that she took was a little crust coffee, but she is now so that she goes to school, and she learns very fast. She talks a great deal about you, and wants to see you all. She has not forgotten her Grand-pa, I should like very much to see you all, but don't know as I ever shall,-you well know that I do not like the plan of moving about much. I like this place as well as any that I have ever lived in (except my old home) and if we had a home here, I should be contented to stay here.

**P. 40  
1839**

David talks some times about moving to Missouri, but I think he will have to wait a long time, before he will get any thing to go with. It would cost a great deal to move there. I do not think it would be safe to go there at present, on account of there being so much disturbance. We have had a great many anxious thoughts about you this winter, and Mother in particular, has been very much troubled.

When George brought in the letter, he gave it to me to read. I trembled when I opened it, for fear it had brought the intelligence that some of you had fallen into the merciless hands of the mobbers; but we had great reason for thankfulness to God, for news so favorable.

Warren did not write any thing about our old acquaintances. I should like to hear from Mrs. Barnard and Mrs Brown, and Uncle Josiah's family, and all the rest of the folks, that I am acquainted with there. I hope you will be a little more particular, about writing the news in your next letter. We have not heard any thing from William Ferguson's folks since we wrote to you before I received a letter from my brother, George Harvey, a short time since.

Our folks were all well but Eli. His health is not as good, as it was when he was here in the fall; I think he had better return to Michigan again, for he enjoyed better health when here, than he had for a number of years. I have heard nothing from Greenwood, since last summer.

I have commenced a letter to send to Mrs. Davis. There has been quite a revival here this winter in the Presbyterian Church, and a number of conversions in the Methodist Church. The Baptist are now holding a protracted meeting. I don't know as I have any thing more to write at present, as it is getting late I will draw to a close. I hope you will answer this as soon as you get it. Give my respects to all enquiring friends, Father in particular.

From Your Affectionate **Sister, Mary Foote**

The following is **from George**, who now finishes the letter.

**Feb. 12th** I do not know but what you will blame me for not finishing this letter before; but it is something of a chore to get the rest to write; but it shall be finished soon, if I have to fill it myself. I am glad to learn that you have found a good country, but very sorry that you cannot enjoy it in peace, for the country can do you but little good, unless you can possess it in peace, but I hope that the disturbance is over with. The last advocate that I received, stated that the mobbers will have justice done them. I hope this will be the case.

**P. 41  
1839**

I have not made up my mind what I shall do next summer, whether I shall go east, or whether I shall stay here. It may be if peace is restored in your country, that I may take a notion to go there through the course of next summer. I think that I shall have my mind made up, by the time you send me another letter. You wrote that that is the place for me if I want to teach school; but according to your account, I think that it is better business here. They pay here from \$15.00 to \$26.00 per month, and board. But it is not my intention to follow it for a living. I should like to have you, in your next, inform me what kind of inhabitants that country is settled with, and the state of society there, -the situation of the country, and its climate in particular, about its health- fulness; and as the most of you there are from the East, you can learn the best and cheapest way to go. I want you to take a little pains to inform me, and what it will cost.

There has been about the same disturbance in Canada this winter that there was last. Some of the blacklegs, and thieves, that this country is infested with; got strung up, and shot. Happy would it have been for the country if they had all been served the same way; for almost every night there is more or less stealing going on. Some of them are taken and put in jail, and by the time they get it full, they break out, and so they go unpunished. Therefore there is nothing to restrain them. Our laws are set at defiance here, as well as there. Banking, business has become an outlaw. Under this system there is the most fraud committed in open violation of the laws, that has ever been known in the annals of history.

Ypsilanti bank has broke, with hundreds and thousands of dollars of its paper palmed on the public; while the stockholders make themselves, and friends rich by it.

I will give you a short sketch published in the advocate that I received yesterday. "It is hard to tell which party were the aggressors. It is the prevailing sentiment, so far as I can learn, that the Mormons committed the first depredations, in the character of a mob, and such was the excitement, that the Militia were twice called out to suppress the gathering storm.

After the troops were called home the last time, the Mormons commenced burning, plundering, taking prisoners, and threatening to murder every thing in Daviess County. The apprehensions of the citizens, of Ray County were so fearful, that they thought their safety required a guard to be placed on the line between Caldwell and Ray Counties. This guard consisted of about 45 soldiers, legally ordered out. They were attacked in the night, by about 100 Mormons, and some were killed, and wounded on both sides. This defiance of the laws kindled a flame in the bosom of every patriot.

**P. 42  
1839**

The country was soon in arms, and things began to wear a gloomy and awful aspect. Vengeance seemed determined on both sides. The Mormons rallied to their strong hold, men, women and children, to witness the fulfillment of prophecy viz. that God would send angels to fight their battles. Never did there seem to be more depending on an action; the truth, or falsehood of prophecy, was to be tested by it, the fate of hundreds were depending on the issue. Both parties seemed certain of victory.

The day, the hour, at last came. 3000 citizens were encamped within half a mile of the village of Far West. They were marched to the town, and a line of battle formed. An engagement was expected, but prevented (blessed be God) by a truce, until an unconditional surrender was made. Their leaders were given up prisoners of war, and there grounded at the feet of their enemies. About 50 Mormons have been killed during the war.

Since their surrender, a company of Mormons calling themselves Danites, that had entered into a conspiracy against the

government have been detected and about 10 are now in Richmond jail. There is no doubt but both parties are to blame, and I rejoice to say, that it is the determination of the officers to punish all who have acted as a mob on both sides.

The State of Missouri will have to pay dear for such acts. Five hundred thousand dollars would not pay the expense, it is thought. What I have stated I have done on the veracity of men, who were in the war. I have had no share in it; more than to stay home and defend my family. Their condition is truly deplorable. their lands are taken to pay their debts; they are without homes, without money, and without friends. Let the followers of the humane Jesus, as far as they can, relieve their distress, by feeding the hungry and clothing the naked." Signed H. L. Dodds. Independence Mo. (Nov. 22nd 1838)

I want you to write as soon as you get this,-do not delay- As I have run ashore of paper I am obliged to close. **George Foote.**

The foregoing letters were all written on one double sheet of paper. I answered all of George's queries and corrected the Statements made by H. L. Dodds.

**P. 43  
1839**

The Mormons were not the first aggressors, neither did they threaten to murder every thing in Daviess County. The mobbers commenced plundering, and threatened to drive all the Mormons from that County, and when -they found that the Mormons were too much for them, they set fire to their own houses, and fled into the adjoining counties, and spread the report that the Mormons had burned their houses, and drove them from their homes. Previous to this, the mobbers took some of the Mormons prisoners, and treated them most brutally. The one person they beat over the head with a gun barrel until his brains oozed out, and left him for dead, but he afterward recovered. I saw him in Illinois and examined his head. I could have lain my finger in the wound after it was healed.

The Mormons did not feel justified, to tamely submit to such brutal treatment to have their brethren murdered in cold blood-their women ravished, and their property destroyed, by these devils in human shape, and after appealing in vain to the authorities of the State, they found that they would have to protect themselves or be destroyed, therefore they arose enmass, and put a stop to mobbing in Daviess Co.

But when they found that the governor had ordered the militia of the state to march to Far West, and take them prisoners, they threw down their arms, and submitted to banishment, -trusting in the God of Israel for that protection, which the governor had refused them, who instead of protecting them in their rights, as American Citizens, had ordered his Generals to exterminate them.

Neither were the women and children gathered together to witness the fulfillment of prophecy. There was no prophecy concerning the battle. The truth of the doctrine, promulgated by Joseph Smith jr, or the falsity thereof, was in nowise depending on that action.

I admit that the rights of hundreds of American Citizens, were depending on the actions of their enemies. But as all the particulars with regard to driving the Saints from Missouri are recorded in the Church History I will write no more on that subject, but continue my own Journal.

I helped my Father to plant corn, on the three acres that he had rented of I Ferguson. My health was very poor the forepart of summer. I will say here, that I have lost a sheet of my journal for this year, and shall not be able to give only a brief account of my doings, and that without dates.

**P. 44  
1839**

In the latter part of April, Joseph and Hiram Smith, with others who had been confined in Richmond Jail and had suffered untold hardships, arrived in Quincy Ill to the great joy of the saints. Soon after his arrival a conference was held near Quincy, which I attended. It was a time for rejoicing with the Latter Day Saints, to see their prophet and leaders, in their midst again. They had been delivered from their enemies by the power of the Most High.

At this conference George A. Smith, and Wilford Woodruff were sustained as members of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, as they had been ordained a short time previous.

The Saints decided to locate at Commerce in Hancock Co. Ill. on the banks of the Mississippi river. They also purchased a large amount of land in Iowa, opposite Commerce.

On the **9th May** J. Smith jr started from Quincy with his family, to go to Commerce. Soon after this, my Father, Uncle Josiah Richardson, and his son Ebenezer, Franklin Allen, and myself, went up to Commerce, with the intention of getting

us places. We called to see Joseph Smith, who was busy in clearing off a garden spot, and ploughing it. At this time this place contained only six houses--one stone, three frame and two block; besides these, there were four others in the immediate vicinity--one of stone and three of logs. The land was mostly covered with trees and bushes.

The next morning after arriving in Commerce, we went over the river to Montrose. Here were some old barracks formerly occupied by soldiers. Several families of the Saints occupied them. We walked out into the country, some four or five miles, to find some vacant land to locate us some farms. Franklin Allen and myself found 80 acres which we thought would do us; and had it "booked" to us in partnership. A man by the name of Ripley done the surveying, or subdividing of Sections, and also done the "booking". Ebenezer Richardson also located some land.

We recrossed at night, and next day started for home. We called at Stephen Markham's on our way home. He had rented a place near Lima, and was farming. Franklin Allen was living near Lima. This place is 35 miles south of Commerce, and 25 miles north of I. Ferguson's place. Soon after this the name of Commerce was changed to Nauvoo, which is a Hebrew word signifying "Beautiful."

**On the 27th of June 1839 my Sister Almira was married to Isaac Ferguson.**

**P. 45  
1839**

The latter part of the summer my health got considerable better; and through the instrumentality of Moses F. Clauson, a second cousin of mine, I was enabled to get a job of driving stage. He was a grandson of Aunt Lowly Richardson, and had been brought up by her. He had previously engaged in driving stage, for Finch & Bro. who loved in Columbus, and had contracts on two or three different routes. They wanted Moses to drive on another part of the route, and wanted me to drive where he was then driving which was from Columbus, to Naples, on the east side of the Illinois river. The distance between these places is 45 miles. I drove one span of horses to a carriage, and changed every 15 miles.

The first trip I made, about used me up. The roads were very rough, and driving so fast, jolted me terribly. When I got to Naples I felt as though I could not possibly ride over the road again the next day; but the next morning I felt a little rested, and started out; and did not feel any the worse when I arrived at Columbus. I left Columbus early in the morning, and on arriving at the Illinois river, I had to tie the horses to the wagon, and leave them there over night, while I took the mail over in a skiff. This was my orders, so as to save expense, in ferrying the team over. The ferryman would leave a skiff there for me, and I would row myself over; I had to leave Naples, at four o'clock in the morning, and rowed myself back again. I drove here until the roads became muddy, in the fall, when it became necessary to put on another driver.

Moses Clauson took the west end of the route, and I the east. I drove from Belmont to Naples. It was generally about night before Moses got to Belmont; which made my trip to Naples in the dark, I would get back to Belmont to breakfast, and lay there until the next day until Moses came. There was an old Bachelor boarding with the family I boarded with, and also a young man about my age was living there. We had a sitting room to ourselves. The bachelor was a fiddler, and we used to have considerable fun during the long winter evenings.

The Methodist had a wonderful revival of religion in this neighborhood, and we often attended their meetings to see their performances. It was as good to us as a theater.

The Illinois river was sometimes very dangerous to cross in the dark, alone, on account of the running ice. I told the ferryman to never leave a boat on the west side, if there was any danger in crossing. He said that he would not.

One evening as I was going to Naples, I was unusually cast down in my feelings, and the nearer I got to the river the worse I felt. I was thinking of my dear old Mother, and wondering if I would ever see her again. When I arrived at the river at about Eight o'clock in the evening, I found the skiff there. This was about the middle of Jan 1840. The weather had turned very cold just at night, and I was fearful of the ice running, but when I saw the skiff left for me, I supposed that there was no danger.

**P. 46  
1839**

I was all alone. I got into the skiff, and found that it was the large one, which was made for two to row with, but one could manage it in water clear of ice well enough. I got about half-way across, and began to find the ice running, and the further I got; the thicker the ice became, until I could not do any thing with the oars; and I found that I was being carried down stream with the ice. So I took the oar on the lower side, and thought that I would work gradually toward the shore, until I would land somewhere.

There was an old raft of round logs lying below the ferry landing with one edge of it on the shore, and the other edge extending into the river. I happened to work in by the side of this raft. The ice was frozen from the logs a short distance

into the river. When I struck this stationary ice, I commenced breaking it with one foot, and pulling the skiff in, until I could not break it any further, and supposing that it would bear me up, I got out on it, when down I went to my arm pits, but I found that I stood on the bottom with a log at my breast. But the log was covered with ice, so that I could not get hold of any thing to pull my self up with. I had on a very heavy overcoat, which helped to weigh me down. After struggling awhile, I found that I could not get out with out help.

Judge of my feelings at this moment. If I could not make any one hear, I knew that I must inevitably perish. I called for help, and as I called I observed some person on the bank. Joy spring up in my bosom. It was the ferryman. The ice commenced running on The east side of the river soon after he had left the boat for me, and he was keeping a kind of lookout for me. He was walking on the further side of the street, nearly opposite to me, when he heard something splash into the water. He mistrusted it was me, and as he came to the bank he heard me halloo, and then discovered me in the foregoing described predicament. He pulled me up on the log, and told me to go the house, but I told him that I must look after the mail. He said that he could get the skiff to the shore a little farther down, and he would bring the mail up to the office. Finding that the mail would be safe, I went to the Naples House, and got some dry clothes, and some supper. I was very chilly during the evening. In the morning I got my clothes dried, but the river being nearly full of running ice, I did not get over until noon. I felt very thankful to God for my almost miraculous escape. I think that ten minutes more would have benumbed me entirely, it being extremely cold. But I have passed through it, by the blessing of the Lord with no further injury, than the toothache, and a very bad cold, which confined me to the house three days.

**P. 47  
1840**

The next trip I went I crossed the river at Philip's Ferry on the ice, with my team. This place is six miles below Naples. The water is very cold, and the ice very thick.

(I now come to my journal again).

**Jan 27th 1840.** The past week has been extremely cold. There has nothing transpired worthy of note. I continued to cross the river on the ice.

**Feb. 2nd** The weather has been a little more moderate the past week. I drove two trips to Naples. Moses Clauson went one for me.

**9th** This week has been warm, and the snow has all gone, and it is very muddy. Moses Clauson went with me last night. We could not cross the river, so we had to stay on the west side all night. The bottom, on this side of the river, is three miles wide, and that is the distance to the first house from the river. We made out to get across this morning by going about a mile up and crossing at the Island. It rained nearly all day, and we did not get back to Belmont until four o'clock P.M. I only made two trips to Naples this week.

**16th** It has been very muddy, and bad traveling this week. I had a very hard time of it, last Thursday night. The mud was so bad that I had to take the mail on horseback. It was six o'clock P.M. and raining when I left Belmont.

It continued to rain until nine, when the wind changed into the northwest and grew cold very fast. I was then about half way to Naples. I could not ride off of a walk, it was so very muddy, and when I got to the river it was about one o'clock A.M. The wind was blowing fiercely, and very cold.

I called for the ferryman, but could hear no answer. I staid about one hour, and as the cold kept increasing, I found that I would freeze if I staid any longer, so I concluded to return.

By the time I got half way across the bottom, my clothes were frozen stiff, having been completely saturated by the rain. I was glad to get in sight of a house. I went to the door, and knocked, The man got up and let me in, and raked open a nice bed of hickory coals, and throwing on some wood he went back to bed. I now had a nice blazing fire all to myself. It was now four o'clock. I enjoyed this fire until daylight. Having dried my clothes I started out again. From this place to Griggsville is mostly a forest, and I did not feel the wind so much.

I made my statement to the Postmaster, giving the reasons why I did not cross the river. He took it down, and I made oath to it, and took the certificate to show to Postmasters on the route. From Griggsville to Belmont is three miles, on a high bleak prairie. I suffered terribly with the cold,-the wind blowing almost a gale right square in my face. I got to Belmont about nine o'clock A.M. I traveled again all night last night, -Got to Belmont at seven this morning.

**P. 48  
1840**

**19th** Moses Clauson has been driving from Naples to Jacksonville a short time past. This morning he wanted me to go one

trip for him as he wanted to go to Columbus. I accordingly drove out to Jacksonville which is 22 miles from Naples. The little village of Exeter is on this route. This is the place where Father preached when going to Missouri.

**20th** On returning to Naples, I learned that Moses was not going to drive any more on this route, and Mr. Pinch wishing me to continue driving on it, I concluded to do so. I had to drive 4 horses on this route, but had a very light coach. My wages was sixteen dollars per month, and board. I boarded at Heslep's Hotel in Jacksonville, and at the Naples House in Naples.

Heslep had a good many boarders, such as merchants, lawyers etc. There were five mail routes centered in Jacksonville, and four stage drivers stopped at Hesleps. Three of us were there on the same nights. One of these by the name of Henry W. Lane was my bed fellow.

**March 1st** I went home today on a visit. I traveled all night last night on horseback-I found my folks all well.

**8th** I returned to Jacksonville last Wednesday. The weather is very warm, and the roads are very good.

**15th** Nothing more than usual happened this week.

**23rd** I wrote a letter to William Ferguson today. Very cold and disagreeable

**Apr. 5th** It continues very disagreeable weather.

**12th** The past week has been very rainy, and disagreeable.

**19th** This week has been quite pleasant. The fruit trees begin to blossom

**26th** Yesterday, I had to encounter a very heavy thunder storm, with hail, and heavy wind. It has been very muddy the past week,- I have had but one passenger during the week.

**May 3rd** It has been very wet, and cold. I saw considerable frost last, friday morning. Nothing unusual happened this week.

**10th** It continues very rainy-and roads very muddy. Some frost this morning. As the cars were coming down the street, near Heslep's, the engine struck a large hog which throwed it off the track. It was on level ground and was soon replaced. The hog was killed. There is a railroad from Merredosia, on the Illinois river, six miles about Naples, to Jacksonville, distance 24 miles. The cars make a trip daily.

**P. 49**

**1840 17th** I went home on a visit again last week, and returned. Found all well.

**24th** Nothing unusual happened this week. I continue going back and forth daily.

**31st** It is very dull times,-wet and rainy-plenty of mud.

**June 7th** Last Monday, I was out in the heaviest shower that I ever saw. I had got half way across the Illinois bottom, and the wind blowed, and hailed so hard that I had to stop my team, and turn the hind end of the coach to the wind to keep it from blowing over. I had two passengers with me. I got very wet.

This week, the Whigs held a great convention, in Springfield, 35 miles east of Jacksonville. Party politics are running very highly. It is the year of the presidential election. The Whigs are running Gen Harrison, and the Democrats are running Vanburg. The motto of the Whigs is log cabins, and hard cider. Log Cabins were built on wheels, and ran through the streets with barrels of hard cider in them. There were supposed to be about 12000 people present.

**11th** I got a letter from my brother George, and answered it today.

**14th** The weather is getting very hot, and dry. Father came to Naples last Monday night, on his way to Michigan. He is going to bring mother home with him. He left on Tuesday on a steamboat, and will go by water as far as Peru, and will walk from there to Michigan. I gave him what little money I had by me, and paid his bill at the tavern.

**21st** I have had the "blues" very badly the past week, but am getting over them.

**28th** It was very hot, and sultry the first of last week. We had a tremendous storm, which blowed a number of trees across the road, it also blowed down a two story house in Naples. I got very wet. It was very showery all the week.

**July 5th** It has been a very pleasant week.

They gave out notice last week that they would make a railroad excursion, to Merredosia, and back on the fourth, leaving Jacksonville at three o'clock P.M. and returning at six. I accordingly procured a ticket for myself, and partner who lived five miles out of town, on my stage route.

I drove into Jacksonville about ten o'clock A.M. yesterday. I hired a horse, and buggy, and went after my girl. Her Father, and mother, and Sister, was going also. The old man started out with his carriage, and I followed. We got to town two hours before the time.

There were only two passenger cars, but they attached all their baggage cars to the train, and when the hour arrived to start, they were loaded with as many as could hang on, which numbered several hundred. We did not get into Merredosia until six o'clock, -the hour that we should have been back to Jacksonville.

After stopping there a short time, they started on their return. We got along tolerably well, until we came to the uphill grade of the Mauvaustar Creek, when we came to a dead halt. We got off, and pushed, for about two miles, when some of them thought they would have some fun, and began to pull back. This would stop the train, and when they started again, they would pull back and stop it again.

**P. 50  
1840**

They kept fooling along this way awhile, when the conductor slipped the bolt out of the coupling behind the first passenger car, which contained the ladies, and a few men and shot off for Jacksonville at full speed. It so happened that I had got on that car a few minutes before it was uncoupled, so I was all right.

We reached Jacksonville about midnight. It happened that Mr. Sprague (my girls Father was on the car also). I got my horse, and buggy, and we hitched up to return home. The night was terrible dark. I let Mr. Sprague start ahead, but he kept missing the way, and finally he wanted me to take the lead. It being on my daily route I knew the road as well in the dark, as in the light. I went ahead, and kept him jogging pretty lively to keep up. It got back to Jacksonville about three o'clock, just as the stragglers began to come in.

I met two of my fellow drivers right at the tavern and got some good jokes onto them. One of them (Henry Lane) took a girl with him, the girl came on home in the car, and he was left behind. As soon as they got in with the first car, they ran the engine back and brought up the rest. But many walked all the way in (12 miles) not knowing as they were coming back with the engine. There was a great deal of swearing done in the crowd.

**12th** It has been very pleasant the past week-the wheat is all cut.

**19th** Very hot the past week. Nothing unusual occurred.

**26th** The weather is some cooler. My health has been very poorly the past week-some symptoms of the ague.

**Aug. 2nd** I feel better again, and continue my regular trips.

**9th** The weather the past week has been very pleasant.

**16th** It is very hot weather, and very sickly in Naples.

**23rd** Last Monday I got a young man to drive stage for me while I went home on a visit. It rained some. On Tuesday I went to Quincy with the stage driver from Columbus, and had a very high fever. Wednesday I came home, and had a fever again in the afternoon. On Thursday last I had a shake of the ague which lasted about one and an half hours. This made me very weak. I found that I would not be able to return to Jacksonville as I expected too. So I got Franklin Allen to go over Friday, and drive stage for me, until I should be able to resume again. Yesterday (the 22<sup>nd</sup>) I was taken down with the billious fever, and was very sick. I sent to Columbus for a doctor. He gave me some medicine which broke my fever and today I feel much better.

**P. 51  
1840**

**30th** I have continued to gain very slowly the past week.

**Sept. 6th** I have chills, and fever again, and have become very weak.

**13th** I had two shakes of the ague, the forepart of last week, since which I have gained strength very slowly. The weather is very fine.

**20th** I have been free from the ague the past week.

**27th** I have some symptoms of the ague again.

**28th** I started for Jacksonville in the stage to get my clothes; which I left at Heslep's tavern, where I boarded. Stayed over night at Naples.

**29th** Arrived at Jacksonville about 10 o'clock A.M. I found that my trunk had been opened, and a fine shirt taken out, and some other notions, and a pair of boots was missing-very rainy.

**30th** Returned to Naples, and Oct 1st went to Columbus.

**Oct. 2nd** Rained very hard last night, and today it is very cold, and snowed a little.

**3rd** I arrived at home yesterday. Froze very hard last night:.

**9th** Father arrived from Michigan, very unexpectedly to us, and said that Mother was at Naples. He came from that place on foot, and wanted me to get a team and go after Mother and her things.

**10th** I got Elihu Allen's team, and in company with Franklin Allen, started for Naples, where we arrived about sundown. It was with feelings of great joy, that I **met my Mother**, from whom I had been separated about two years and an half. She did not know me at first,-She said I was so black, to what I used to be (I had become very much tanned in driving stage.) that it couldn't be Warren.

**11th** We started for home, traveled 20 miles and camped.

**12th** Arrived at home all safe. It is very pleasant weather.

**13th** Father, and Mother, went to living by themselves, in a log house close by Isaac Ferguson's, and belonging to him. I now made it my home with them, where we live very comfortable.

**Nov. 15th** The ague has been lurking about my system a great deal until the past few days. I now feel fairly over it, and yesterday, I went to work for Mr. Finch again. I had hired for one month.

**22nd** The past week, I have been busied at various things. It has been very cold, and unpleasant weather. Yesterday it rained all day.

**29th** Very cold again. My health was very poorly last week. On Wednesday I started for Meridosia with a team,-went as far as Mt. Sterling, and meeting with the stage driver (who was driving for Mr. Finch) he wanted me to drive to Columbus, and let him take the team, and go on to Meredosia. I concluded to do so, and on Thursday I returned to Columbus. Mt. Sterling is a small town. It is situated 24 miles east of Columbus, and is the county seat of Brown County.

**P. 52  
1840**

**Dec. 6th** Last Wednesday I started for Rushville, with a load of Theater play actors, with their baggage. They were a kind of traveling theater. I went as far as Mt. Sterling, and staid over night.

Thursday morning I started early, and arrived in Rushville about noon. It is a very cold day. Rushville is a considerable town, and is the county seat of Scuyler county, situated 18 miles from Mt. Sterling. I returned to Mt. Sterling about 7 o'clock at night. On Friday I returned to Columbus. It was a very cold day. Saturday I went to Quincy, and back.

I received a letter last Wednesday from George Gates, which brought me the sad news of the death of my beloved **Sister Clarissa**. She **died** on the **25 of Nov.** of the childbed fever. I mourn my loss, of her society, but we shall meet again I trust in a better world than this.

**13th** My health has been poor the past week. I drove the stage to Mt. Sterling, and back. The weather was more mild.

**16th** My month was up yesterday, and I concluded to quit work, and go home, and go to school. I got a few things from the store, and came home today.

**Dec 19th** I Went to Columbus, to settle up with Mr. Finch, but did not. I traded some at the store, and returned home. Very cold day.

**28th** Some of the people in the neighborhood wished me to take up a school. I went around to see how many scholars I could get. I only got twelve subscribed. As I wished to be improving myself, I concluded to take up school, and try it.

**29th** I commenced school for the first time in Illinois, -had 11 scholars.

**31st** This day closes another year. Its joys, and sorrows are gone forever. How very many who with merry hearts rejoiced in the ushering in of this year, have gone hence to another state of existence. Several of my relatives are among the number gone, a dear Sister especially.

O clarissa! my dear Sister, shall I never hear your sweet voice again on earth? No; not in mortality. You are gone to your rest in Paradise. May I be prepared to meet you in the morning of the resurrection, with all the redeemed of the Lord, when we can unite again in singing praises to God, and the Lamb.

I have seen, and learned a great deal of human nature the past year. I have spent the most of my time in driving stage, and have come in contact with a variety of persons, and learned much of the ways of the world, and have found that- all that glitters, is not gold. I traveled this year 5038 miles principally on my stage route. I close for this year, and bid farewell to eighteen hundred & forty.

## CHAPTER 4

**Jan 1st 1847.** I kept school today. It is very cold and blustering.

**1840 9th** I went to Columbus to get a settlement with Mr. Finch, but as he was on a jury I could not settle with him.

**14th** I went to Columbus again to settle with Mr. Finch and made out to get a settlement with him by giving him four dollars which rightly belongs to me. I give it rather than have a fuss about it. I purchased a coat and a few other articles. It is fine sleighing.

**17th** This is the coldest morning that I ever saw. It is said to be eight degrees colder than was ever known here before. Last night a few of the young folks met at the school house and organized an exhibition (a kind of theater) I was elected secretary.

**24th** Last night we held an exhibition-had good order, and a fine time. Yesterday I went to Columbus. It is very warm and thawing.

**March 5th** I was engaged with my school until the last of February. Yesterday Father started for Nauvoo. Today is cold and snowy.

**10th** We held another exhibition last night. Some snow on the ground yet.

**Apr. 4th** Father and Mother started for Nauvoo with Elihu Allen to attend the annual conference. Yesterday I received a letter from my nephew Harrison Ferguson who still lives in Ohio. They were well as usual. Grass begins to look quite green.

**21st** I went up to the steam mill four miles northeast of Columbus. There is a branch of the Latter Day Saints at that place. I got a letter from Henry W. Lane, my old comrade, and stage driver at Jacksonville. He drove on the Springfield route and was in Jacksonville the same nights that I was and we slept together nights.

He was quite a wild boy, but I had some influence over him to restrain him many times. I would not drink and indulge in their rowdies, as is common with Stage drivers, and by that means I held him somewhat in check. He was my friend and very often told me of his scrapes, and love troubles.

**28th** I went to Liberty three miles distant. It is cold for the time of year. The grass is getting up pretty well.

**May 27th** I have worked some on the farm for Father and Isaac Ferguson, and some of the time not doing any thing on account of poor health. But I am now getting better.

There has been a great revival of religion among the sects here and many profess to have got religion. I attended many of their meetings; but have seen too much of such nonsense, to have their threatening of hellfire etc. to have any effect on me. I cannot see any religion of the bible in it.

**P. 54  
1841** I read that God's house is the house of order, but these revival meetings are nothing but disorder and confusion. The ancient Apostles said "Repent and be baptized for the remission of your sins and through the laying on of hands ye shall receive the Holy Ghost." But these preachers say "Come to the anxious seat and we will pray for you, and you will get religion. No matter about baptism that is nonessential." I have read the scriptures too much to be deceived with such stuff, O may my mind ever be opened to understand the scriptures, and may I ever be led in the right way.

Today and tomorrow I have to work on the road with other young men, under Albert Foster a new convert who has lately got religion. His religion makes him act very foolish.

**30th** Last night Moses Clauson came here to get me to go drive stage again for Mr. Finch. I packed up my things and went with him to Columbus. We Called at a meeting on the way and saw six persons baptized by Elder Cain.

**31st** I started for Jacksonville to drive stage on my old route. June 1st I took possession of the team at Naples and drove to Jacksonville. The old route looks very natural. Uncle Joshua Sprague would have me drink with him and all old acquaintances appeared very friendly. It is very dry about here-orchards full of fruit.

**6th** The past week has been very hot and dry.

**13th** Still continues very hot weather. I am enjoying myself well.

**20th** The weather turned very cold last week, so that it was very uncomfortable early in the morning driving from Naples. It still continues very dry and crops are suffering very much.

**27th** I have made up my mind to quit driving stage when this month is up. I sent for a driver to take my place on the first of next month. It has been very stirring times in Jacksonville, being court week and three men being tried for murder. The criminals names are-Gardner and two brothers named Jonathan and Thomas Carew. The murder was committed at Exeter. One of the men shot the man and the others beat him with clubs. Thomas Carew had his trial last, and the jury brought in a verdict of murder against him.

**July 1st** Moses Clauson came over yesterday to drive and I had calculated to have gone home today, but Moses persuaded me to go one trip with him as it was a new route with him, so I returned to Jacksonville. Gardner has been tried this week and found guilty of murder in the first degree. I attended Court this afternoon to hear his sentence which was delivered by Judge Stephan A. Douglas. He was sentenced to be hung on the 23rd of this month. Gardner appeared unmoved and as unconcerned as though nothing had happened.

**P. 55**

**1841**

Thomas Carew has obtained the privilege of a new trial. He, and his brother will be tried together, (I will say here that a day or two previous to the day that Gardner was to be hung, he broke jail and went to Texas. He wrote back to the sheriff, that he was sorry that he had disappointed so many of his friends who had assembled to see him swing, but his own safety had induced him to take the course he did (or words to that effect.) The Carews were sent to the penitentiary.)

**July 3rd** Cool this morning. I arrived at home all well.

**5th** Yesterday being Sunday, the celebration of the 4th was held today in Columbus which I attended. They formed a procession at 11 o'clock A.M. and marched to the Campbellite Church where an oration was delivered. They then marched to the south side of the public square where a barbecue was served up without knives and forks. The ladies occupied the first table. I stood as a spectator to observe them eat using their fingers for forks and teeth for knives. When they got through I concluded that I did not want any barbecue, so I left and went home.

**Aug. 2nd** The past month has been very hot and dry. There was only one shower during the month. There has been only three showers since the last of April. Oats are hardly worth harvesting. Corn looks well, and wheat came in fine. I helped dig a well last month for Elihu Allen-25 feet deep, found excellent water. I went to Columbus three times for money due me from Finch but did not get any. Last Friday I got E Allen's team and took father and Mother to Quincy. We took dinner With Caroline Weeks, and returned home the same day. They did some trading.

**3rd** This is election day. The people of Adams County are to vote on moving the county seat from Quincy to Columbus. I attended the election and voted for removal. There was a great many people out, but the election was carried on very civilly. I did not see any fighting. I returned home and Moses Clauson being over, we went a visiting at night.

**7th** It is now raining finely. I have had considerable symptoms of the ague the past week, but feel better today.

**11th** Today I am **24 years old**. I have been driving team for a thrashing Machine to thrash E. Allen's wheat. It is very cool nights.

**15th** It has got very warm again and dry. My health is very poor. I have been helping E. Allen about cleaning up his wheat.

**P. 56**

**1841**

**29th** My health continues very poor-not able to do much.

**Sept. 5th** I attended the Dunkard's Soup meeting. They had two large iron kettles fixed in a furnace in which they boiled beef and made soup. Bread was also furnished, and bread and soup was free to all. I attended their baptism as there were some to be baptized. They went down into the water, and the administrator immersed the candidate forward, that is face down ward, first in the name of the Father, then secondly in the name of the Son and thirdly in the name of the Holy Ghost, plunging them under the water three successive times. At night they administered the ordinance of washing of feet. They had preaching both forenoon and afternoon. I staid all night at a neighboring house in company with Moses Clauson and Ebenezer Clauson cousins.

**6th** This morning we went back to the meeting house and took breakfast with the Dunkards, as they gave invitation to all last night. We had a very good breakfast. After breakfast meeting was dismissed.

**7th** I started for Nauvoo for Elihu Allen with his team to move a family up there. It was very warm today.

**8th** Turned cool last night- and rained some. Arrived at Nauvoo at night.

**9th** It rained in the forenoon. In the afternoon I went to see some of my old friends. I put up at Uncle Josiah Richardson's. Some parts of the city is very rough broken ground. The log houses are scattered over nine square miles. It looks more like a thick settled country than a city. The foundation of the Temple is laid.

**10th** I started for home this morning-the weather is very cold.

**11th** I arrived at home and found Mother very sick with the cholera-Morbus. I had a very disagreeable time coming home.

**14th** Mother is well again. I went to Columbus again to get some money of Mr. Finch. I got a little, and purchased a few articles.

**17th** I have got in two acres of wheat for Father on I Ferguson' land.

**22nd** Mr. Finch wanted me to get a stage driver for him. So I went down to Pleasant Vale in Pike County on the Mississippi bottom after Ebenezer Clauson (son of my cousin Moses Clauson) to drive for him. I returned yesterday with Ebenezer. Today it is cold and rainy.

**Sept. 30th** I started today in company with E. Allen and wife for Nauvoo to attend the **Semi Annual Conference**. We went by the way of Carthage. this is a route that I never traveled before.

**P. 57**  
**1841** **Oct. 1st** We started out about 2 o'clock in the morning-drove 10 miles and stopped and got breakfast. About sunrise it began to rain as we were passing through Carthage. This place is 18 miles from Nauvoo and is the county seat of Hancock County. It rained all day, and we did not get to Nauvoo until 10 o'clock at night. We stopped with aunt Lowly Richardon, E Allen's wife mother, and my Father's Sister.

**2nd Conference** commenced today. After meeting a deposit was made in the southeast corner stone of the Nauvoo House. A square hole had been chiseled in the large corner stone like a box. Any one had the privilege of putting in any little memento they wished too. I was standing very near the corner stone when **Joseph Smith** came up with the **manuscript of the Book of Mormon** and said that he wanted to put that in there, as he had had trouble enough with it. It was the size of common foolscap paper and about three inches thick. There were **also deposited the Book of Doctrine and Covenants**, a five cent piece, a 10c, a 25c and a 50c and a one dollar all American coin. A close fitting cover of stone had been prepared and was laid in cement and the wall built over it. The day was clear and cool.

**3rd Sunday**. the weather is very pleasant. A large congregation assembled this forenoon. **Joseph Smith** preached on the subject of **baptism for the dead**. Among a great many other things, he said that the saints could be baptized for any of their dead relatives, or friends, who had not been murderers. Such could not be baptized for. The Lord had other ways of dealing with murderers.

**4th** This is the last day of conference. there has been a great deal of business transacted with regard to Church matters; and much good teaching. This afternoon **as Joseph Smith was talking**; all at once his **countenance brightened** up and he said, AVerily thus saith the Lord, Let there not be another general conference held until it is held in mine house.@

**6th** We started for home. The weather continues very pleasant.

**7th** We arrived at home about five o'clock P.M.

**12th** I went to Columbus and purchased a fur cap, and agreed with Finch to go and collect the money from Post Offices between Columbus and Jacksonville. Moses F. Clauson was still driving to Jacksonville.

**13th** I started out in the stage and staid over night in Naples.

**14** We left Naples at four o'clock A.M.-took breakfast at Beals (our old breakfast station) and arrived in Jacksonville at ten

A. M. I collected the money as I came through. The stage now stops at Scotts' Hotel instead of Heslaps. Scott's is a first class hotel, and has many boarders.

**15th** We left Jacksonville at 12 noon. I purchased two bus. of apples on the way to Naples to take home. I met the driver from Columbus at Naples and we concluded not to stop over night but to go right on to Griggsville where we arrived at eight o'clock P.M. The night was very dark.

**P. 58**

**1841**

**16th** I went on to Columbus and paid the money over to Mr. Finch who paid me the ballance due me for driving stage, and arrived at home at five P.M.

**24th** This is a cold freezing day with very high winds.

**29th** I went to Quincy, 12 miles distant, and done some trading.

**31st** Sunday. The weather is quite warm again and raining.

**Nov. 6th** I received a letter from my Sister Betsey who lives in Dryden.

**21st** I made preparations to start for Nauvoo with Isaac Ferguson, who was going up to take some flour to Mr. Markham. Moses Clauson came over.

**22nd** We started for Nauvoo this morning. We went through Quincy to a grist mill some 8 or 9 miles above that place to get the wheat ground. Here we had to stay all night and had a job to get grinding.

**23rd** I did not sleep any last night. We got started at half past eight. About noon a young man got in company with us, who was also going to Nauvoo. He was walking. Isaac had an ox team and the young man wished to keep in our company. When night overtook us it was very cold. We tried several houses to see if we could get to stay over night, but all in vain. Finally at about nine o'clock we came to a house occupied by a Latter Day Saint, and called. He said that we could stay, but he had no bed for us. We told him that we could lay before the fire and was thankful to get a shelter without a bed.

**24th** I found my lodging rather hard last night, and did not sleep much but I had a great deal of sport with the young man who was a very jovial fellow. As we started on our journey the wind began to blow from the northeast and being cloudy, it soon began to hail and snow moderately but as we were facing the storm it was very disagreeable, especially so while we were traveling the 20 miles over the prairie. We arrived at Mr. Markham's, (Nauvoo) about dark very tired and hungry.

**25th** I awoke this morning and found myself buried in snow. The house we slept in had no floor and was very open and the snow had blowed through the crevices and covered us up. It snowed and blowed terribly all day. I went over to Wm Weeks and took breakfast. Caroline was very sick.

I then went to see Mr. Wilcox (the man and family that I moved from our settlement with E Allens team last september). I took dinner with them. In the afternoon I called at widow Ives to have a little chat with her daughter. They were our neighbors in Missouri. Mr. Ives died since leaving Mo. Many of the houses being very open the snow blowed into them and melting made it extremely disagreeable. I went to Wm. Weeks and staid over night.

**26th** It has cleared off and we started for home. It was very cold crossing the big prairie. We traveled until ten o'clock at night and stopped at Mr. Perry's a Latter Day Saint. Here the flour was our bed again.

**27th** We started at 5 A.M.-found it very cold and rough traveling. The snow here is about three inches. In Nauvoo it was six or eight. The mud was frozen hard, and not worn down any made it very bad traveling for the oxen, we got home about six P.M. cold and very hungry.

**P. 59**

**1841**

**31st** I have been employed in getting up wood for Father, and making a sled.

**Dec. 4th** The snow all went off, but has turned cold again.

**17th** I worked for Mr. Leverett four days last week. It is very pleasant and no snow. It is reported that there is a spring six miles from here which has been running blood.

**18th** I went to Quincy and back.

**22nd** It is very stormy-rain and sleet from the west.

**31st** Yesterday I wrote a letter to my brother George, and sent it to the P.O.

Today I went to Quincy with Franklin Allen, to get some tools fur making chairs. We have entered into partnership for that business.

Another year has rolled into eternity with all its joys and sorrows, and yet my life is spared for what purpose I know not. I have not heard of any deaths among my relatives except my brother David's little girl Helen who was a beautiful and smart child.

I have not made much property the past year, but have made out to live. I have traveled 1660 miles all in the regions round-about.

Adieu eighteen hundred and forty one. The following lines I composed at the request of Laura Allen, a daughter of Elihu Allen, and who is my second cousin, and half Sister to Franklin Allen

### **The Beautious West**

The beauties of the Eastern climes  
O, never can compare with thine-  
Majestic mountains there may rise  
In lofty grandeur deck The skies-  
Sure, thy wide spread prairies are,  
Something more beautiful and fair.  
Like waters see them spread around  
And groves like islands oft are found;  
Under whose shades the elk and deer  
Retire when seized with sudden fear,  
And seek for shelter there.

All o'er their surface too when green  
Lovely flowers are always seen.  
Lilies unheeded bloom and fade  
Each flower in its respective grade  
Naturally and alone.

But see the richness of thy soil  
Yields abundance with little toil,  
Majestic rivers through thee flow,  
Resounding with the steamers blow.  
Where shall we find in Eastern climes  
A soil that is as rich as thine,  
Repaying to the husbandman  
Redouble for his toiling hand;  
Even too far half the toil  
Nature requires in Eastern soil.

Finally may the beauteous West  
O=erspread with freemen soon be blest,  
Oppressors may there none be found  
To trample on thy sacred ground-  
Enjoyed by Freemen-Free.

Nov. 10th 1841.

**P. 60  
1842**

**Jan 1st 1842** The weather is very warm and pleasant. There is not any thing going on today worthy of note.

**5th** I went to Burton four miles south west of here with Franklin Allen and bought tools to the amount of \$10.00.

**7th** We went to Columbus and bought more tools, amounting to \$7.64. We also agreed with Knight & Greenleaf to make some lathe irons.

**15th** We bought a log house for a shop, and was very busy last week moving it on to a half acre lot that we bought of Jacob Myers. We raised it today.-Weather is very fine.

**22nd** We have built our chimney, and got our shop nearly plastered.

**28th** Went to Columbus and got our lathe irons.

**Feb. 2nd** This afternoon I was taken sick-had a severe pain in my side.

**5th** I have got able to go to Quincy today. We got some turning tools amounting to \$1.75. We got home about eight o'clock at night.

**6th** I attended Samuel Ferguson's wife funeral. She died of lung fever. Samuel is a brother of Isaac Ferguson. Very cold today.

**11th** We commenced getting out chair timber-rounds etc.

**13th** I went to Freedom to attend meeting. The branch of the church of Latter Day Saints here is called Freedom Branch. Elder Daniel A. Miller is Presiding Elder. Had very good preaching.

**14** We got Jacob Myers to make our lathe wheel for a foot lathe. We got it started today. I turned two rolling pins.

**18th** I put together the first kitchen chair since I left Greenwood N.Y.

**19th** It has been very cold all the week with a few snow squalls.

**24th** Franklin and I went to Columbus on business. It must be remembered that Franklin Allen is my nephew a son of my Sister Laura. He is about a year younger than I am. He married Rebecca Myers, daughter of Jacob Myers, last fall. He was married by my father.

**P. 61**

**1842**

**28th** We are turning chair rounds, and boiling them so that they will season quick. This afternoon I feel very badly. At night I went home sick, and went right to bed with a severe pain in my right breast, and a high fever.

**March 17th** I have had a severe spell of sickness and have just got able to ride out a little. I am reduced to a mere skeleton, but thank God, and a kind Father and Mother, and my Sister Almira, who watched over me day and night, I still live. After I was taken sick on Thursday night the 26th of last month I was deranged the most of the time. Sometimes I thought that I was a bundle of chair rounds bound up with a chord and was in great trouble for fear that some one would break the chord and let me fall to pieces. At other times I fancied that I was something else. When any one would speak to me I would come to my right mind. I continued in this state until Saturday morning, when the disease seemed to settle on me for a long spell of sickness. It was the inflammation on my lungs. I now became very stupid-did not notice anything much, until friday the 4th of March, I began to revive a little and for the first time began to realize my situation. I had not partaken of any food since I was taken sick.

My reflections were these. "I have been a firm believer in the gospel as taught by the Latter Day Saints, ever since I first heard it, I have written many letters to my brothers and kinfolks proving from the scriptures that the gospel taught by the Saints was true, then why should I not step forward myself and be baptized for the remission of my sins that I may receive the Holy Ghost through the laying on of hands, and thereby obtain a knowledge for myself, and become more useful in building up the Kingdom of God on the earth."

After these reflections, I made a **covenant with God** in my own mind, that if He would spare my life. I would serve Him the remainder of my days according to the best of my abilities. I sent for two of the elders to administer to me by anointing me with oil and laying on of hands. The Lord heard our prayer and I began to amend. I was near dropping into the grave. Many who came in to see me thought that I would not recover.

My Father was very anxious for me, and exercised great faith in my behalf. His only hope among his sons was centered on me, to continue the work, that he had begun, after he had passed behind the veil. What then must have been his joy when I yielded myself up to the will of God. He knew that I had ever been a firm believer in the gospel, but at times had been fearful that I would be led astray through the influence of my young associates who did not believe in it. But these associates never had any influence over me to that effect. The fact is I believe that the principles of the gospel of Christ was born in me. I never needed any preaching to convince me of the truth of them. I believed the bible preaching to convince me of the truth of them. I believed the bible and hence could not help but believe the gospel when I heard it.

**P. 62  
1842**

**I now feel determined to be baptized** as soon as I get strength sufficient, which I think will not be long as I am gaining fast.

**24th** This is the day that I have appointed to go down into the waters of baptism and thereby fulfill the covenant I made to the Lord when I was near death's door. The meeting was at Elder **Jacob Myers** house about one mile from Father's. I walked down there and in company with Amos Kimmins, Franklin Allen, and his wife, Samuel Myers, and Lovina Myers, was **baptized by Daniel A. Miller**, President of this branch, between five and six o'clock P.M. The foregoing named persons, had been baptized before, and now felt to renew their covenants. As it was concluded to have an evening meeting I thought that I would stay to it. The wind blew up from the north very cool and in going home, I took cold.

**26th** Last night I had a severe pain in my side, but feel some better today, although my sides feel very sore.

**28th** I still feel weak. Pear trees are in full bloom, and the prairies are getting green.

**April 3rd** I went to Elder Heman Hyde's to meeting in company with Franklin and his wife. Sacrament was administered of which I partook for the first time. Elder Jacob Myers delivered a discourse on the subject of the gospel. After meeting he baptized a person. We stayed over night at Father Myers.

**4th** We returned home.

**18th** I commenced work again at chair making.

**21st** We hired Hiram Brown to work for us. He commenced today.

**24th** I went to Freedom in company with some others to meeting,- had a good time.

**27th** Franklin and I went to Columbus and traded some. The weather is quite cool. Corn is mostly planted. It has been a fine spring for farmers.

**May 4th** I started for Nauvoo with Elihu Allen and three other persons.

**5th** We arrived at Nauvoo. This place has improved rapidly since I was here last fall. New buildings are going up in every quarter.

**7th** The Nauvoo Legion was out on a general parade commanded by General Joseph Smith. They went through a great many performances and finally wound up with a sham fight. It all passed off very agreeably, and in good order without any accident.

**8th Sunday.** A very large congregation assembled to meeting. Sidney Rigdon preached. In the afternoon there were many baptized in the font in the basement of the Temple and forty three in the Mississippi river. They were mostly rebaptisms.

**10th** We left Nauvoo yesterday and arrived at home today. Had fine weather.

**21st** Went to Columbus with some chairs, and got some paint. I attended a good meeting at Burton.

**P. 63  
1842**

**27th** We are still working at the chair business. Today attended meeting at Burton.

**June 4th** Franklin and I went to our quarterly Branch conference which was held at Elder Heman Hyde's. Jacob Myers now presided over the Freedom Branch, and consequently presided over the conference. We staid over night at Father Myers, who now lived on Mill Creek about two miles from Bro Hyde's place.

**5th Sunday.** We all went to conference again. Elder Reed delivered a discourse in the forenoon. In the afternoon, I with four others, (among whom was Franklin Allen) was ordained to the office of **elders in the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints**. I received the following **license**.

To Whom it May Concern

This certifies that Warren Foote has been received into the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints organized on the sixth day of April in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and thirty, and has been ordained an Elder according to the rules and regulations of said Church, and is duly **authorized to preach the gospel**, agreeably to the authority of that office.

From the satisfactory evidence which we have of his good moral character and his zeal for the cause of righteousness and diligent desire to persuade men to forsake evil and embrace truth, we confidently recommend him to all candid and upright people as a worthy member of society.

We therefore in the name, and by the authority of said Church grant unto this our worthy brother in the Lord this letter of commendation as a proof of our fellowship and esteem,-praying for his success and prosperity in our Redeemer's cause.

Given by the direction of a conference of elders of said church assembled at Heman Hyde's Adams County Illinois the fifth day of June in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and forty two.

Freedom Branch. Signed Jacob Myers, Presiding Elder

**7th** I went to Burton with two set of chairs for P. Judy. Rained.

**12th** I got disappointed about going to meeting, so I wrote a letter to Sister Betsy.

**19th** I went to Burton to meeting and heard a discourse from Elder A. Lamb.

**26th** I went to H. Hyde's to meeting. Wm. Hyde preached. Stayed over night at J. Myers.

**July 3rd** I attended meeting at Payson. Elder A. Lamb preached a funeral sermon.

**9th** I went to Columbus and got a letter from my brother George-all well.

**10th** I went to Burton to meeting. It is now the highth of harvest, and quite cool.

**16th** I went down to Father Myers and stayed over night, very hot day.

**17th Sunday.** We went to Bro. Hyde's to meeting. President Joseph Young preached a good discourse. I returned home tonight. Continues very warm.

**24th** I again attended meeting at bro. Hydes. Pres. Joseph Young delivered a very plain discourse on faith. The meeting was well attended.

**P. 64** **Aug 1st** Election day. I went to Columbus and voted. It was very quiet election. The weather is very cold.-  
**1842** some frost in low grounds this morning.

**7th Sunday.** I attended meeting again at Bro Hyde's. Stayed over night at Bro. Myers.

**9th** I have had the toothache very badly-Went to Columbus and had it pulled.

**10th** Today I am **25 years old**. I stacked oats for I. Ferguson.

**14th** Rainy. I did not go to meeting, but commenced to write a letter.

**21st** I wrote a letter to brother George, instead of going to meeting.

**27th** The Methodist are now holding a camp meeting, near Father Myers', Franklin and I concluded to go down to Father Myers and attend it. The weather is very fine but warm, and a good many people out.

**28th Sunday.** There was a large congregation today. A great many attends these meetings from curiosity, and hear the Methodist shout. I have seen so many Methodist revival meetings, that they are not of any interest to me. I have learned a better way to obtain salvation. At night meeting they gathered into their pen, and having got some mourners on to their anxious seats, they prayed and groaned, and finally after working themselves up into a great frenzy succeeded in raising a great shout.

**29th** We returned home, satisfied with sectarian nonsense, and feeling thankful to the Lord for the revelation of His gospel through His servant Joseph Smith, on whom he bestowed his Holy Priesthood through the laying on of hands of the ancient Apostles' Peter James and John thereby opening up the way whereby mankind can be saved and exalted in His Celestial Kingdom, through repentance and baptism and the laying on of hands for the reception of the Holy Ghost, by those ordained into this Holy Priesthood.

The gospel says repent and be baptized and you shall be saved, but sectarian preachers say "Come to the anxious seat and we will pray for you and you will get religion." What a contrast.

**Sept 1st** I finished my letter to George yesterday, and took it to the P.O. at Columbus today, and received one from Wm Ferguson. They were well.

**3rd** I went down to to attend our **quarterly conference** at bro. H Hyde's

**4th** Quite a large congregation today. Elder Miller preached an interesting discourse. Isaac M. Steward was ordained an elder.

**9th** I wrote a letter to Wm Ferguson and sent it to the Post Office .

**17th** Having hired to Father Myers (who has been a millwright for many years) I went down to work for him on a lath machine. He has a sawmill on Mill Creek, and he is attaching a lath machine to it. I worked through the week until friday the 16th then went home. Some frost.

**18th** I went down to work on the lathe machine again, and returned the 22.

**25th** I went to Payson to meeting and from thence to Father Myers.

**27th** Yesterday and today I helped thrash wheat for Father Myers with a machine.

**P. 65**

**1842**

**28th** We went to work at the lathe machine again. I am enjoying myself well.

**29th** Franklin Allen was now living in a log cabin close by the saw mill and has been working for Father Myers sometime. He has been very reserved towards me for some days. I asked him today what the matter was with him. I found that some person had been tattling and misrepresenting something that I should have said. We had a general talking over of matters and all was settled satisfactorily. I think that he was a little jealous of me probably thinking that Father Myers thought a little more of me than of him. How that is I cannot say, but this much I can say. Father Myers treats me very respectfully, and I believe I have given him satisfaction in my work.

**Oct 5th** I went home today. I will say here that I make it my home with Father and Mother on Isaac Ferguson's place. they are living very comfortably.

**6th** I went to work for Father Myers again at the sawmill.

**9th** Ice half inch thick this morning. Returned home today. Meeting at Isaac's.

**10th** I went to Columbus and mailed two papers to George.

**15th** I went down to the mill again. We are fitting up a shop to make chairs in, also a turning lathe to run by water. Returned home the 20th.

**22nd** I went down to Mill Creek and took my bed and bedding and clothes and commenced boarding with F. Allen. We have gone into co-partnership again.

**23rd** We went to Burton to attend meeting and staid to the night meeting.

**27th** I went up to Father's and returned at night.

**30th** Attended meeting at Heman Hyde's. Elder Reed preached.

**Nov 6th** It rained yesterday and did not go up to Father's neither to meeting.

**10th** I went to Burton and traded some and from there to Father's Very cold.

**11th** It snowed all day from the northeast. Fell about four inches.

**13th** I came down to Franklin's last night. Moses F. Clauson came down with me, and today I baptized him into the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints. He is the first person I have baptized. Father Myers and a few others were present. We did not attend meeting.

**18th** I went up to Father=s. It is a cold blustering day.

**22nd** Went to Columbus and found two letters in the Post Office for me-one from brother David and one from Sister Betsey.

**25th** I came down to Mill Creek to go to work again. Very cold.

**27th Sunday.** It is so very cold that I did not go to meeting.

**29th** I went to Burton. Snow is about six inches deep. Very cold weather.

**Dec 4th** I attended our quarterly conference held at Burton. But few present.

**5th Sunday.** We went to conference again. It rained all day, and there were but few persons to meeting. Moses F. Clauson was ordained to the office of an elder. We held a prayer meeting at night at Bro. Wm Golliehei's where we enjoyed much of the Spirit of the Lord. We staid over night in Burton.

**P. 66**

**1842**

**10th** I went up to Father's in company with Franklin Allen and Samuel Myers. We attended meeting at Isaac Ferguson=s on **Sunday the 11th.**

**12th** We went back to Mill Creek again.

**11th** I went up to Burton in a jumper in company with **Miss Sidnie Myers** to meeting.

**18th** I attended meeting in Payson. The sacrament was administered.

**23rd** Samuel Myers and I went up to Father's and on the 24th we went out and killed several prairie chickens, and mother made an excellent pot pie for supper, which we enjoyed very much. Father felt unusually well.

**25th** We went down to Burton to meeting, and took Christmas dinner with bro. Skinner. We then went down to Mill Creek.

**30th** Yesterday I commenced work for father Myers sawing lumber.

**31st** I went up to father's to spent New Year's. I have lived to see the end of another year, whilst many have passed to worlds invisible. I should feel very ungrateful not to acknowledge the goodness of God in sparing my unprofitable life, but I feel to regret that I have not lived more devoted to His cause, but all I can do now, is to seek his forgiveness for all past errors and follies, and to strive to live more faithful for the future. I have traveled this year in this immediate region 900 miles.

## **CHAPTER 5**

**Jan. 1st 1843.** Sunday. I attended meeting at Isaac Ferguson's, and then went down to Franklin Allen's

**2nd** I took some chairs to Burton.

**9th** I came up to Father's yesterday, and helped kill his hogs today.

**10th** I went to Quincy with Father to sell his hogs. There is an establishment here for making lard oil. I purchased a pocket bible.

**11th** I went to Columbus and found a letter in the P.O. from George.

**15th** I wrote a letter to brother David and one to Sister Betsey yesterday and put them in the Burton P.O. today also attended our meeting after which I went on down to Mill Creek.

**16th** I commenced boarding with Father Jacob Myers.

**22nd** The past week has been quite warm. The snow is all gone I sawed four days at the sawmill last week for Father Myers. Moses F. Clauson and Hiram Brown came here. I did not attend meeting today.

**30th** F. Allen and his wife and Samuel Myers, and his Sisters, Sidnie, and Lovina, and myself, went to Burton to attend a meeting appointed for Elder David Evens to preach. The house was full. He preached a very good discourse. It snowed, and being Late we concluded to stay all night.

**Feb 1st** It was very cold and blustering yesterday, and we did not get home until today.

**2nd** Samuel Myers, and I went to Quincey.

**5th** Very cold weather.

**9th** Franklin and I went up to Fathers. Weather some warmer.

**P. 67  
1843**

**10th** Rained some this morning, then turned very cold and froze solid.

**12th** I attended meeting at Mr Kimmon's house one mile from Isaac Ferguson's and at night I went down to Mill Creek with Moses F. Clauson and Samuel Myers.

**15th** Went to Burton and purchased a few things. We kept chairs at P. Judy's for sale, or rather he bought them of us to sell again. We sold the common "kitchen chair painted, without bottoms for fifty cents apiece--bottomed seventy five. Bent backs painted, varnished and hickery bark bottoms we sold at \$1.25 apiece. These were very nice durable chairs.

**18th** I went to Quincy with F. Allen. I got my watch which I had got repaired.

**26th** I was not well the past week-did not work any.

**March 4th** We went to Payson to attend our **quarterly conference**. Samuel Myers was ordained to the office of Priest and some other business transacted.

**5th Sunday**. Conference convened at 10 o'clock A.M. as per adjournment. The house was full. Wilford Hudson was ordained a priest. Conference to meet again in three months. It turned very cold in the afternoon.

**7th** I went to Burton. The weather is some warmer again.

**11th** I went up to Father's. Got a shovel and pair of tongs of Bro. Wm Gollieher who is a blacksmith and took them to Fathers- very cold winds today.

**12** Went to meeting which was held at Daniel D. McArthur's about one half mile from Father's. I here preached my first sermon. I took for a text the 16th verse of the 3rd chapter of Paul's epistle to the Philippians. I think that my sermon was about as short as my text in comparison.

Although I have spoken in our prayer meetings, but always very briefly I find that it is quite different to undertake to deliver a discourse. I could sit down and write a sermon much better than I can preach it. I have written a great many letters on the subject of the gospel as taught by the Latter Day Saints, which my relatives could not gainsay, but when it comes to standing up before a congregation to deliver a sermon I find it an uphill business. I can't think of any thing to say. But still I am determined not to back out when called upon, but will do the best I can.

The first prayer I ever made before any person was at Father Myers, when I was called upon by Mother Myers to offer up the family prayer. It was a terrible hard task and perhaps what made it worse my **future wife** was present. When I went to boarding there I had to take my turn in reading a chapter and singing and praying morning and evening. **Father Myers is very strict in his family worship.**

**13th** I went down to Father Myers again.

**14th** Turned cold and snowed very fast.

**14th** We went to Burton to attend a special conference which had been called to settle a difficulty between Isaac Ferguson and Joseph Clark. After a long harrangue they came to trial, the final conclusion was that both make a confession, which they did, and shook hands, forgiving each other.

P. 68  
1843

**19th Sunday.** I staid over night with Bro Gollihers, where the meeting was held today. Moses F. Clauson preached his first sermon which was not very lengthy. Father Myers followed him and filled up the time. The elders have their appointments given out a week beforehand so we all know when our turn comes, and can prepare for it.

**22nd** The weather is very cold today with high winds.

**24th** Moses accompanied me up to Father's. One year today since I was baptized.

**26th** Sunday and very cold and snowy. I went back to Mill Creek again.

**28th** Snow is about six inches deep. I went to Burton and back yesterday.

**29th** Went to Quincy and got my watch fixed. Very cool winds.

**Apr. 1st** I got a letter from Sister Betsey. Warm today. Snow nearly all gone.

**2nd Sunday.** Snowed about four inches. Did not go to meeting.

**6th** I went to Quincy and purchased a pair of boots.

**9th** Attended meeting at Burton. Franklin Allen preached followed by Father. The past week I worked for Father Myers. The ground is about settled.

**16th** I worked for Father Myers again last week. today is **Easter Sunday.**

**22nd** Moses F. Clauson and I went to Quincy with a load of lumber. We have been running the sawmill for Father Myers.

**23rd** I went up to Father's and went with him to meeting to bro Joseph Clark's;-had a good meeting. The weather is very fine.

**25th** I went down to Mill Creek to work again.

**30th** Attended meeting at Burton. It fell to my lot to preach again. We had a good meeting. Moses C. and I went up to Fathers after meeting.

**May 1st** I wrote a letter to Sister Betsey to inform her that I cannot go east this spring, after which I came back to Mill Creek to work again.

**11th** I went to the Institute to get some furniture. I had been doing some turning for them, such as bedstead posts and table legs for which they were to make me two bedsteads and a table- They did not have them done. The Institute is a place of

learning where the pupils can work for their board and tuition: It is about three miles east of Quincy. There are two young Indians there now being educated. They look like pretty smart fellows.

**12th** I went up to Father's. I feel quite unwell-Some rainy.

**14th Sunday.** I feel better again. In the forenoon I went to meeting at Bro. Joseph Clark's, and in the afternoon went down to Father Myers.

**16th** Franklin Allen and I contracted with Father Myers for his sawmill and other property attached to it, and entered into bonds for the same.

**20th** Yesterday I went up to Fathers and have been helping him plant corn.

**21st** Moses C. accompanied me down to Mill Creek.

**P. 69** **23rd** I walked to Quincy and from there to Father's. The distance is 20 miles.

**1843**

**24th** I returned to Mill Creek again. The weather is very warm.

**28th** Had a heavy rain yesterday, and today the creek is very high.

**30th** I went to Quincy to purchase some things **preparatory to taking a wife.**

**31st** Went to Burton and settled up accounts with P. Judy and Wm. Gollihier and then went up to Father's calling at Caleb Foster's and settling up with him.

**June 3rd** I attended our quarterly conference. The Freedom Branch extended over so large territory making it very inconvenient for all to attend meetings, it was thought best to divide the Branch. This part of the branch still retains the name of Freedom, the other **Branch** is called **New Liberty** and I was elected **clerk.** Had a good conference.

**6th** I went up to Father's, to bring Father and Mother down to Jacob Myer's to **my wedding.** I also engaged **Elder Amos Jackson** to marry us.

**8th** I came down to Father Myers with Father and Mother, Isaac Ferguson and my Sister Almira, also Elder Jackson to attend my wedding. About noon today **Artemisia Sidnie Myers** and I were joined together for life as husband and wife, Amos Jackson officiating. It was a very social gathering. Father and Mother have lived to witness the marriage of their last child. I think it is a great blessing to have the privilege of being raised up to manhood and womanhood by ones own parents. And I thank God for this privilege. It must be a consolation to parents, that when they depart hence, to reflect that they are leaving no helpless children behind, to be cared for by others. An orphan's lot is often a hard lot.

**25th** My wife and I went up to Father's on a visit. We enjoyed ourselves well.

**July 3rd** We returned to Father Myers again. I am now engaged in turning and chair making in company with Franklin Allen.

**15th** Father Myers took his team, and F. Allen and his wife, and I and my wife went with him to Widow Moores down to Mississippi bottom Pike Co. to attend meeting. I and my wife staid at the Widow's over night. We never closed our eyes to sleep on account of the mosquitoes.

**16th** The meeting today was well attended. There were two baptized by J. Myers. After meeting my wife and I went home with Bro Sherman Brown one of my old Greenwood neighbors and staid over night.

**17th** No mosquitoes last night-had a splendid sleep. Returned home today.

**20th** Attended a special conference at Heman Hyde's.

**25th** My wife and I went to Quincy with Father Myers to get things to keep house with. I have got my furniture from the Institute.

**26th** We moved into a log cabin belonging to Father Myers near the sawmill and commence housekeeping. I have made myself a very nice set of chairs and two rocking chairs. We were fixed very comfortable.

**28th** I went up to Burton. Some rainy today.

**P. 70  
1843**

**Aug. 4th** Franklin and I went to Quincy, where I purchased a few articles.

**7th** We went up to Burton to attend the election. Took dinner at Mr. Judy's.

**10th** I am **twenty six years old** today. I have not been well a few days past.

**22nd** The Methodist have been holding a camp meeting very near our house. We could not sleep nights on account of their noise. yesterday afternoon their preacher requested the congregation to go out into the woods after the meeting was dismissed and have secret prayers. Soon after we could hear them praying in every direction, -not much secrecy about it certain. They broke up their camp meeting today, and went home rejoicing.

**Sept. 2nd** Attended our conference at Bro Hyde's. Elder E. P. Davis was tried before the conference for unchristianlike conduct in getting drunk etc. It was decided to take his license from him.

**3rd Sunday.** Conference convened at 10 A.M. Elder Hitchcock preached after which E. P. Davis made his confession and was restored to full fellowship. I took down the minutes of the conference.

**9th** I took my wife up to Father's for a visit. Cold northeast wind.

**11th** It rained all day yesterday and did not go to meeting. Returned home today.

**14th** I wrote some Elder's licenses. It is getting very sickly, weather very warm.

**Oct. 13th** There was frost on the night of the 7th inst. My health is very poor, -I think that I am getting the Ague. I have not worked any the past week.

**17th** I had a terrible shake of the ague today which lasted about three hours.

**18th** Sidnie and I both shook with the ague today and no one to wait on us.

**19th** We both shook again today. Father came down and took us home with him. I find that it is a good thing yet to have a Father and Mother.

**20th** I missed my shake today, but am so sore that I can scarcely stir.

**25th** We have both recovered from the ague, and feel quite well again.

**Nov. 2nd** We returned home today and found our things in a very confused state.

**4th** Franklin and I took some wheat to Quincy, (which we had taken in for chairs,) to sell. We could only get fifty cents per bus. for it in goods.

**11th** I took a little grist to Lacy's Steam Grist Mill about two miles away.

**27th** I killed my hog today. Cloudy and drizzly.

**Dec. 2nd** My wife is about crazy with the toothache. I got a horse of Father Myers, and took her on behind me, up to Mr. Foster's and got the tooth pulled, we then went to Fathers and staid over night.

**10th Sunday.** I staid at home, and done some writing.

**16th** This morning Sidnie was taken sick with severe pain. At about eleven o'clock at night she was prematurely delivered of her child. She hurt herself in washing clothes the day before.

**17th** The child which was a boy died today about two o'clock P.M.

**31st** I went to Down's Schoolhouse to meeting. It was quite rainy. Another year has passed into eternity and I still live. My health has been very poor this year.

**P. 71  
1844**

**Jan 1st 1844** This is a very rainy New Year=s day. Staid at home.

**3rd** Yesterday the snow fell about three inches. Today it is cold. Wrote a letter to Betsey.

**6th** I went up to Father's and passing through Burton put my letter in the office. Snowed.

**7th** Father and I went to meeting at Joseph Clarks. Was called upon to speak first and was followed by Father Myers, who had come up from Mill Creek. We had an excellent meeting after which I returned home in company with Father Myers. We came by the way of Burton and administered to Sister Gollilier who was very sick and laying very low.

**13th** We attended a special conference at Down's Schoolhouse, which was called for the purpose of hearing a charge against bro John G. Smith preferred by Sister Blair wife of Elder Blair. The trial occupied the whole day. Adjourned until tomorrow.

**14th** Conference convened and the trial resumed. After meeting dismissed last night, Mrs. Blair procured a club and working her way through the crowd until she came to J. G. Smith, fell to beating him most unmercifully. It came so unexpectedly to Bro Smith, that she gave him several blows before he succeeded in wresting the club from her. It took every body by surprise. This morning when the case was resumed. Bro Blair justified his wife in assaulting Bro Smith, and neither having any disposition to retract they were both cut off from the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints.

**21st Sunday.** I have been sick all the past week. Did not go to meeting today.

**Feb. 17th** I went up to Father's. We rented some land of Isaac Ferguson and I came to the conclusion to move up here and farm this season with Father.

**24th** I went to Father's again and took up a horse. It is warm and the ground mostly settled.

**March 2nd** Attended our quarterly conference at Down's Schoolhouse. Elder Orson Hyde was present. He had with him Joseph Smith's Views of the Powers and Policy of Government which he read. We considered it a very able document. Elder Hyde delivered an excellent discourse to the Saints.

**3rd Sunday.** Conference convened at ten A.M. Elder Hyde preached again today. As I had made arrangements to move from this branch, I resigned my office of clerk, and Bro Asa D. Works was elected to that office

**4th** I went to Burton and purchased some linseed oil. I met with Father there.

**6th** I went to Quincy with Samuel Myers. I purchased some things for Sidnie.

**17th** I went up to Fathers to get him to come down with the team and move me up there. It is a windy day, and growing cold and freezing.

**19th** We moved up to Isaac's to live in his house with Sister Almira.

**28th** I went down to Mill Creek yesterday after my turning lathe-returned today.

**29th** It snowed and blowed hard all day from the north east.

**Apr. 6th** I got a buggy and took Sidnie down to Father Myers to visit over night.

**7th** Had a heavy shower last night. Returned home today. Very muddy.

**P. 72  
1844**

**13th** I finished putting in six acres of oats. It is a very growing time.

**30th** I took some wheat down to Father Myer's Mill to get ground, he having put a run of stones in his sawmill. Sidnie went with me. We staid over night.

**May 1st** We returned home. It has been very rainy for sometime past.

**12th** My Sister Betsey Clement sent us word that she was at Quincy and wanted us to come and bring her out here. She came from New York State by water with all her family but one daughter who was married.

**13th** I went after Betsey, and returned. It was a joyful meeting. We had not seen her for seven or eight years. Her children's names who came with her are Nancy, Albert, Elizabeth, Darius S. Mary Irene, and Thomas Alma. Sister Betsey and her husband Joined the church several years ago. He died some few years since.

**18th** I attended conference at bro Joseph Clark's, and was elected **clerk** of the **New Liberty Branch**. It continues very wet weather.

**23rd** I went down to Father Myers after his mare to work, and returned.

**26th** Attended meeting at bro J. Clark's. After meeting I rebaptized Elihu Allen, Joseph Clark, and John B. Carpenter. We ordained E. Allen Priest, and Joseph Clark Teacher. It is so wet that we cannot plant corn.

**31st** Went to Quincy with Albert Clement and others. I purchased a brace and bitts, shaving knife and some other things.

**June 2nd** Was at meeting at J. Clark's. Weather clear once more.

**8th** Been married one year. We finished planting corn today.

**9th Sunday.** My wife with five others were rebaptized by Elder J. B. Carpenter.

**11th** Sidnie and I went down to Father Myers' with Elihu Allen. Returned the 12th.

**14th** I wrote a letter to my brother David. There is so much rain corn cannot grow.

**16th** Went to meeting. Father Myers preached. Sacrament was administered. It is reported that the citizens of Nauvoo have destroyed the **printing press** of the "**Nauvoo Expositor**," and there is a great excitement in Hancock Co. The "**Nauvoo Expositor** is a most slanderous, libelous and filthy sheet just started in Nauvoo by a set of apostates who are seeking the life of Joseph Smith and the destruction of the Church. The **City Council declared it a nuisance** and ordered the Mayor to have it abated which was done. The type was scattered in the street and press destroyed.

**23rd Sunday.** I baptized Albert Clement. Helen Allen and Laura Allen. Father preached today. After he was through some others spoke. Elder Carpenter arose and spoke in tongues, after which, Hiram Clark, son of Joseph Clark a young man, expressed his desire to be baptized. He seemed to be very much affected. We repaired to the water, and Elder Stevens baptized him, after which we assembled again and Bro Carpenter and I administered the sacrament.

We understand that mobs are gathering in Hancock County, and there is great excitements throughout the State, caused by the lying reports of the apostates and anti-Mormons. The fuss has been brewing for some time.

**P. 73**

**1844**

**28th** Elihu Allen and I were working in the harvest field cutting his wheat when about three o'clock P.M. my wife came out and told us that word had just come that **Joseph Smith and his brother Hiram was shot in Carthage Jail yesterday afternoon.**

I said at once, "that it cannot be so." Yet it so affected us that we dropped the cradle and rake and went home. We found that the word had come so straight that we could no longer doubt the truth of it. We all felt as though the powers of darkness had overcome, and that the Lord had forsaken His people. Our Prophet and Patriarch were gone! Who now is to lead the Saints? In fact we mourned "as one mourneth for his only son."

Yet after all the anguish of our hearts, and deep mourning of our souls a spirit seemed to whisper "All is well. Zion shall yet arise and spread abroad upon the earth, and the kingdoms of this world shall become the Kingdom of our God and His Christ." So we felt to trust in God.

**30th Sunday.** The Saints assembled in meeting. All felt to mourn for our loss of the prophets of God, nevertheless all

seemed to be strong in the faith, believing that the Lord would overrule all things for the good of His people.

Last Friday a mob gathered in Columbus and took all the firearms from the few saints living there and also at Liberty near this place, but did not molest us.

The same day at evening the Governor came to Columbus, on his way to Quincy. He seemed to be very much frightened. As he had been at Carthage and Nauvoo with quite an army of militia and mobbers he was well acquainted with all the facts in the case.

He told the people that while Joseph Smith and Hiram Smith were in Carthage jail awaiting their trial, and as he supposed were safely guarded from the mob and while he was absent to Nauvoo a mob of 150 or 200 with painted faces overpowered the guard and broke into the jail killing Joseph and Hiram Smith and wounding John Taylor. (For the facts in the case of this high handed murder see the Church History also 135 section of Book of Doctrine and Covenants) Governor Thomas Ford's talk allayed the excitement of the people in a great measure, and no more proceeding against the Saints were adopted .

**July 7th** The excitement in this part of the state has subsided and I think that honorable men begin to see what fools they have been, to think that a few "Mormons" was a going to overrun the State of Illinois and massacre women and children, and all this while the "Mormons" themselves were scattered with their families throughout the entire State. No Latter Day Saint ever thought of such a thing but have been quietly engaged in their harvest and other business, willing to leave it all in the hands of the Lord, who hath said AVengeance is mine and I will repay.Ⓜ I worked all last week harvesting.

The rainy weather still continues.

**P. 74  
1844**

**10th** I feel quite unwell today. The weather is very hot and unhealthy.

**14th** I attended meeting today although I feel very feeble

**17th** Sister Cordelia McArthur died today. She is the daughter of bro Joseph Clark and wife of Daniel D. McArthur. She leaves an infant boy.

**19th** Bro Hiram Clark who was baptized about one month ago died today. He was a brother to Sister McArthur. He died of the inflammation of the bowels.

**21st** Went to meeting. I had to take the lead. It is getting dryer weather.

**24th** I took some wheat to Quincy to sell. It is very low. Rained again.

**Aug. 1st** Sidnie and I went down to Father Myers on a visit. Showered again.

**5th** Election day. We went home yesterday and today I went to Burton to vote after which I went down to Father Myers again.

**7th** Sidnie and Lovina Myers went with me to Quincy today. I bought cloth for a coat.

**9th** I went to Quincy again yesterday with Samuel Myers, and returned home with Sidnie today. The weather is very warm.

**10th** I am twenty seven today. I worked all day stacking our oats.

**11th** Went to meeting. Father, and Father Myers preached- had a good meeting.

**12th** I went to help drive some tithing cattle to Quincy, the proceeds of which is to be applied in **building the Temple at Nauvoo.**

**14th** I took Mother and my wife to Father Stevens' on a visit. Sister Stevens is a distant relative of Father's on the Barker side.

**15th** I have had Father Myers buggy here some time. Today I took it home.

**Sept. 6th** Went to Mill Creek with my wife and Albert Clement. We found Samuel Myers sick, but was getting better. He had been very sick. We staid at Father Myers over Sunday and returned on Monday.

**14th** Having made arrangements to go back to Mill Creek to live again I moved down there today. We will stop at Father Myer's a short time.

**28th** I have been several times up to Fathers. The season has been so wet that we did not raise any corn, and the oats were very light. I did not make any thing much in farming. We are going to work at chairs again.

**Oct. 7th** Samuel Myers went with me up to Fathers,-returned at night.

**25th** Franklin Allen and I started for Nauvoo. We staid over night at Mr. Lindsay's.

**26th** We arrived at Nauvoo about sundown. We stopped at Wm. Weeks. Quite cold.

**27th Sunday.** We attended the meeting of the Seventies at their Hall. We were **ordained to the office of Seventies** under the hands of **Pres. Joseph Young** and **Henry Jacobs**. President J. Young made some excellent remarks.

**28th** We went to see Bro Duncan McArthur, with whom we were well acquainted. Having learned that he was one of the number who had been appointed to teach the **principle of Celestial Marriage** to the saints, according to the **revelation given to Joseph Smith** on that subject we desired to get some correct information on that principle. The doctrine having never been taught publicly there were all sorts of reports concerning it.

**P. 75  
1844**

He very willingly taught and explained to us that doctrine in such a simple manner, as to remove all prejudice we had against the doctrine of plural marriage. He showed us the necessity of marriage for eternity in order to obtain an exaltation in the Celestial Kingdom.

I felt to rejoice, that the doubts and fears that had been resting on my mind with regard to plural marriage caused by the traditions of the Fathers, were all removed. By the aid of the light of the Spirit I could in a measure see the glory and beauty of that principle. It was very plain that our marriage covenants were only for time, they last only through this life. We are not bound as husbands and wives for eternity but all our domestic relations were dissolved at death.

We learned that the celestial Law binds for time and eternity, and our connexion as husbands and wives, parents, and children never ceases in time nor all eternity, and we will continue to increase while eternities roll around. We went and looked at the Temple and in the afternoon started for home.

Went four miles south of Nauvoo and staid over night at Bro E. Hanks.

**29th** We traveled as far as Morely's Settlement and staid over night with cousin M. Clauson.

**30th** We arrived at home about two o'clock P.M. The weather was very fine.

**31st** Sidnie and I moved to ourselves again in the log cabin where we used to live. We were very glad to be to ourselves again, for we had not been since we left here.

**Nov. 2nd** Yesterday I went up to Father's after my hogs, and hens, and returned today. Albert Clement came down with me to go to work at chairs.

**9th** Franklin Allen and I concluded to haul some wood to Quincy to sell and get us some store goods. I went today with a load. We get \$2.00 per cord in goods. The wood has to be chopped four feet in length and white ash at that.

**11th** Took a load of wood to Quincy again. Had a drizzling rain all day.

**21st** I got Mr. C. Foster to pull two of my teeth. Hauled 3 loads of hay from Fathers this week.

**25th** Went up to Father's again and got a fat hog and a load of oats.

**Dec. 1st** Very pleasant. I took three load of wood to Quincy last week. Got some boots etc.

**8th** Went with Father Myers to conference at Down's School house. I was elected **clerk of Freedom Branch again**. Elder James Braden was disfellowshipped for dishonest dealings with his stepdaughter.

**15th** Very cold. We have been to work in the shop the past week.

**25th** Monday, Tuesday, and today. I have been helping F. Allen haul his hay from Mr. Pond's. We made a trip a day. This evening, I with my wife and Albert Clement went by invitation to Bro. Abraham Miller's to partake of a Christmas supper. We had a very agreeable time. The weather is very warm for Christmas.

**P. 76  
1844**

**31st** Another year has rolled around, and I am yet in the land of the living, for which I feel to thank my God, for his goodness and longsuffering towards me. But when I take retrospective view of my life for the year past, I find that I have been rather slothful in keeping the commandments of our Lord and Savior. Many times I have erred through weakness of the flesh, but as many times I have gone to my Father in heaven to ask his forgiveness, and have obtained it. But instead of going on from knowledge to knowledge as I should have done I have given way to the temptations of the evil one.

Thus we can see the frailties of human nature, and except a person is continually led by the Spirit of God he is liable to be led astray by the cunning devices of Satan. Now we can see the necessity of keeping the command of the Savior, which says, "Watch and pray lest ye enter into temptation" Here then, we find that prayer is one of the greatest duties enjoined upon us in order to guard against temptations.

I am well convinced by experience that it is utterly impossible for a person to retain the Spirit of God without attending regularly to their prayers. By prayer many times our faith is increased our minds enlarged and our souls are made to rejoice with joy unspeakable and full of glory. Yes, when the saint of God is cast down and nearly worn out with afflictions, and persecutions, he then pours forth his soul in fervent prayer to the Almighty in secret. He who seeth in secret fills his heart with joy and peace by giving him a foretaste of that glory which is laid up for the righteous. Thus he becomes more firm in the faith and is better prepared to withstand the scoffs and scorns and persecutions heaped upon him by an ungodly world.

It is through prayer in the name of Jesus that we make known our desires to our Father in heaven and receive whatsoever we ask for in faith. When a person prays by the Spirit of God, he has the mind of God, therefore he asks for those things which it is the mind of God to give him, and it is the mind of God to give him such things as will be for his benefit. Hence how necessary it is to pray with the spirit that we may obtain the blessings that we ask for, and not ask amiss.

This year has witnessed the murder of two of the best men that this generation could boast of. Joseph and Hiram Smith were murdered in cold blood in Carthage jail, and their blood is now crying from the ground to God for vengeance, which He will avenge in His own due time for he will avenge the blood of His saints, when their enemies are fully ripened in their iniquities.

The Church is now under the direction of the Twelve Apostles. After Joseph Smith's death, Sidney Rigdon being one of his Counselors, set up his claim for the presidency, but was rejected, and the Twelve were sustained by the great body of the Church. Rigdon then went to Pittsburgh Pa to establish his church. He says that those who adhere to the Twelve are the foolish virgins, and those who go with him are the wise. But according to the scripture there were as many wise as foolish consequently Rigdon and his followers cannot be the wise, for but a very few who belonged to the Church followed him.

I have had very poor health the past year and have not earned much but made out to Live.



## CHAPTER 6

P. 77

1845

**Jan 1st 1845.** I worked in the shop today. Father and Sister Betsey came down to make us a visit. It is very warm weather, and the frost is all out of the ground.

**4th** I went to Quincy with another load of wood and purchased a pair of shoes.

**11th Sunday.** The conference was held at my house today. Abraham Miller was disfellowshipped. E. P. Davis preached a short discourse.

**12th** My wife and I have both been sick with a cold the past week. She is smart again.

**13th** I have got able to go to Quincy with Albert Clement. We took a load of wood.

**14th** I went up to Father's to help him clean up his wheat Sidnie went with me.

**15th** we got the most of the wheat cleaned. At night there was a very heavy thunder shower.

**17th** I returned home yesterday. Our conference convened again today. A. Miller was restored to fellowship also James Braden.

**Feb. 9th** Meeting was held at my house again. The weather is very pleasant.

**14th** Elder Geo. D. Watt came to Father Myers this week on a mission to the saints throughout the State of Illinois. Today we attended meeting at Bro Down's. Elder Watt, delivered his message to the Saints which in substance was this. The Twelve had sent him to say to the Saints that it was the will of the Lord that all the saints scattered throughout the State to gather into Hancock County as soon as they could reasonably do so. Had a good meeting.

**17th** Elder Watt wished me to accompany him up to the New Liberty Branch. I done so, walking on foot. We staid over night at Father's.

**18th** The members of the Columbus and Liberty Branches assembled at Isaac Ferguson's, and bro Watt preached a very exelent discourse, of which many arose and bore testimony. I returned home after meeting. It is very warm weather.

**March 2nd** Our conference convened today. It was so very cold that I did not attend.

**10th** Yesterday Sidnie and I went up to Father's on a little visit. Returned today.

**16th** I attended meeting at Bro Martin's. Elder Packard preached.

**26th** Isaac Ferguson and Mother came down today to see us, and staid over night.

**30th** Albert Clement and I went up to Father's intending to go from there to Nauvoo.

**Apr. 2nd** I started for Nauvoo with J. Clark. He was moving his family to China Creek twelve miles south of Nauvoo. We staid over night three miles from Bear Creek.

**3rd** We arrived at China Creek, where Bro. Clark had rented a place. I Ferguson, A. Clement and myself looked around some to find a place. Isaac partly bargained for one close by the place that J. Clark stopped on. We went on towards Nauvoo and staid over night eight miles south of that place.

**4th** Went on to Nauvoo and I put up at Mother Moore's place who had moved there from Pike Co. She had been a member of Freedom Branch. Her son Enoch lived with her.

P. 78

1845

**6th General Conference** commenced today. The wind blew terribly from the north and they had to move the meeting into a hollow to get sheltered from the wind. Brigham Young presided. The congregation was very large; although it was so windy. We had excellent preaching. I joined the **Ninth Quorum of Seventies**.

**7th** I took a severe cold yesterday and the wind blows very cold this morning, but I thought that I would attend conference which I did in the forenoon but I had to go to bed in the afternoon with a severe pain in my side. Brigham Young said today "From henceforth let this place be called the City of Joseph." The congregation today was estimated at 20,000.

**8th** I was not able to attend the conference in the forenoon, but went in the afternoon. It was adjourned after meeting until the sixth of next October.

**9th** The **Seventies** held a General Conference today. Three new Quorums were organized. There are now **twenty four Quorums**. I left the City about four o'clock and went down as far as Bro. Skinner's and got a chance to ride home with Bro Amos Jackson who lives near Fathers. We drove on about five miles further and stopped over night with Bro. Adams, who used to live in Columbus.

**10th** We took a new route going home, passing near Knowlton's Settlement, and then near Woodville, and through Columbus. I staid at Father's over night.

**11th** I started out early this morning and walked home, where I arrived about seven o'clock A.M. My health continues very poor.

**17th** Isaac Ferguson has got a place near Montebello on China Creek and Father and I have concluded to move up there too, and take up new land.

**21st** I went up to Fathers to make arrangements about moving.

**24th** There was a terrible storm, and the wind blowed a great deal of timber down and done considerable damage on Columbus prairie .

**25th** Mill Creek is very high. I am now beginning to prepare to move.

**May 4th** I started bag and baggage for Hancock Co. and went up to Fathers to go with him.

**5th** We all started this morning about eight o'clock. Had a good time, and traveled about twenty miles, and stopped three miles northwest of Fairfield.

**6th** Resumed our journey. We found the buffalo gnats very troublesome today. We arrived at Isaac Ferguson's about sundown, all well. He had moved up a short time previous. Father left his hogs with Mr. Leverett to fatten on shares.

**7th** I moved into a room of Bro Clark's house until I can build a house.

**11th** We went to Nauvoo to meeting. Wm. Smith brother of the prophet preached to a very large congregation. Meeting was commenced when we got there and I did not hear much of the forenoon sermon. In the afternoon his text was "Strive to enter in at the straight gate" etc. He preached an excellent discourse teaching humility and holiness of heart without which no man can see the Lord. He exhorted the Saints to put away all vulgarity and profanity for these things cannot enter into the Kingdom of Heaven. At 4 o'clock we attended the Seventies Conference. There were about 16 ordained Seventies and some other business transacted. We started home a little before sundown where we arrived at 11 P.M.

**P. 79**

**1845**

**12th** We commenced planting corn today. The weather is getting very dry.

**15th** The Twelve have appointed today for fasting and prayer to the Lord, beseeching him to protect His saints from mob violence, and to give them peace, that the building of the Temple be not hindered neither other works the Lord has assigned them. Meeting was held in this branch, which is called Montebello Branch. Dr. Spurgeon is presiding elder. There seems to be a division with the Saints here. Some claim another organization. They live below us on the creek and hold their meetings by themselves. Father generally attends their meetings and thinks that they are in the right of it. I think that it will all come around right, inasmuch as they are honest.

**20th** We finished planting our corn. The weather is dry and cool, some appearance of rain.

**31st** Isaac F. Thomas Clement and I went to Nauvoo. I purchased a few things.

**June 1st** Attended meeting, and then returned home. We had good preaching.

**8th** Samuel Myers came to our house today. Two years since I was married. The people here wants me to take up a school. I have concluded to do so, and yesterday I drew up a paper for subscribers. They have a log schoolhouse.

**22nd** It has been very rainy this week. I moved last Saturday into Father's shanty with him.

**27th** It has been very rainy for sometime, It is warm now, and corn grows very fast.

**28th** Isaac and I went to Nauvoo. I traded some. We staid over night with Bro Gollilier.

**29th** We attended meeting. **Elder Benson** and **President B. Young** preached in the forenoon. In the afternoon **John Taylor** preached. We returned home at night.

**July 6th** I am getting along well with my school. Attended meeting at the schoolhouse.

**Aug. 10th** My birthday again. I went to meeting and heard Bro. Hitchcock preach.

**11th** Father, and I, and some others went to the election which was held a little above Montebello on the banks of the Mississippi river. Mother was taken sick today.

**12th** We finished raising my log house today. It is very showery now a days.

**13th** Mother is very sick today. Has a high fever and is delirious. Got my house covered.

**14th** Father was taken sick. He had a very hard shake of the ague, and a very high fever after it. Mother appears some better.

**15th** Mother is very sick again. Father is so that he can walk about some. He went to one of our neighbors, Bro Hallett and administered to Sister Hallett who was sick of a fever. She began to amend from that time forth. In accordance to Mother's request I sent for Dr. Spergen but he would not come to see her. He is the president of this branch and does not like because Father attends the meetings of the other party. He attends meeting there generally.

**16th** Father had a chill and a very high fever after it, during which he was delirious.

**17th Sunday.** Mother appeared better yesterday, but is very sick today. Father is so that he walked about one half mile to meeting. He is very much troubled about Mother. She has never yet joined the Church, and his faith has always been that she would, before she died according to the promise of the Lord to him.

**P. 80** He says that he has asked the Lord to put some of her sickness upon him, that he may help her bear the  
**1845** burthen; and if either of them are to be taken away he wants it to be him. He was very much affected at the meeting.

Mother is very much worse again. Bro. Goldsmith and Drown came home with Father after meeting and administered to Mother. I dismissed school last week to work at my house; and have moved into it. I built it close by Father's, so as to have an entry between.

**18th** I commenced school again. Father is very bad again. He has light chills and very high fever after it. After the fever abates he sleeps very soundly.

**19th** There was a very heavy shower this morning, and Father's shanty being covered with bark it leaks badly. I got Mother into my house, and made out to keep Father's bed dry. I did not teach school today but after Dr. Spergen to come and see Mother. He came in the afternoon and gave her an emetic, and left a potion of calomel, and two of pills. Father is very sick-he will not take medicine.

**20th** I taught school today. Father and Mother are failing. It is very sickly all about.

**21st** I think it very doubtful if Father and mother recover. They are very low today.

**22nd** I had to dismiss my school this morning in order to take care of Father and Mother. My Sister Betsy's family was sick and Sister Almira was not able to be about. I sent for Dr. Spergen again. I saw that Father was failing very fast a could not hold out much longer. I asked him if he was willing to go He said that he must be reconciled. I then asked him if he wanted the Elders to administer to him. He said he did. I asked who, and he answered any one that has faith. He said that he desired to live to get his endowment in the Temple.

He was in his right mind until noon when his fever arose; About three o'clock his fever abated and he fell into a sound sleep. I tried to awaken him at sundown, but could not. Albert Clement and James Wright came to sit up with him. We rubbed him, and tried every way to awaken him. Having been broken of my rest for many nights, I laid down having told them to awaken me if he appeared to get any worse.

During all this time Mother lay insensible. Dr. Spergen came but did not give her any medicine. He gave her up to die. I had slept about an hour when Albert awoke me and said that Father was worse. I arose immediately and saw that he was dying. I sent Albert for his mother, but her children were so sick that she could not leave them.

**Father's** breathing became shorter and shorter until about eleven o'clock when he **ceased to breathe** and his spirit took its flight. He never moved a limb or muscle, and his countenance was calm and tranquil, and he appeared as though he was still asleep, although he had ceased to breathe. He was 76 years and 15 days old according to his record but the Foote Geneology makes him one year older.

In about an hour after **Father died, my wife began to have labor pains.** I sent immediatly for Dr. Spergen and some of the Sisters who soon came. During this time I expected every moment to see Mother breathe her last. About day break she revived a little, but did not realize any thing that was going on.

P. 81  
1845

**23rd** About half past nine o'clock A.M. Aug. 23rd my wife was delivered of a **son**, whom I immediately named **David** after my Father, there being only ten and an half hours between his birth and Father's death. I sent to Nauvoo to get cloth to make two shrouds as we did not think that Mother would live until night.

**24th Father** was **buried today in the Nauvoo Cemetery.** I was obliged to stay at home to take care of Mother and my wife. None of our folks could attend but Isaac Ferguson my brother-in-law. In the afternoon we thought that Mother was dying. She continued very bad until morning when she revived and came to her right mind.

**25** This afternoon Mother was taken worse and insensible during which time she appeared to be talking but in a language that we could not understand.

**26th** Mother appears some better. I rode ten miles today, to Sister Hays to get one of her girls to work for me, but could not get one. It is very sickly throughout the country and many are dying. There are not well ones enough to take care of the sick. When I returned I found Mother some better, and Sidnie pretty smart.

**28th** Mother is better and I begin to think that she will recover. She asked me where Father was, as she had not seen him. I told her that he had gone to Sister Clarissa. It seemed to affect her very much. She said she had thought it strange that he did not come to see her. She did not know of any thing that had transpired for several days. I have to do all the housework and wait on the sick.

**30th** I went again to get a hired girl, but did not succeed. Mother had a very high fever again when I came home, and was out of her right mind again. Her fever left her about sundown, and she appeared much better.

**31st** Mother and Sidnie are quite smart today. I feel very lonely since Father's death. I have been with him until the last; and intend to continue the work on the foundation which he has laid in the Kingdom of our God, and inasmuch as the Lord saw fit to take him unto Himself before he had the privilege of obtaining his endowments, I intend to do all for him that can be done in this probation, if the Lord spares my life, until the opportunity arrives to do it.

**Sept. 10th** The **mobbers** have been threatening the Saints again and we heard today that they had commenced **burning** their **houses at Moreleys Settlement** about 25 miles south of Nauvoo. Mother and Sidnie are still mending.

**17th** Mother and Sidnie are still mending.

The mobbers have been burning the houses of the saints up to this time. They have burned out and drove all south of us, and they have sent us word that they would visit us today. They have permitted the brethren to take their things out of their

P. 82  
1845

houses before they set them afire. The Twelve Apostles have counseled the Saints not to resist them up to the present time, although Sheriff Backnistas has done all in his power to quell them. He is friendly to the saints and the mobbers hate him. They call him a Jack Mormon.

We fully expected the mob would burn our houses today, and I began to prepare for it, by taking some of the things out of my house. Mother was not able to sit up but little, while I was busy in carrying out all the things, she said "Warren be sure to take out the soap barrel." She seemed to think more of the soap than any thing else.

The mobbers did not come, and in the afternoon we got orders to give them cold lead if they came to molest us. The sheriff called out a posse from Nauvoo today and went down towards Warsaw, to head the mobbers, which they did, which was the cause of their not coming to burn us out. There has been five or six of the mobbers killed.

One was killed, -1 mile and a quarter from here on the main road from Nauvoo to Warsaw by O.P. Rockwell. It happened on this wise. The sheriff was going to Warsaw; and meeting the mobbers, or rather before he met them seeing their hostile intentions he wheeled his horse and fled towards Nauvoo. A few of the mobbers gave chase, On arriving at the top of the hill south of China Creek Sheriff espied a man at the foot of the hill and demanded his assistance. It proved to be **O. Porter Rockwell** who happened to be passing. The Sheriff quickly made known the situation and they taking shelter in a thicket of hazel brush, awaited the mobbers. They soon made their appearance on the brow of the hill, and a fellow by the name of Worrell being the foremost one fell mortally wounded. When the others came up and saw their comrade weltering in his blood they were seized with fear and taking Worrell up they fled with all possible speed for Warsaw. Rockwell thus saved the life of **Sheriff Backenstos**.

**20th** The Sheriff and posse commanded by Colonel Stephen Markham have driven the mobbers from the County, and there seems to be peace again.

**22nd** Isaac and I went up to Nauvoo. All the Saints from the south part of the Country have moved into this place. The mob has burned 70 or 80 houses.

**Oct. 1st** The Governor has sent a body of Militia to settle the difficulty. There has been a number of writs issued for the house-burners and the Sheriff and his deputies are in search of them. I have been putting up a little hay for winter. Sidnie is well again and Mother is about the house.

**5th** It has been very rainy the past week, but is clear today. There was a heavy frost last night. Crops are very good. It seems to be a time of peace again.

**6th** We went to **Nauvoo** to attend **Conference** which was held **in the Temple**. The immense room was crowded with eager listeners. Our persecutions and present situation were dwelt upon by the Twelve Apostles, and there being no prospect for any thing better for the future, it was **voted unanimously that the Church enmasse move from the United States**, where we have had nothing but persecution from the beginning, and go to a country **far to the west** where we can **serve God** without being molested by mobs.

P. 83  
1845

**5th** Conference still continues. There has been a great deal of business transacted and much good instruction given. The **saints** will **organize** into companies of hundreds, fifties, and tens, to move, (that is families) with captains. Each company will see to fitting themselves out with teams, wagons, provisions etc. conference adjourned until next Apr. 6th.

**Nov. 12th** The companies have been organizing since Conference and getting out timber for wagons and preparing to move as fast as possible. The house burners that were taken have been set at liberty. Thus ends the farce of their trials. Today, Isaac, my wife, and I started for Adams Co. We are going for the purpose of thrashing Isaac's wheat grown on his place which he has sold to Mr. Leverett, and other business. We arrived at Father Myers at Mill Creek at dark. Distance 60 miles.

**13th** Isaac and I went up to his old place and began thrashing his wheat.

**15th** We finished the wheat today. I found a letter in the Burton P.O. from Bro George Foote.

**17th** It rained yesterday. Today Isaac and I went to Quincy with some of his wheat to sell. It is quite warm. We went from Quincy to Father Myers. Distance 8 miles.

**20th** We started for home. We went by Quincy to sell some more of Isaac's wheat. From there we drove to Fairfield and staid over night with Bro. John Carpenter.

**21st** We arrived at home in the afternoon,-all well. It begins to get cold.

**Dec. 1st** I killed my hogs. The weather is very cold. The companies are preparing to move as fast as possible. Isaac and I are getting out wagon spokes for our company.

**10th** They have commenced giving endowments in the Temple,-- working day and night.

**30th** Isaac and I started for Adams Co. We arrived at Mr. Leverett's at 8 o'clock at night.

**31st** We killed the hogs that Father left with Mr. Leveret to fatten, and Leverett's also. It commenced raining just at night. This closes another year.

**Jan 1st 1846** It continued raining all day. Our hogs which we left hanging up last night fell down in the mud and we had to wash them again.

**2nd** We went to Quincy with our pork which we sold for three dollars and twenty five cents per hundred. We purchased some things and went out to Father Myers.

**3rd** We started for home went as far as Fairfield and staid over night at Bro Carpenters.

**4th** It is very muddy traveling. We got home just at night. Found all well.

**6th** Samuel Myers came to see us. He had been to Nauvoo.

**18th** Isaac Ferguson and I went to Nauvoo to attend our Quorum meeting. He also belongs to the Ninth Quorum of Seventies. Had a good meeting.

**19th** Our names was put down on the list today to receive our endowments.

**22nd** Isaac, and his wife Almira (my Sister) and I and my wife started for **Nauvoo** for the purpose of getting our endowments. We staid over night at Bro Ripley's.

**23rd** We went up to the **Temple** of the Lord. The endowments are being given in the upper rooms. My Sister is so feeble that she has to be carried up. After receiving **our endowments**, I and my wife went down to Bro Geo A. Smith's who had married my Sister Betsy's daughter Nancy for his third wife, Bro Smith was at Home. He related to us, what a trial it was to him to receive the **revelation on plural marriage**. It was first made known to him by the Prophet Joseph. He did not feel at first as though he could receive it as from the Lord. But again he knew that Joseph was a prophet of God--and he durst not reject it. Thus he reasoned with himself, until he obtained a testimony from the Lord for himself.

P. 84

Geo A. Smith's Father the Patriarch of the Church John Smith lived in a room adjoining. My wife and I went in to get our **Patriarchal Blessings** which we received under his hands as follows.

#### **City of Joseph 23rd Jan. 1846**

A Blessing by **John Smith Patriarch** upon the head of **Warren Foote**, son of David and Irene born 10th August 1817 Dryden Tompkins County New-York. Brother Warren: I lay my hands upon thy head in the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, and place upon thee a father's blessing, by the authority of the Holy Priesthood.

Inasmuch as thou hast willingly conformed to the rules and laws of the Redeemer's Kingdom, set up in these last days, and hast been willing to make a sacrifice of all thy substance and thy good name and reputation among the popular class of the community, the Lord delighteth in thee and it is His pleasure to bestow upon thee all the blessings of the Holy Priesthood and all the blessings of heaven and earth, to the uttermost bounds of the Everlasting hills, like Joseph who was sold into Egypt, for this is thy lineage and thy right of inheritance from thy fathers.

Inasmuch as thou art appointed to be a messenger to the nations of the earth carry the gospel the glad tidings of peace to those who sit in the region and shadow of death; the Lord hath given His angels charge to go before thee, to clear thy way, and to defend thee on the right and on the left, from all those who seek to destroy thee. Thy enemies shall have no power

to destroy thy life, and not a hair of thy head shall fall by their hands.

Thou shalt have power over the elements-to rebuke the winds, and the waves, and devouring fire-to escape the edge of the sword, and put the armies of the aliens to flight.

Thou shalt be able to gather thousands of the remnants of Jacob and establish them on a peaceable land where they can build cities and temples in the name of the Most High. Thou shalt have an inheritance in Zion with thy companion;-a numerous posterity to keep thy name in remembrance and if thou art faithful and desire it with a perfect heart, thou shalt live to see the closing scene of this generation-, and enjoy all the blessings and glories of the Redeemer's Kingdom worlds without end. Amen.

Recorded in **Book E. Page 66. No 94 Robert Campbell Recorder**

City of Joseph 23rd Jan. 1846

A blessing by **John Smith Patriarch** upon the head of **Artemisia Sidnie** Foote daughter of Jacob and Sarah Myers born 24<sup>th</sup> Jan. 1829. Richland County Ohio.

**P. 85** (she was age 17 today)

1846

Beloved Sister; In the name of Jesus the Son of the Most High, I lay my hands upon thy head, and by the authority of the Holy Priesthood, which He hath conferred upon me, I seal a fathers blessing upon thee. Thou art a daughter of Jacob through the lineage of Joseph, and thou art entitled to all the blessings priesthood, power and authority which is sealed upon thy companion in company with him.

Thou shalt have faith to heal the sick in thine house-drive the destroyer from thy habitation.

Angels shall be thy companions,-'tis thy privilege to converse with them, inasmuch as you desire it with a perfect heart.

Thy children shall grow up about thee in health,-thy days and years shall be multiplied upon thy head to see the third generation, and thy posterity shall increase exceedingly, and they shall rise up and call thee blessed.

Thy name shall be had in honorable remembrance in the house of Israel throughout all generations. Thou shalt inherit every blessing which your heart desires.

Therefore Sister; I counsel thee to be patient in time of trouble and not suffer thy mind to be lead away by the evil suggestions of the enemy, but continue faithful in thy calling, and thou shalt never be confounded worlds without end. I seal all these blessings upon the Sister and thy posterity in common with thy companion, even so, Amen.

Recorded in **Book E. Page 65. No 93 Robert Campbell Recorder**

Our son **David** was also blessed by **Father John Smith** at the same time. He has been very puny up to this time. We feel very thankful to our Father in Heaven that we have been accounted worthy to enter into His **Temple** and receive the **ordinances**. We were **not sealed as there was such a crowd** that they had not time to attend to it.

**24th** My wife is seventeen years old today. We returned home. Feel rather unwell.

**29th** They are still giving endowments as fast as they can, as they will soon have to stop and leave for the west. Rainy, today.

**Feb. 2nd** I attended my Quorum meeting yesterday and returned today.

**5th** Isaac and I went over to Keokuck in a skiff to get some flour. Did not get any. A man and his wife wished to accompany us back. The skiff being very small I felt very reluctant to take them in, but Isaac thought that we could. We made out to return safely although the water came near to the top of the skiff. I felt relived when we struck the shore; the Mississippi is about one mile wide here with a strong current, being at the head of the rapids.

They have **ceased giving endowments**, and **some of the Twelve** and others are **starting for the west**. **President Brigham Young leads the company**.

**8th** Sidnie is quite unwell today. I did not go to meeting.

18 Sidnie is well again, but Mother was taken sick about one o'clock P.M. Weather cold.

19th Mother is no better. She informed us for the first time that she has had a rupture for some years. It came down yesterday and she could not replace it. In consequence of this nothing will pass her bowels.

P. 86

1848

21st Mother is not any better. She does not eat any thing but bread and water and vomits that up soon after eating. I sent for Dr. Spergen but he could not help her. He told us what to do for her. We tried it but it was of no use.

25th Mother continues very bad. She throws up all her food which smells very bad. I got Isaac to go to Nauvoo to get a doctor. He came today and tried all his skill to replace the rupture but could not. He said that it could not be replaced only by cutting, which he declined to do, and advised me not to have it done, as she is so old, he thought she would not survive the operation and it would only cause her unnecessary pain. He did not charge me anything.

27th Yesterday and today I worked out my poll tax on the road.

28th I called in some of the **elders** last night who **anointed Mother** and prayed over her. The pains in her bowels ceased, but she complained of a distressed feeling all over her system.

She feels **anxious this morning to be baptized.**

The **weather is extremely cold.** We had a consultation how we could baptize her, and came to the conclusion to **make a large trough** and get it **into the house** and warm the water so as to make it comfortable for her. Accordingly, Isaac Ferguson, Mattannah Hallet, Joseph C. Clark, Nahum Benjamin, and myself, went at the job, and by evening had it ready. Elders Pleasant Ewell and Richard Hewitt came in as we were about ready to baptize her.

About nine o'clock at night we **baptized her**, Elder Ewell officiating. We then confirmed her a member of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, and administered to her again. She said that she now felt satisfied she had repeatedly said that she would never get well again.

**March 1st** Mother is still failing. She says that she has been thinking, that Father wants her to come to him, and she thought that it would be better to go now and be buried beside him than to go into the wilderness and die by the way and be buried in some hole. She has divided her things among us three children. Namely, my Sisters Betsey, Almira, and myself. This she has done according to her own notion.

2nd Having given up all hopes of Mother's recovery. I felt very much cast down in my mind. I felt that I had done all I could for her in my circumstances, and still I had a desire to know if there was any thing more that I could do.

I was impressed to go and pour forth my soul to my Father in Heaven in secret. I did so, and through the **inspiration of His Holy Spirit** it was made known to me, that I had done all that was required of me for her; and that she would be taken from me, and that she should **rest with Father**, and should **come forth with him in the morning of the first resurrection**, and receive an exaltation with him in the **Celestial Kingdom** of our God. Therefore though I mourn my

P. 87 bereavement of her for a season, yet I rejoice in the promises of the Lord.

1846

3rd Mother is so weak that she cannot help herself at all.

I received a letter from my brother George today and read it to her; and asked her if she wanted to send him any word. She asked me if I could remember Father's last prayer, if I could, to write that to him, and that she had been baptized, also for David and him to seek their duty and do it. I told her what the Lord had manifested to me, yesterday. She seemed to be satisfied. She said, sometimes she had a sufficient witness and sometimes not.

4th Dr. Spergen came here today and examined the breach. He said that it was under the arch, and could not be got back without cutting, but his hand was so lame, that he could not do it. He told us what to do for her, but it did no good. At night I saw that she was failing very fast. She asked me what the doctor thought of her. I told her that he thought her case very doubtful. She then asked how long he thought she would continue. I answered not long without she got help. I then asked her if she was anxious to depart. She said she was. She complained of feeling very bad all through her body, and was very restless..

**5th** I set up with Mother last night until ten o'clock, and then laid down leaving three persons to sit up through the night. I awoke about three o'clock and heard her breathing very hard and appeared much distressed. On getting up I awakened Isaac Ferguson, and the three persons went home. I took the candle and went to her bedside, and saw that she was dying. My wife arose and I called in my Sister Betsey (who is living in Father's house). I spoke to mother, but she did not notice me. She groaned slightly when she breathed. Her breath became shorter and shorter, when she **ceased to breathe** about four o'clock in the morning of the fifth.

My feelings at this moment who can describe. O how much care she has taken of me, how many sleepless nights she has spent watching over me through the many spells of severe sickness I have had, when nothing but a mother's care could have saved my life, with the blessings of God. O how little I have repaid her for all this care and anxiety but if the Lord will spare my life I will see that her work in this probation is completed and united with Father through the sealing power, no more to be parted forever.

**6th** Isaac Ferguson Albert Clement and I **buried Mother in Nauvoo near Father's side** there being **two grand children between them**. Viz. Elizabeth Clement and Orson Ferguson.

**8th** We went to Nauvoo to meeting. **Orson Hyde** preached, showing the false pretenses of **Strang** and John E **Page** to the right to lead the church. Page was one of the Twelve Apostles, and has apostatized and gone after Strang who pretends to be the legal successor of Joseph Smith. Luke Johnson came back into the church. He was one of the first Twelve chosen in Kirtland, and apostatized there.

**11th** I went to Nauvoo to take up some wagon timber yesterday. It was so rainy that I staid over night. Our company are very busy **making wagons**. **We belong to Jonathan C. Hales Co**. I returned home today. It is very rainy.

P. 88  
1846

**13th** I took cold yesterday and do not feel well today. I commenced writing to George.

**14th** I finished my letter to brother George. After giving the account of Mother's death I wrote as follows.

I now stand alone as it were in my Father's House. My parents have passed behind the veil, and my brothers are opposed to the work of God, they have rejected our Father's counsel, and will not receive the gospel, therefore they have lost their birthright in the Kingdom of God. My Sisters are given to other men for wives and must be governed by them in their own houses.

I suppose that you will think this a strange doctrine. But you will find that the **government of God** is always **Patriarchal**. Read the Old Testament and see if it was not so in the beginning. **Parents** will have jurisdiction over their **posterity** throughout the endless ages of eternity. But inasmuch as they give their daughters to other men for wives, they can have no more authority over them.

Hence you can see that Father will claim his sons, those that obey the gospel and he will claim the sons of those who do not obey the gospel, for their unbelief shall be answered upon the heads of their parents, because you have heard the gospel and reject it. Therefore it would not be justice in God, that your children should perish, because of your unbelief, for should you obey the gospel and bring up your children in accordance to the law of God, they would be in the kingdom of God, and you would be made a king over them and their posterity forever and ever.

This is the way that we are to become Kings and Priests, for a king must have subjects, which subjects will be his own posterity. Adam will stand at the head of the human family, and so on down in regular succession according to the order of the Priesthood. Christ is King over all and God is over Christ. What order and beauty there are in the Kingdom of God. Who knows what will be the extent of the power and glory of the dominions of those who serve him faithfully unto the end. Shall I, who understand many of the things of God and have obtained that knowledge, which is beyond the power of man to give, listen to your advice and exchange the sunshine of noonday for midnight darkness? or in other words, shall I leave the gospel of Christ wherein the mysteries of God are revealed, and exchange them for the low groveling creeds of the sectarian world? God forbid.

My course is onward from knowledge to knowledge until I obtain the victory over all evil and receive a crown of glory which will never fade away, which the Lord the righteous Judge will give me at that day when He comes to make up his jewels, and not to me only but to all his saints. You now know my mind and determination. As for your anathemas on the servants of God and the gospel, I consider that it is for the want of knowledge; for I am sure if you had a knowledge of what you was at; you would weep and mourn.

P. 89

The principle on which you condemn the leaders of the Church of Latter Day Saints; would also condemn Christ and the apostles. Were they not killed for their religion, and the testimony which they bore to the worlds; I think so.

But according to your reasoning, the judgments of God came on them for their wickedness; because the Lord suffered them to be killed. If the principle which you are advocating were true, it would condemn all those who have been slain for the word of God, and the testimony which they bore. Did you ever read of a false prophet being killed by the wicked? I think not.

I consider it a great testimony that Joseph Smith was a true prophet because he was slain. For I know that all classes of people from the blackleg to the most sanctified sectarian priest were combined for his destruction, and are now persecuting the church of Christ. There are priests who have the honor of belonging to the church of which you are a member, who were busily engaged in exciting the minds of the people by reporting the most hellish lies which their black hearts could invent, thereby urging the rabble on to deeds of violence and bloodshed. There are plenty of living witnesses to prove this should you desire further testimony.

There are hundreds of such cases which I could write, but let this suffice. Now if you subscribe to such acts, how much better are you than the actors? I cannot think that you do. But such acts as the foregoing are committed by those who are members of your church, for I have seen it.

O my Brother come out from her that you receive not of her sins, and be not partaker of her plagues. For the blood of the Prophets and righteous men do stain her garments. "Woe, wo, be unto her saith God, for I will avenge the blood of my Saints" and wo be unto those whose garments are stained with their blood, for awful is their doom, and bitter is their punishment.

Concerning the Leaders of the Church of Latter Day Saints getting rich by the Kirtland Bank, I say that it is false. So also is the bogus money making. You seem to roll these lies as a sweet morsel under your tongue. I now caution you to beware lest you are "left to believe a lie that you may be damned."

You say "as for enjoyments in this world, you would as soon follow the wandering Arabs, or go on a pilgrimage to Mecca, as to follow the Mormons" etc. What said the savior. He that is not willing to leave Father or Mother, wife or children, house or lands, for my sake is not worthy of me.

Old King David said, (speaking of the last dispensation) "Gather my people together, those who have made a covenant with me by sacrifice. ANow if you are not willing to sacrifice all earthly enjoyments for Christ's and the gospel's sake you have no promise of salvation. These enjoyments are as dear to me as any other person, but I am willing to sacrifice them all for Christ's and the gospel's sake, knowing that I shall receive a crown of glory if I am faithful to the end.

**P. 90** You say that I do not believe the bible or all of it. Let me certify to you that I believe the whole bible inasmuch as it is **1846** translated correctly, the Book of Mormon and Book of Doctrine and Covenants. And now I will tell you plainly, that you cannot be saved in the Celestial Kingdom of God, only in the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints; and your quotation \*bears me out in this assertion. For no person can work the works of righteousness contrary to the law of God, for His law is the same to all nations, and it takes the same ordinances to fill the law in one nation that it does in another. Hence you see, that although they are of many different nations, they have the same spirit and understand the same things pertaining to the gospel. Peter saw that the Gentiles had received the same gospel, and understood the same things that he did, therefore he saw that they were accepted of God.

You say that the prophesies of Joseph Smith have not come to pass. I can bear testimony that some of them have come to pass, and the others will in the due time of the Lord.

You think that I am of a wandering disposition. I am not naturally so. But the Lord has made known to me my duty, and wo be unto me if do it not. I must carry on the work that our Father began. What a consolation it would be to me if I had a brother according to the flesh to assist me in the great work. But I have none. I am deprived of this privilege, but I put my trust in God who sticketh closer than a brother.

Now my Brother I must close. I have faithfully warned you, and from henceforth my garments are clean from your blood. If you perish, you perish with your eyes open. I take Heaven to witness this day that I have laid the gospel before you according to the best of my ability in all my letters warning you. Think of these things when you see the judgments of God

coming heavily on our nation. My course is onward if I have to go alone in my Father's house. My parents shall find in me a true friend and a dutiful son, throughout the endless ages of eternity God being my helper.

We are all as well as usual. We expect to start west the latter part of April. We are not going to Van Couver's Island+, nor to California. We shall probably settle in the Rocky Mountains. I think that we will still have a chance to correspond with each other. I want you to write immediately so that I can get a letter from you before I go away. If I do not I will write to you frequently, until I get settled in the west. One company has gone and another will start in April. I will close by praying God to cause the scales of darkness to fall from your eyes, that you may see your own situation, and the situation of the whole world. We all send our respects to you and your wife.

This from your loving Brother, Warren Foote.

**P. 91**  
**1846** **May 4th** Isaac Ferguson and I have been very busy making our wagons and getting them ironed. I have one ready to move in. Isaac has got five yoke of oxen towards his place in Adams County and has agreed to let me have a yoke to move with. Since March I have been two trips to Adams County, and several times to Nauvoo.

---

\* See Acts 10<sup>th</sup> Chapter 14<sup>th</sup> and 15<sup>th</sup> verses.

+ It had been reported that we were going to Van Couvers Island.

Having all things in readiness we started for the west, and like Abram of old not knowing whither we are going, and not caring much, so we can get away from our enemies; and find a land where we can live in peace and worship God according to the dictates of our consciences. This privilege we have been denied in our boasted land of liberty.

Although my Grandfathers fought in the army of the Revolution, and Grandfather Foote lost his life in the struggle for freedom and religious liberty, yet I am not permitted to enjoy that liberty. Our government has become corrupted. Mobbers, murderers and house burners, stalk abroad boasting of their wicked deeds, and should any of them be taken by the law, their trials end in a farce; The fact is that all the officers of our government from the President down to a Constable, secretly rejoice in our persecutions; and their greatest desire now is, that we may perish in the wilderness. But we are willing to trust ourselves with all we possess in the hands of the God of Abraham, having an assurance that He will protect us.

Our company consists of nine wagons viz. Father Myers one, Elihu Allen one, Dr. Spergen one, Isaac Ferguson two, Franklin Allen one, my Sister Betsey Clement one, Bro. Levi one, and myself one. We camped four miles south of Nauvoo, on the banks of the Mississippi opposite of Nashville where we are going to cross the river.

**5th** Five of the wagons crossed the river today and landed at Nashville, Iowa.

**6th** Had a heavy shower last night. I do not feel well today. We got all of our wagons over the river this afternoon. At night Isaac Ferguson wanted me to go and help get the oxen across. Not being well I refused to go. He got mad and threatened to take my wagon and his oxen from me. I did not fear his threats.

**7th** Some of our cattle strayed off last night. We found some of them but mine are still missing. They got the rest of the cattle over this morning. In the afternoon we drove to within one mile of Montrose. Towards night I looked again for my cows but did not find them.

**8th** I found my cattle this morning. The weather cleared up fine. We did not travel any today. At night we all assembled for evening prayer. I was called upon to pray. I felt the Spirit of God resting on me which made me rejoice.

**9th** We did not travel any today. Franklin Allen and I went to Montrose. There was a meeting of the anti Mormons there. We went to the meeting and heard them read the resolutions which they adopted. The substance of them were this. They sympathized with the citizens of the Hancock Co. and adjoining counties in Illinois, and was satisfied that there was no other way to restore peace only to rid Illinois and Iowa of the Mormons and jack Mormons who must retire beyond the Settlement on or before the first Saturday in July, peaceably if they will or forcibly if they must. They then adjourned until the Monday following the first Saturday in July, when these resolutions are to be enforced if necessary.

**P. 92**  
**1846**

At night our company called a meeting to elect officers. **Jacob Myers** was appointed **captain**, Elihu Allen is to keep order among the children and others, Jessie Spergen was appointed to defend the accused, and I was elected clerk.

**10th** We resumed our journey and found some very bad roads. We traveled twelve miles and camped one mile northwest

of Charleston on a wet prairie.

**11th** We started before breakfast and drove to the timber and stopped to cook our breakfast. Cousin Moses Clauson overtook us here with two wagons. We passed through Farmington which is a very pretty town on the Des Moine river and drove two miles and camped. At night some boys were tried for disobeying orders, and were acquitted. After which there was some contention.

**12th** Our sheep strayed away last night and the day was spent hunting them and washing our clothes. At night Moses Clauson and Noah Cotton were admitted into our company which now numbers ten families and 64 souls. Meeting opened by prayer by myself. After considerable talk, it was voted that all the officer of the company be dropped excepting the Captain, and every parent correct their own children for disobeying orders. It was also arranged that some drive the cattle in the forenoon and some in the afternoon.

**13th** This morning Elihu Allen made complaint to me that his family had been slandered by my wife, Franklin Allen's wife and Mother Myers, and he wanted satisfaction. I asked him what my wife had said. He could not state any thing in particular. His complaint was mostly against Mother Myers and Franklin's wife. I told him if my wife had said any thing wrong I wanted it righted.

We had a very rough road to Bonapate, where we arrived about noon. It is a small town six miles above Farmington. It has a very large flouring mill and carding machine. Some of the company got some wheat ground here and some of us went up to a little town called Lexington, where we found that we could not get up the river road, so we returned to Lexington and took the prairie road. We traveled about two miles and camped. Here I was taken sick of a cold, -had a fever and pain in my side. After being administered unto I felt better.

**14th** It is very rainy this morning. I began to have a fever again about noon. Dr. Spergen gave me an emetic which worked me well. About three o'clock we started on. Father Myers drove my team. Traveled six miles and camped on the prairie.

**15th** I was very sick last night but feel some better this morning. Two cows strayed off last night and they spent all day looking for them, but did not find them. The inhabitants about here are very friendly. Weather clear and pleasant.

**16th** My wife was taken very bad with the Cholera-morbus last night. The elders administered to her, and Dr Spergen gave her some medicine which cured her. They hunted for the cows again, but did not find them.

**P. 93** I traded a feather bed for 127 lbs of flour and \$1.10 in money. We resumed our journey about one o'clock  
**1846** P.M. and traveled eight miles. I had a fever again this afternoon.

**17th** We crossed the Des Moine river at Keosauqua the county seat of Van Buren County and fifteen miles above Bonaparte. Traveled eight miles. I had a high fever again.

**18th** The country about here is quite thickly settled. Our road runs on the divide between the Des Moine and Fox rivers. We traveled sixteen miles and camped near Bloomfield.

**19th** This morning Samuel Myers killed a buck. To day we got in company with about 20 wagons and got hindered some. Traveled twelve miles and camped before night.

**20th** Started about eleven o'clock. We passed over a rough broken country and very thinly settled. We camped near the head waters of Fox river. Traveled twelve miles.

**21st** We started late and found the road very muddy. We came to a large rolling prairie with good soil consisting of black sandy loam. The inhabitants are few and far between. This is the hardest days travel on our teams that we have had although we only traveled about ten miles. Camped about four o'clock.

**22nd** The prairie is very soft on account of so much rain. We saw many doubling their teams, and some camped waiting for the road to dry.

There was a wedding in our camp last night. Mr Noah Cotton and Miss L. Spergen daughter of the Doctor.

We drove six miles today and camped at a point of timber to wash clothes. There are quite a number of camps in sight.

**23rd** Washed, and had a meeting at Daniel Wood's camp. Father Myers addressed the congregation,-exhorting them to obedience. At night we had a difficulty to settle between James Lemmon and Charles Allen and his father. They all made confessions.

**24th** I was sick of a diarrhea. Bro Cotton's wife was very sick with a fever. She was administered to and got better in the afternoon. I felt much better also. It being Sunday there was another meeting at D. Wood's camp. The ground is drying fast.

**25th** We started on our journey again and found the road very good. The prairie here is very rolling and extends almost as far as we can see, with here and there a strip of timber. This is on the head waters of the Charlton river which runs south into Missouri. As far as our sight can extend both before and behind us we can see covered wagons. We traveled about sixteen miles and camped a mile from the road at a point of timber. The soil here is excellent.

**26th** The road today runs across a flat prairie. Traveled twelve miles.

**27th** One of I Ferguson's ox is lame and he wants a yoke that I am using. We did not travel any today. They are talking of dividing the company.

**28th Father Myers resigned his office as captain.** He said that he had done the best that he could. He had went himself and brought up the cattle mornings and it was almost impossible to get a boy to drive or watch cattle or sheep, and their parents knowed it, and would pay no attention to it, and he could endure it no longer; and now every one was at liberty to go where he pleased for all him, and if any one wanted to go with him he had no objections or if they chose to do otherwise it was their privilege.

**P. 94  
1846**

There was a considerable said on the subject, after which Elihu Allen, Moses Clauson, Isaac Ferguson and my Sister Betsey Clement left the company and started on. Betsey was obliged to go on account of having Ferguson's team. Ferguson took both his yoke of oxen from me and left me without a team about sixty miles east of Mt Pisgah.

I had helped him about his wagons a great deal and went down to Adams County two trips to help him with his wheat and to drive up his oxen that he got for his place, for all of which he agreed to let me have two yoke of oxen to move with to wherever the Church settled. Let the Lord judge between him and me.

When the foregoing persons had departed, we that were left **chose Father Myers Captain** of our company **again**. Father Myers let me have a yoke of his oxen and having a yoke of two year old steers of my own that had been worked some, I made out very well, after putting some of my load into other wagons. We started about noon and had very bad traveling. The ground was so wet that one wagon could not follow another without miring down. Consequently each one took his own course and sometimes there would be a dozen wagons abreast. We traveled about eighteen miles.

**29th** We got a very late start, and had very bad traveling. We traveled ten miles and camped in sight of those who had left us.

**31st** we are at the head of the Charlton river. The prairie here is very large and but little timber in sight. We crossed a small stream that empties into the Des Moine. About noon there came up a heavy shower, and rained the most of the afternoon. We drove on the edge of the prairie and camped. Traveled eight miles.

**June 1st** Rained all the forenoon, and we did not travel any.

**2nd** Father Myers went on to the camp of the Twelve Apostles about twenty-five miles ahead. We resumed our journey, and found the prairie very rolling, and road better than we expected. Traveled twelve miles.

**3rd** We arrived at Bros Downs and Rawlins camp which is three miles from the camp of the Twelve. We traveled twelve miles today.

**4th** Bros Downs and Rawlins were very anxious for us to go on to the Missouri river with them. We concluded to do so if we possibly could. The Twelve have gone on.

F. Allen and I went up to the camp which they have named **Mt Pisgah**. I found several acquaintances there,-all feeling

well. They are fencing a large field, and have some ground plowed and a little planted. This place is on the east side of Grand river, and the land is very broken. The weather is very cold and backward. The most of the Saints that are here now intend to move on.

**7th** I went to meeting, after which I went to Pisgah and saw my Sisters.

**P. 95**  
**1846** **8th** F. Allen's steers went off Saturday night. We hunted all day but did not find them.

**9th** We moved our camp on to the west side of Grand river near Pisgah where we will stop until Franklin finds his steers. Down's company started for Missouri river today. Some of us have concluded to send down into Missouri to get breadstuff. It was decided that James Lemmon Noah Cotton and myself should go.

**10th** We started this morning with such articles, as we can spare to trade for flour. We got in company with Harvey and Josiah Call who were going to Missouri for the same purpose. We traveled east on the road we came in on 15 miles and camped.

**11th** We continued on the "Mormon road" as it is called seven miles further, and took a road running directly across it, which we took and traveled in a southwest course. After we had traveled about ten miles I began to think that we had taken the wrong road.

We soon afterward met two men on horseback, who said that this road went to the Platte and they had traveled three days since they left the settlements. We drove on two miles and came to a cabin. The man living there told us that we were on the wrong road, and it was twelve miles to the settlements. He showed us a dim trail leading there, and said two wagons had just gone on who had taken the wrong road as we had done. We followed their tracks and soon came up to them. We crossed the middle fork of Grand river and camped.

**12th** The prairie here is the most broken that I ever saw, and is unfit for cultivation. We followed the ridge between Grand river and a small creek, which empties into Grand river, until we came to the river, when we crossed it again; and came to another house. Here is quite a heavy body of timber, but the land is still broken.

Two miles from the river we came to the road that we ought to have taken in the first place; and two miles further on we came to a Mr. Miller's place. Here I found that we were in Harrison County, two and an half miles south of the Iowa and Missouri line.

Mr. Miller advised us to go down on Big Creek, as so many had gone down to Miller's Mill that grain was getting very scarce there. So we took our course for Watson's Mill on Big Creek. We crossed the river again and came on to a beautiful rolling prairie. We drove eighteen miles and camped.

**13th** Last night Bro Cotton's horses ran off, and we did not find them until late.

We drove eight miles when we came to the settlement, where I sold a good feather bed for six dollars cash. It was worth ten. I also sold two chairs for bacon. There we heard terrible stories about the "Mormons." The people told us that they had heard that they were building forts and making all preparations for war. We told them that these reports were false, - that some of them were plowing and planting corn etc. but the most of them were going on to Council Bluffs.

**14th** We traveled sixteen miles yesterday. We crossed the prairie this forenoon and came to another settlement. Corn looks small and wheat rather poor. We arrived at Fullers Mill on Big Creek towards night. The Bros Call engaged their load here. The mill is a small affair and grinds very slowly and it took all their grain to load Call's wagon. He paid two dollars per hundred for flour and twenty five cents per bushel for corn meal. We traveled sixteen miles today.

**P. 96**  
**1846** **15th** This morning Bro Cotton concluded to go fifteen miles up the creek to see if he can trade his horses for oxen. I took F. Allen's bed and some other articles to sell, and went with him. Bro Oyler also went. We went as far as Dunkerson's settlement, but did not meet with any success in trading, so we turned about.

**16th** I sold a bridle today for two bushels of corn. The inhabitants are very much scared. They are afraid that the "Mormons" will soon be upon them and slay men, women, and children.

I called into a house to see if I could sell anything. The man was not at home. As I turned to go out the woman said "You

are a Mormon I suppose it is a fair question. A Yes Madam I replied. She said "There are a great many Indians up there where you are camped." I replied that I had not seen any. Said she, You have not seen any! Why we hear that you are building forts and your women are marrying in with the Indians, and that you are combining together and are coming down here to kill us all off." I told her that these stories were false. There are no Indians there and the Mormons are mostly going on to the Rocky Mountains. She then said, "There are a great many women here that are almost scared to death, they are just ready to run." Well, Said I, if they are not killed until the "Mormons" kill them they will live a long time. She asked, "How many do you suppose there are of the Mormons." I answered, I cannot tell, some thousands I suppose. She said with surprise, "Do you not know them all?" O no madam, but a few of them I replied. "You don't", said she "I thought they all knowed one another." I said that they were like other folks about that. She then asked, "What is the cause of their being drove from Illinois. We heard that they have been burning houses there" I told her that it was false. The people of Illinois burned the Mormon's houses and a great deal of grain, and drove them from the state without any just cause. "Well" said she "If the Mormons would scatter around amongst the white folks, they could live in peace." Said I, it is contrary to their belief to scatter, they believe in gathering. The Lord has commanded His people to gather to gather and not to scatter. Paul says that in the dispensation of the fullness of times the Lord would gather together all things in one. "Well" said she "I do not know how that is." I then bade her good day, and traveled on.

It is quite a curiosity for the inhabitants here to see a "Mormon." The women and children all came running to the doors to look at us as we passed by. The most of their talk is about the "Mormons" coming down and killing them off.

**P. 97**  
**1846** Bro. Cotton sold his saddle. We arrived at Fuller's Mill at dark. The Calls had got their flour ground and started home. J. Lemmons went back with them about a mile to camp with them. He was afraid to stay at the mill alone, as while we were away a crowd had gathered at the mill and had got him to sing, and he was foolish enough to sing the "Mobbers of Missouri," a song composed by some one when we were driven out of that state. This made some of them angry, and although they all dispersed before night Jim was afraid to stay there alone, thinking that we would not be back.

**17th** We were advised to go to Gay's Mill on the west fork of Grand river distant twenty miles. We concluded to do so, and when we had got within twelve miles of that Mill, we were advised to go to Watson's Mill which was Only eight miles, as they did the most business there, so we took the road to Watson's.

When we arrived within two miles of the mill, we saw a man plowing corn. As we came near he got up on the fence to look at us. There were two boys also with him in the field. We stopped to enquire the road to the mill, as the road forked here. He asked if we were "Mormons," we told him we were. He halloed to the boys to come and see some "Mormons." They all came up to the wagon, although the boys were very shy. After looking at us he said to the boys. "They haven't got any horns have they"! and they look like other folks don't they." This he said laughing as he told us that the boys had thought that the "Mormons" were terrible looking creatures.

After conversing with him awhile, he advised us not to go to the mill, as there were a number there from about Diahman who lived there at the time of the mobbing, when we were driven out of that country, and were very hostile. They were waiting for grinding, and were drinking and gambling constantly. He said that there were two "Mormons" at the mill a day or two ago, and it was as much as they could do to keep these fellows from killing them. While he was telling this two men rode up and substanciated what he said. One of them was a doctor who lived at the mill. After talking considerably with the man, he agreed to deliver to me tomorrow what flour and meal I wanted. We then drove to a spring near his house and camped.

**18th** This morning our man came to us, and said that if we would plow corn for him until our load was ready he would go around and try to sell our articles that we had left. We concluded to do so, and J. Lemmon and N. Cotton went to ploughing. The south line of his farm was on the north line of Daviess county.

About eleven o'clock I went down across the line, and into Daviess County. I lifted up my voice in prayer to God and being impressed by the spirit, I asked the Lord to curse the land to all those who had driven the Saints therefrom that it might not yield of its strength to them, and that the day may soon come when His judgments shall be poured out upon them until they shall be destroyed from off this goodly land, that the Saints may again possess it in peace.

**P. 98**  
**1846** About three o'clock our flour and meal arrived, and we drove out about three miles to a place where a Mr. Bennett lived, to whom I sold F. Allen's bed. He was nearly drunk but was very friendly, and paid me for the feather bed. His wife seemed to be quite out of humor about his buying it, but he swore that if his family was in the situation ours was, and the folks wouldn't sell him any thing to eat he would feel mighty bad about it and he would be damned if he wasn't going to pay us for the bed.

**19th** We now started for home. I bought some honey for fifty cents per gallon. The weather is very hot. We passed through Bethany the county seat of Harrison Co. The people through here are very friendly to us. I bought a few articles in Bethany.

**20th** It is very cool today. We traveled thirty two miles.

**21st Sunday.** We crossed Grand River and traveled thirty miles.

**22nd** We arrived at our camp about one o'clock and found all well.

**28th** Colonel Allen of the U. S. Army came here last week and wanted the "Mormons" to raise **500 men** to go to California to **fight against Mexico**. The United States were now at war with Mexico. Father Huntington is presiding here and he sent him on to see the "Twelve". There was no one that felt like fighting for a Government that would not protect us in our rights. We thought it very strange that we should be called on in our situation.

I went to meeting today. A **letter from B. Young** was read. He counseled all to come on that could to the Bluffs, and then go down into Missouri and labor, and fit themselves out with provisions, and then try to go on as far as the head of Grand Island in the Platte river to winter; which is about 330 miles from Mt Pisgah. This counsel seemed to meet the minds of all the people here, and the most of them are now determined to go ahead. I have no team to go on with and feel quite cast down. But I trust in God.

**29th** I am quite unwell today and cast down both in body and mind. I see a great many starting on, and I have no team to go with.

**July 1st** Our little company has come to the conclusion to start for the Bluffs tomorrow. Father Myers will let me have a yoke of oxen to put on my wagon, for which I feel to thank the Lord, and to acknowledge His goodness to me, for I have had a particular aversion to stopping in this place. **Parley P. Pratt** arrived from the Bluffs at night and told us many good things about the country and roads, which cheered our hearts. He came to raise a company to go with him over the mountains this season.

**July 2nd** We started for the Bluffs, Dr. Spergen not being ready we left him. We got in company with James Huntsman one of Father Myers old Ohio neighbors, and a J. Stevens. The company now numbered nine wagons. We have good roads today, and large prairies. Traveled eighteen miles.

**3rd** Had a few mud holes today. We arrived at the head waters of the Platte.

**P. 99**  
**1846** **4th** The weather is very warm. Timber is very scarce in these regions. There are many now on the road to the Bluffs. We camped on a creek three and an half miles from an Indian village. Ten Indians came to our camp which are the first that we have seen. There are many wagons camped here. Traveled 16 miles.

**5th** There was a very heavy thunder shower last night, and it is extremely hot today. We did not travel any. Three squaws came to see us and some of the company traded them some bread for beads.

**Brigham Young, Heber C. Kimball, and Willard Richards passed by going back to Pisgah, to raise volunteers for Col. Allen.** They say that the **500 must be raised for the government** as it had demanded them to go to California and take possession of that country for the United States.

Three Fox Indians came to our camp tonight. They said that they had come twelve miles to see "Mormon, good Mormon." They stopped all night.

**6th** We resumed our journey again. We passed through a town of the Pottawattamies. They were very friendly, and wanted to "swap" potatoes and beads for biscuit. This being the first Indian village the most of us had ever seen, it was quite a curiosity to us. They showed us a most excellent cold spring. We drove one mile from their town and camped. Traveled sixteen miles.

**7th** The weather continues very hot. It is slow traveling with oxen. Traveled 12 miles.

**8th** One of F. Allen's oxen strayed off last night and did not find until about five o'clock P.M. when we started on again. We met twenty two Indians and three squaws. They had been to Council Bluffs to receive their annuities from the Government. We drove five miles and camped by a creek.

**9th** Continues very warm. It rained some in the afternoon. This country abounds in excellent springs of water, and a good soil, but very rolling. The timber is very scarce, which will render it difficult to settle.

**10th** Today we arrived at the main Camp, twelve miles from what is called Council Point. The land hereabouts is very broken and timber scarce. Many of the Brethern seem to be quite disheartened,-the Indians ahead and the mob behind, and winter approaching, and no stopping place selected yet to prepare for it. We drove 10 miles today.

**12th** Sunday. We went to meeting, which was held at John Taylor's camp, some of the Twelve were there also **Colonel Kane** from Washington City. **Parley P. Pratt** spoke concerning raising the **500 volunteers** to go to California. He said that it would be the only chance for us to settle ourselves in that country peaceably. Our mails would then be carried, and other public works done at the expence of the Government, and also the Government would be under obligations to protect us.

After the services were over a vote was taken whether the people were willing to send the 500 men or not. It was **voted unanimously** that they be sent. **Col. Kane** arose and said, that he was proud of them as **American Citizens**, and that he was disappointed when he came here to find such able speakers although he knew them to be men of talent. He said that he could not say more than had been said for in fact all had been said that could be on the subject.

**P. 100**  
**1846**

After this there was much **instruction** given with regard to cursing, and swearing, getting angry etc. Elder **Wilford Woodruff** then gave a brief account of his **labors in Great Britton**, which was very cheering and interesting. I was very much edified throughout the meeting, and the Saints generally expressed the same feeling.

**13th Brigham Young, H. C. Kimball, W. Richards have returned**, and sent word to all the camps to assemble today to get instructions. It rained in the forenoon and I did not attend. I went in the afternoon. The main business was to get **volunteers for the Battalion**. They obtained about 300 among whom was Franklin Allen, and Samuel Myers. The Twelve agreed to see that the families of those who enlisted was taken care of. I felt very unwell and went to my camp.

**14th** I am quite sick this morning,-cannot sit up much.

**15th** They moved our camp about three miles to a place where we can get water handy. I do not feel any better, am very sore in my stomach, but my faith is that the Lord who has delivered me heretofore will still deliver me.

**16th** This morning the volunteers started for Fort Levenworth where they will receive their arms and equipments, and take a line of March for Santa Fee where they expect to join the main Western Army, and proceed **to Upper California**, there **to plant the American Standard in her seaports**.

**17th** A meeting was held today for the purpose of giving general counsel to the church. A choice was given to the people as follows, To join the Battalion, or go with Miller's company over the mountains, or go to the head of Grand Island to winter, or to winter on this side of the Missouri River. I have considerable fever today.

**19th Sunday.** I am getting some better, but feel very weak yet.

**20th** I am so that I can walk about a little. I commenced writing Father's biography today. The Battalion are still at the river waiting for a steamboat to come down.

**21st** Rained. The steamboat has not come yet and the Battalion has started by land for Fort Levenworth. I am very weak yet.

**26th** I attended meeting which was held at **John Taylor's camp**. Elders **Taylor** and **E. T. Benson** spoke on various subjects. Some of the saints are crossing the river intending to go on to Grand Island, and some further, but the most of them are settling about here in different places. There was a very fierce storm of wind and rain last night about midnight which blowed down tents and blowed away hats etc. It blowed over Geo A. Smith's wagon he was sleeping in.

**28th** There was a very heavy thunder shower this afternoon.

**29th** I came across Laura Bess, a cousin and daughter of Aunt Lowly Richardson. I had not seen her for about nine years. When we left Greenwood she did not belong to the church. When we lived in Illinois her Mother used to get me to answer the letters that she got from Laura. She was opposed to some of the doctrines taught by the saints, and I  
**P. 101** recollect on one occasion in the year of 1839 of answering one of her letters in which she had quite an array of  
**1846** arguments to refute Mormonism. Aunt sent for me to come to her house and write an answer. I took up her arguments one after another and quoted scripture to prove that the doctrines of the Latter Day Saints are the doctrines of the bible, and therefore the only true gospel, by which means I upset all her arguments, and left her without any foundation to stand on. This was about three years before I was baptized. She says that that letter of mine entirely convinced her of the truth of "Mormonism." Her husband died after joining the church in Greenwood N.Y. She is going with the church.

**30th** Father Myers has taken a job to build a sawmill for a Mr. Hildreth who has a squaw for a wife. He lives at the edge of the bluffs on a little creek called Indian Creek. We moved over there today. The weather is very hot.

**31st** This is quite a settlement of Indians, Halfbreeds, and French. They all live in log houses, and are very friendly. Their corn looks well.

**Aug 5th** Last night an Indian died here, Father Myers made a coffin for him. I helped to bury him today. The Indians wrapped him in his blanket and other clothes. His leggins were nicely trimmed with beads. They tied a woolen shall around his head and put his belt around him and then placed him in the coffin. They wrapped his cup in a cloth worked with beads and placed it in his coffin and then fastened it up. Instead of taking the corpse out at the door, they took the sash out of the window, and took it out there feet foremost. They have a burying ground on the top of the bluff east of us. We put the corpse on a wagon to which I had a yoke of oxen hitched, and by some pushing at the wagon we made out to haul it up the hill. After he was let down into the grave, two squaws (one his daughter and the other a relative) came to the grave and took up each a handful of dirt and threw it on the coffin. We then covered it up.

The Indians had some soup of green corn squashes and meat prepared, and a small fire kindled. One of them took the soup out in a tray, and took a little in a ladle and put it on the fire, they then sat down and eat the rest of it, asking me to eat with them, which I tasted. They wanted our women to eat, but they declined. This finished their ceremonies.

**7th** I went up the creek about one mile and selected a place to build a cabin to winter in. Cousin Moses Clauson is living here, and I will build near him on the west side of the creek. Father Guymon and sons are camped on the east side.

**9th** I hunted all day yesterday for the oxen to move my wagon to my building place. I found them just at night, and early this morning I moved up.

**10th** I am **29 years old today**. I worked hard all day to clear the brush off from a piece of ground to sow turnips on as it was covered with hazel brush.

**12th** I sowed my turnip seed. There is some appearance of rain.

**P. 102** **13th** There was a fine rain last night. I cut some house logs today.  
**1846**

**16th** **Father Myers** has been **appointed** to act in the capacity of a **bishop** to **look after the families of those** who have **gone in the Battalion**. There are other bishops appointed under him, who are to meet today to transact business. Father Myers being sick, he wished me to go and attend to the meeting in his place. I went, but there was no meeting. It was appointed at the Indian Mill.

**23rd** One year ago last night since Father died. O how many times I have thought of him in one year. But he is at rest. This journey would have been hard on him and Mother, had they lived. **Father Myers** is still **sick**, and I spent yesterday in looking up the women whose husbands are gone in the Battalion for him. I do not feel well myself today. My little son **David** is **one year old** this morning.

**Sept 5th** I have been busy in building my house, and have got it so that I moved into it today. My health is very good now adays. I split out puncheons from basswood logs and hewed them and made a very good floor, to my house, and covered it with shakes split out of white oak.

**10th** I commenced cutting hay down on the Missouri bottom about two miles from home.-Had a heavy shower towards night.

**29th** I finished haying today. I have put up about eight ton. **Several** have **apostatized** from the church and gone down into Missouri. The Twelve and all those who crossed the river intending to go on further, held a council soon after crossing, and came to the conclusion to go into winter quarters here. So they moved their camp to a place about five miles above us on the west side of the river, and have built quite a large town called **Winter Quarters**.

**Oct 6th** I commenced to write a letter to my brother George. There are some teams going back to Nauvoo after the poor, who have been driven out of that place. The mob one thousand strong came upon them with six cannon which they shot thirty six times. The "Mormons" and citizens numbered about one hundred. They had a kind of a gun which was made out of the shaft of an old steamboat which they shot thirty four times. The weather is very pleasant, -some frost 2 nights ago.

**8th** I am sick today-had a chill.

**10th** The chills have left me, and I can work a little today.

**18th** I wrote some more on my letter to George, also wrote a letter for Sister Ketchem. The weather is quite cold. Many are moving to this place and building houses.

**25th** There are a great many Indians here. They are drawing their annuities in payment for their lands in Illinois. They get their pay at Council Point.

**Nov. 1st** Isaac Ferguson and Albert Clement has settled on Pigeon Creek about seven miles above here. I took my wife and went up to see them today. We found **Sister Betsey quite feeble** and Albert very sick. He had taken a severe cold which had brought on the consumption to which he was inclined.

**P. 103**

**1846**

**2nd** Last evening Albert commenced rattling in his throat. He was talking with his Mother all night. He told her that he did not want to stay in this world any longer, and asked her what he was good for. About three o'clock A.M. he commenced coughing and about five o'clock he turned on to his left side and died immediately, without a groan. I shaved him and helped to lay him out. About ten A.M. I started for home. It was a cold raw day. We got home towards night.

**4th** I laid up the back and jams of Sister Reeds chimney. Tonight I had a chill.

**10th** Not having sent my letter to George yet, I opened it and wrote concerning Alberts death. The man that I was going to send the letter by to Nauvoo has given up going so I will have to send it to a post office in Missouri.

Tonight Isaac Ferguson came here and told us that **Sister Betsey was dead**. She died on the eighth. She had a pain between her shoulders and raised blood a few days before she died. On Sunday morning she was much worse, and told Sister Almira that she would not live until night. She told her what to do with her things, and who she wanted to take her three children that were left. About noon her spirit took its flight. She told me when I was there at Albert's death, that she had no desire to live longer. She has seen a great deal of trouble in this world, for which I think she will be rewarded.

**18th** I went with my wife and Lovina to Council Point and traded some. Distant 5 miles.

**23rd** I went up to Isaac Ferguson's to see about Betsey's children. I found her daughter Nancy there, She is living in Winter Quarters. My Sister wanted me to take Daruis the oldest, and Nancy the other two. Nancy wanted to take all of them, to which I very reluctantly consented, so returned home without any of them.

**25th** I went down to Father Myers and got 141 Lbs of pork for which I will pay by working on the mill. Mr Hildreth is furnishing us with provision.

**27th** Meeting was held in the Blockhouse owned by Bro Silas Richards today for the purpose of organizing a Branch of the church. Moses Clauson was appointed President of the branch and I was appointed clerk.

**29th** There was some difficulty between Noah T Guymon and his brotherinlaw Robert E. Johnson, which was taken before Bishop Daniel A. Miller for trial. Bro. Miller wanted me to clerk for him, which I did.

**Dec 31st** Another year has rolled around. Its joys and sorrows are all past with it, and also many of the Latter Day saints are numbered with the dead. Among that number are my dear Mother and Sister and also a nephew. They have ceased

from their labors, and their works follow them. The toils and cares of this life are over, and they rest in the paradise of God.

My Sister Almira and myself are all that remain of Father's children that are in the Church. I still feel strong in the gospel of Christ, and although I have had to undergo things that were not very agreeable to human nature, and sometimes have to live on corn bread and a little coffee, yet I feel to rejoice that I am accounted worthy to endure tribulation for the gospel's sake, and pray that I may continue to endure unto the end.

I have traveled this year 625--miles. And thus ends the year of our Lord Eighteen hundred and forty six.

## CHAPTER 7

**P. 104** **Jan 1st 1847.** I spent my New Year's at home. Snowed in forenoon; cleared at night.  
**1847**

**3rd** South wind today but chilly. It looks very much like rain.

**4th** It snowed last night. Today is clear with cold north winds.

**12th** Since the 4th it has been extremely cold weather with north winds.

**13th** Weather is quite warm. I went up to Isaac Ferguson's,- returned the 14th.

**23rd** Elihu Allen had settled on the creek about a mile above where I live. Today we walked over to Winter Quarters-distant about nine miles.

**24th Sunday** I went to meeting. **Heber C. Kimball** presided. A **revelation** given **through Brigham Young** on the 14th was read-- concerning the Camp of Israel in their journeyings to the West. After which Elder Kimball delivered a discourse, in which he spoke very strongly against getting drunk,--stealing, adultery and all manner of wickedness. He referred to the law of Moses with regard to the penalties for committing such sins as taking the name of the Lord in vain, adultery tc. The house was crowded full, and the Spirit rested upon the people.

**25th** We returned home well satisfied with the order given in the revelation.

**30th** I went up to Isaac's with a wagon and Sidnie went with me. Found all well.

**31st** We went from Isaac's to **Winter Quarters,--crossed the river on the ice.**

**Feb 1st** We staid with Nancy Clement my niece last night. She has a little daughter. Geo. A. Smith and first wife spent the evening with us. Returned home today.

**7th** I attended our meeting today and administered the sacrament.

**16th** I was taken quite sick with a sudden cold. There are quite a number sick.

**March 1st** I feel quite well again. I feel quite anxious to go to the Mountains in the spring, but I have no team of my own to go with. May the Lords will be done.

**13th** I went over to Winter Quarters again. It was cold and snowy. Stopped with Bro. Markham.

**14th** It is cold and stormy. No meeting. I went to Wm. Weeks and staid over night.

**15th** I returned home quite unwell, and discouraged about going in the spring.

**Apr 1st** I have concluded to clear off, and fence a field, and put in a crop.

**17th** I have been very busy in cleaning off the hazel brush etc. so I can plough.

**May 1st** I went up to Isaac Ferguson's yesterday to get a yoke of oxen to work. Returned today.

**9th** My wife and I went up to Isaac's on a visit. They are catching plenty fish out of the river.

**13th** Bro. Daniel Wood having had some difficulty with one of the brethren which was brought before the High Council, in this place and being decided against him, he concluded to refer the case to P P. Pratt and one of the other Twelve Apostles who were at Winter Quarters. I had attended the trial before the High Council and took down some minutes by D. Woods request and he wished me to go over to Winter Quarters with him. Accordingly we went over today. Bro Pratt modified the decision somewhat and we returned home. **B. Young and** most of the Twelve and others **started sometime ago for the mountains**, and Bro **P. P. Pratt** will start with a company who are taking their families. B. Young and company will return next fall and report.

P. 105

**1847 14th** Since the first of April I have cleared off and fenced with a little help six acres of land. The fencing is all made of split rails excepting the side next the creek, is logs and brush. Today I commence ploughing it with two yoke of oxen. Some of it is hard plowing through the hazel roots.

**30th** I have got my land plowed and partly planted. I have worked very hard. Every night after finishing my day's work I had to take the oxen a mile and an half to pasture, and in the morning I was up as soon as it was light and after them again.

Some mornings I had to travel four or five miles by the time I got back home to my breakfast. As I never could do much work in my life before I got my breakfast, I was about tired out before I began my day's work.

Many nights my feet would ache so that I could not rest until the latter part of the night. I know that the Lord has blessed and strengthened me or I could not have performed the labor that I have.

I went up to Isaac's today to take his oxen home.

**June 3rd** I finished planting my corn today. My wife helped me by dropping it, some of the time. Our little son David would play at the end of the rows until we returned. I must say that I have been prospered beyond my expectations. Two months ago I commenced work, and now I have six acres fenced and planted to corn. The soil is most excellent.

**14th** I have been chopping saw logs for Mr. Hildreth the past week at 12 1/2 cts per log in store pay. The timber is oak and black walnut .

**27th** I received a letter from George (my brother) last week and answered it today. He says that David and he will set me up in business if I will come back there. I told him that I had started out to see the end of what the world calls "Mormonism" if there was any end to it, and that I had not changed my mind, yet I thanked him for his offer.

I consider it a little singular that this offer should come at a time when I am about as destitute of clothing as I can be, as all that we have are well patched, and the prospect for getting any more immediately, is very slim. Perhaps the Lord wished to try me. If so He has given me power over the temptation for which I thank Him.

I have been very busy hoeing my corn which is a big job as the weeds are plentiful and I have no horse to plough it.

**Aug 21st** I have cleared off one and an half acre of ground and sowed to turnips which look well.

Today I baptized two of Moses Clauson's children, namely; Moroni and Sarah Jane.

Isaac Ferguson and Sister Almira came here tonight to make us a visit. He has put in a quite a crop of corn where he lives.

**Sept. 10th** I have been to work for Father Myers some of the time. Corn looks well.

**P. 106 1847 Oct 3rd** Yesterday and today there was a **general Conference** held at this place (which is now called **Kanesville** after Col. Kane) for the east side of the river. **Elder Orson Hyde** of the Twelve Apostles, who presides over the saints on this side of the river, delivered a good discourse. The weather was fine, and we had a good time. There is no frost yet to hurt crops.

**Nov. 13th** Early in the fall I built another room to my house, and Franklin Allen moved into it today. He returned from the Valley of the Salt Lake a short time since in company with a few other Battalion Boys. He was taken sick about Santa Fee, and with others wintered at Puebla, and in the spring went from there in Capt. Brown's company to Salt Lake. I have raised 300 bus. of turnips on the three acres. Cannot take care of all of them.

**Dec 3rd The Twelve have returned from the Salt Lake Valley** where they located a city which they call **Great Salt Lake City**. They have given out an appointment for a **special conference** to be held at Bro. Silas Richard's house in this place today it was convened at ten oclock. Brigham Young and others of the Twelve being present. They gave some account of their journey.

**4th** The house was so crowded today that Pres. Young proposed that the conference be adjourned until the brethren build a house forty feet by sixty feet which is thought to be large enough to hold the congregation. The house is to be built of logs

of the cottonwood which are plentiful in 2 miles from here.

**6th** The house is commenced today. There are a great many to work at it. I went and cut logs. The weather is very cold, but the people work with a will.

**23rd** The building which is called, "**The Log Tabernacle**" is completed with a puncheon floor and the adjourned conference commenced today. The weather is cold.

**27th** This is the fifth and the last day of conference. There has been much good teaching and very interesting accounts of Salt Lake Valley given. Also **Brigham Young** was unanimously chosen the first **President** of the **Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day saints** and **Heber C Kimball** first and **Willard Richards** second Counsellors to him. Every body was joyful and happy.

**31st** This month has been very cold with but little snow.

Another year has passed away and still I exist. I feel very thankful to my Father in Heaven who has supported me through my poverty and trials, and has preserved me until this present time. Although the way has sometimes looked very dark, and seemed to be entirely hedged up; the Lord has opened it up before me in such a manner, that I willingly acknowledge His hand therein, and we have not suffered for food or clothing. Through His blessings I have lone handed raised 250 bus of corn and 300 bus of turnips. This year has produced an abundant crop for the saints in this land, In one year the wilderness has been turned into fruitful fields, and the land inhabited by the degraded Lamanites has become the peaceable abode of the Saints, where they can prepare themselves to go to the mountains or the Everlasting Hills and settle down in the Valley of the Great Salt Lake. For all these blessings we praise our God.

**P. 107** **Jan. 16th 1848.** President Young and others were over here from Winter Quarters a short time since and said that we would meet today and have a **Jubilee** or a general time of rejoicing in the **Log Tabernacle** and would continue day after day until the saints were satisfied. Today was spent in preaching, and singing which was interesting.

**20th** This is the fifty day of the Jubilee and the last. The forepart of each day was spent in preaching--mostly occupied by President Young and counsellors and the Twelve and the afterpart was spent in singing and dancing. The congregation was very large, and it was truly a time of rejoicing and thanksgiving.

**Feb. 6th President B. Young** preached a very interesting discourse at the Log Tabernacle today. He said that Christ was a pattern of the resurrection, and if his body was resurrected, ours would be also, but the **keys of the resurrection** are not yet given.

**9th** I was taken today with a severe attack of the winter fever and terrible pain over my eyes.

**24th** I have got so that I can get around a little. For four days after I was taken sick I had a very high fever, and was brought very low. I could not turn myself in the bed. My wife although in a poor condition for taking care of the sick watched over me day and night, (God bless her) A Sister Lane a quite a notable Doctress came to see me, and gave me some medicine which broke up the fever, but I have convalesced very slowly. It seems as though my memory is all gone, my head was so affected.

This morning about daybreak we had a **daughter born** a beautiful plump babe whom we named **Sarah**, after her Grandmother Myers.

**March 12th** I have got so that I can do a little work. The weather is fine and looks like spring.

**25th** This morning our little daughter was taken sick with the croup,

**26th Our babe** continued to get worse until sundown when its **spirit took its flight to God** who gave it. It seems hard indeed to part with children, but the Lord giveth and taketh away, and we must be reconciled to his will.

**Apr 6th** The **General Conference** commenced today in the **Log Tabernacle**. Weather fine.

**9th** Conference closed today. The house was eroded to excess. The **first Presidency and the Twelve gave much good instruction**. Pres. Young and counsellors will go to the valley this season, also many of the Twelve and others.

**18th** My health is very poor yet, and the weather cold for the season of the year.

**Sept 1st** Isaac Ferguson and family have gone to the valley and also Elihu Allen. I have spent the summer in raising a crop and enlarging my field. I now have about sixteen acres fenced and cultivated, and excellent soil.

**Father Myers**, in company with Ezekiel Cowns and Absalom Smith have built a **grist mill** on Musquito Creek about eight miles from Kanessville. Franklin Allen and I have rented it until the first day of next April.

**3rd** I went up to the mill to commence work. The weather is fine and crops good.

**4th** Commenced running the mill to day. We get one third and are at no expense in keeping it up. This is my beginning of milling. I board with Franklin until I move.

**20th** About this time Mrs. Pulsipher commenced living with us. She is an old widow lady on the care of the Church and supported by tithing.

**P. 108  
1848**

**Oct 1st** I moved my family up to Franklins and am building a room adjoining his house. The mill grinds very slowly and we have to work day and night.

**Oct 21** There was a **conference** held in **Kanessville Oct 21, 1848** **Elder O. Hyde** Presided. **Oliver Cowdery** was at the conference and desired to come back into the Church again. He bore a strong **testimony** to the **authenticity of the Book of Mormon**, and declared that an angel conferred the **Priesthood** upon Joseph Smith and himself. It was unanimously voted that he be received into the Church by baptism.

Reuben Miller and his brother-in-law, who went off from Nauvoo with Strang but soon found that they were on the wrong track and returned, were also at the conference and made confessions and desired to come back into the church again, They were received unanimously.

**Dec 31st** We have been running the mill day and night since we commenced and I find it very wearing on me. The winter so far is extremely cold and snowy.

**Jan 1st 1849** I worked at the mill all day, The weather is very cold.

**Feb 4th** Mrs. Pulsipher left us today. I am allowed \$11.25/00 for keeping her since the 24th of last Oct. We are still busy running the mill.

**March 1st** We had the first thaw last week for three months. The snow was about two feet deep but much of it went off. Today is cold and snowy.

**Apr. 1st** When the snow thawed, it raised the creek so that we could not grind for two weeks last month. Today our time expires with the mill.

**4th** I moved back to my place above Kanessville. I came very near loosing all my things crossing Musqueto Creek. The water was running over the bridge and the oxen loosened the plank in going over so that when the wagon came to them they sled before the wheels but it so happened that the stringers were under the wagon and caught it and it slid over on them safely. It was a very narrow escape.

**6th & 7th Conference** was held in **Kanessville**. Had a very good time. **Elder Orson Hyde** presided over the saints in these regions.

**30th** I have spent the latter part of this month in putting in wheat. It has rained nearly all the time. Father Myers has turned Hildreth's sawmill into a grist mill by putting in an overshot wheel. He bought Hildreth out a few days ago or rather took the mill in payment for building, and Father Myers pays some of Hildreth's debts. The creek is very small and in a dry time, there is not water to grind with.

**May 1st** **Father Myers** wants me to move down to Kanessville and **tend his mill**, and he will give me one third of what I can make. I moved down on the fifth inst. and commenced work. I have got James Huntsman to help me and give him half of my share.

The **discovery of gold in California** has caused **thousands** to **forsake their homes** and take a long and perilous journey over the plains and mountains to seek for the precious metals. They are beginning to arrive here on their way.

**15th** We are crowded with "Gold Diggers, " as we call them. They all want grain for feed to start on the plains with. They are buying up all kinds of grain that they can get hold of and getting it chopped for their teams. Corn has rose from 25 cents per bus to \$2.00. We are busy day and night grinding and the mill is crowded full all the time all want their grinding first. We are making money midling fast now, but it can't keep this way long.

**P. 109**  
**1849** **Nov. 1st** The Gold emigration died away in June, and I then tended the mill alone. I have done very well through the summer and fall so far, as there was a great deal of rain and a plenty of water. Surely the Lord has blessed me. Franklin Allen and I have bought the mill and house with five acres of land of Father Myers, and he has moved over today.

**11th** The mail arrived here tonight from the Salt Lake Valley. Some of the Twelve came in who are going on foreign missions. They were welcomed by firing of anvils, guns, and throwing of fireballs. They bring good news from the Valley. Crops are good there and the saints are rejoicing over a bountiful harvest.

**Dec. 31st** I have been sick with a cold the past two weeks, and am not able to get around much yet.

This closes another year, and a year of mourning and lamentation it has been to many. The Cholera has raged with violence in many places. Whole families have been swept off by the destroyer but the saints have escaped with but very few deaths from his hands.

The Lord has blessed and prospered his saints in a most wonderful manner for which I thank His High and Holy name.  
Adieu A.D. 1849.



## CHAPTER 8

**1850 March 1st 1850.** The winter was very cold and changeable and my health has been very poor. Our mill froze up in December and we did not get it started again until the last of Feb.

I omitted to mention that we had a **son born** on the **15th day of Dec 1849**. We named him **Warren**.

**Apr 1st** The emigration to the gold mines is very large this spring larger than last. Wheat is selling for \$2.25/00 per bus. and corn \$2.00/00. The spring is so cold and backward that the grass has not started on the prairie and the emigrants cannot go on until it grows. As they continue to pour in here it seems as though they will eat up every thing in the land.

At a conference held in Kanesville in April (this place was full of emigrants for California who could not go any further until grass started, and the weather was so dry that it could not grow for want of rain, in fact every thing was drying up, that is, the crops.)

The last day of conference, **Bro. Hyde** requested the Saints, all to **ask the Lord to send us rain**. It was made a subject of prayer at the opening of the afternoon services, and it actually commenced raining before the meeting closed. It rained all night and wet the ground thoroughly, and in a few days there were not a

**P. 110 1850** California emigrant left in the place, for which we were very thankful, as there were some rough customers amongst them.

It has been a fine time for making money. We have done very well at the mill.

About the first of May I took a severe cold and was not able to do any thing. I had to hire a Brother who had just come in from Scotland, David Adamson by name, to run the mill my share of the time.

My health being so poor I began to reflect upon my situation and about going to the Valley of the Salt Lake. I felt that my health would never be much better here. Being impressed by the Spirit I repaired to the top of the Bluff north of the Mill, not far from the burying ground and there **poured forth my soul in prayer to God**, that He would make known His will to me, what He would have me to do, and if it was his will that I should move to the Valley this season to open up the way, that I might sell my share of the mill, and obtain a fitout for that purpose. While I was thus engaged, the **Spirit of God** rested upon me, and impressed me with the following words. **AThe way shall be opened before you, and notwithstanding your ill health inasmuch as you put your trust in me I will preserve your life, and not one of your family shall fall by the way, but I will bring you safely to the Valley of Salt Lake@**. This filled my soul with joy, and I returned to my house with a full determination to set about preparing to go.

While the California emigrants were passing, I had a light wagon at Bro Obanion's for which he was making a box and one of the emigrants seeing it wanted to trade a heavier one for it. I told Obanion to trade with him. I gave a little boot and got a good strong new two horse wagon,--strong enough to haul 4000 Lbs to the Valley. This was before I thought of going this spring. But I think that the Lord was then preparing the way for me.

About the last of May I **sold my share of the mill to Father Myers**, and obtained a comfortable "outfit." In two weeks after selling out I was ready to start with one wagon two yoke of oxen and three cows, two of them I worked between the two yoke of oxen. George Kent whose brother is in the valley is going to drive my team for the privilege of going with me, and board.

It has been very rainy of late. This is **June 10<sup>th</sup>**.

**June 11th** We started from Kanesville in company with Otis L. Terry and his Father, and brother Charles A Terry. The saints are crossing the Missouri river 18 miles below Kanesville this year and going up the south side of the Platte river. We drove down to Musquito Creek bridge and camped.

**P. 111 1850 12th** We moved on down to within one and an half miles of the ferry and unhitched our teams just in time to attend the meeting for organizing the company. One of my neighbors who was going with us said to me. "I am a going to have you put in captain of ten. " I answered, "No I don't want any office." This was before meeting commenced.

**Elder Hyde** soon arrived and preceded to organize the company. He arose and after looking over the congregation a moment he said, "I nominate **Warren Foote Captain of one hundred**." It was so unexpected to me, I must confess that I

was completely dumfounded. After I was unanimously voted in, Bro Hyde nominated **Otis L. Terry** captain of the **first fifty**. He was as much taken by surprise as I was. He was voted in unanimously. Elder Hyde then asked for some one to nominate a captain of the second fifty, and someone nominated **Wm Wall** which was carried.

(June 12, 1850)

**P. 112** Elder Hyde said that the captains of the hundred and of fifties would **organize** the company **into tens**. The meeting was then dismissed. "Well," said my neighbor to me, "You did not want any office not even to be a captain of ten and we've made you captain of a hundred." "Well I wish that they had not done it," said I, "But: I will do the best I know how." In the afternoon we proceeded to organize the company into tens.

**The following is the complete organization of the Hundred.**

<u>Names of Heads of Families</u>		<u>Wagons</u>	<u>Persons</u>	<u>Cattle</u>	<u>Horses</u>	<u>Sheep</u>	
Captain of Hundred	Warren Foote	1	6	7			
Captain of First Fifty	Otis Lysander Terry	1	6	8			
Captain of First Ten	Samuel Mulliner	2	8	13			
	Otis Terry	1	2	4			
	Charles A. Terry	1	5	6			
	Alexander M. Lovededge	1	5	6			
	John Roylance	1	8	8			
	Ann Madsen	1	2	6			
	Jesse McCarroll	1	5	10			
	John Hill	1	5	4			
	Captain of Second Ten	George Rose	1	6	10		
		Westley Rose	1	5	9		
John Rose		1	7	8			
Jared Porter		2	13	12			
Henry W. Sanderson		2	7	10			
Susannah Ward		1	8	6			
John G. Stocking		2	6	15			
Captain of Third Ten		Silas G. Simmons	1	1	9		
	Robert W. Bidwell	2	6	13		3	
	John Mowers	1	2	6			
	Simeon Cragun	1	2	5			
	Robert Montgomery	2	12	14	1		
	John Fotheringham	1	5	7			
	Washington Jolley	1	8	10		10	
Captain of Fourth Ten	Joseph L. Lish	2	9	14	1		
	William S. Lish	1	4	6			
	Samuel Glasgow	1	3	8			
	Ira Casselman	1	2	8			
	John Hamilton	2	4	16	3		
	John Mayor	2	16	11			
	John Snalham	1	2	10			
	William Ralph	1	4	6			
	Jane Rigby	1	8	6			
	Captain of Fifth Ten	John Greaves	1	3	12	1	
David Amos		1	2		1		
Robert Dixon		1	7	7			
William Stones		1	8	6			
William Clemens		1	5	6			
John Proctor		1	5	5			
John McDonald		2	5	10	3		
Newman G. Blodget		2	7	32		140	
John Dart		1	10	8			
Dr. Wade		1	5	8			
<b>Totals for First Fifty</b>		<b>54</b>	<b>239</b>	<b>385</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>153</b>	

<u>Names of Heads of Families</u>		<u>Wagons</u>	<u>Persons</u>	<u>Cattle</u>	<u>Horses</u>	<u>Sheep</u>
Captain of Second Fifty	William Wall	1	7	8		
Captain of First Ten	Ute Perkins	2	11	14		
	Marion Haws	1	3	7		
	Alva Downey	1	3	6		
	William L. Perkins	1	6	6		
	Peter Hofines	1	5	6		
	Charles Cowley	2	10	14		13
	William Waterson	1	6	8		4
	John K. Crosby	2	9	20	1	8
Captain of Second Ten	Peter Maughan	2	9	15		
	Noah Packard	1	5	6		
	John Wood	1	7	6		
	John Ebbie	1	3	6		
	Wilson Lunn	1	5	8		
	Isaac Hunter	1	3	5		
	Orrin Packard	1	3	4		
Captain of Third Ten	Chester Loveland	2	9	10		
	William White	1	6	9		
	James Downs	1	4	10	1	
	Henry Barney	2	10	22		
	Fornatus Dustin	1	4	6		
	Cyrall Call	1	4	13		
	Lindsey Brady	2	9	12	1	15
	Charles Y. Webb	1	6	10		11
Captain of Fourth Ten	Abraham Coon	3	15	23	2	29
	Francis Taylor	2	10	12		9
	Matterson Welch		2	2		
	Thomas Spafford	2	11	22		
	Spinson Crandall	1	3	5		
	Daniel Crocks	1	5	10		
Captain of Fifth Ten	Gilbert Belnap	1	4	4		
	James Knight	1	2	4		
	John Chidester	1	3	4		
	John McBride	1	3	6		
	Alfred Brown	1	9	5		
	John Titcomb	1	6	6		7
	John Beal	1	4	12		5
	Henry Beal	1	4			
	Lewis Nealy	3	9	12	4	19
<b>Totals for Second Fifty</b>		<b>51</b>	<b>237</b>	<b>358</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>120</b>

Number of Persons able to do Guard duty in the First Fifty

Guard Roll	1 <sup>st</sup> Ten	11	4 <sup>th</sup> Ten	14
	2 <sup>nd</sup> Ten	15	5 <sup>th</sup> Ten	12
	3 <sup>rd</sup> Ten	11	Total	63

**Names of some of those baptized into the Church by S. Mulliner while on the journey:**

June 29 <sup>th</sup> 1850	John Dart	
July 1 <sup>st</sup>	Franklin Cunningham	
July 14 <sup>th</sup>	Jane Montgomery	Born 1 Apr 1831
July 14 <sup>th</sup>	John Montgomery	5 Jun 1832
July 14 <sup>th</sup>	Isabella Montgomery	16 Jul 1834
July 14 <sup>th</sup>	Robert Montgomery	8 May 1837
July 14 <sup>th</sup>	Margaret Montgomery	31 Jul 1839
July 14 <sup>th</sup>	Nathaniel Montgomery	3 May 1841

**P. 113** **June 13<sup>th</sup> 1850** The second fifty commenced crossing the river today as the first fifty was not quite ready. Bro. O. L. Terry and I reset the tires of our wagons.

**14th** I crossed the river with my wagon, and on examination we found several families without firearms. Elder Hyde had advised us to see that there were plenty of guns and ammunition in the company, and said that there were several muskets at Kanessville belonging to the Nauvoo Legion and we could get all we wanted of them if we would agree to deliver them to the authorities in the Valley. After counseling on the subject, it was thought best that I should go back to Kanessville and get what was needed.

**15th** I returned to Kanessville on horseback and selected fifteen muskets which was all that I could find in shooting order and engaged a man to haul them down to the ferry. I staid over night with James Hunstman.

**16th** I returned to camp. The last of the company crossed over today. I shall now copy from the record of our journey kept by Samuel Mulliner Clk of Co.

**June 17th** Our whole Company being camped by a creek three miles from the Ferry, the officers met and passed the following byelaws and resolutions for the government, and benefit of the company while journeying to the valley of the Salt Lake. Samuel Mulliner was chosen Clerk of company.

**Resolved first:** The horn shall be blown at four o'clock in the morning when the people will arise and after the necessary preparations for starting the horn will be blown again, for the people to come together for prayers, and at half past eight o'clock at night the horn will be blown again for evening prayers, which each family will attend at their own wagon.

**Resolved Second:** That if any person while on guard at night shall neglect his duty by sleep or otherwise, for the first offence, he shall be reported publicly, and if afterward found guilty of neglect he shall again be reported and be subjected to extra duty in the day time herding cattle.

**Resolved Third,** That: any member of this Camp who shall indulge in profane swearing shall be reprovved by his captain of ten, and if he shall afterward persist in profanity he shall be published publicly.

**Resolved Fourthly,** That if any person practice unnecessary cruelty to their animals and after being reprovved by their captain of ten shall still persists in such cruelty they shall be brought before the Captains of the Camp who shall levy such a fine or punishment as they may deem just.

The foregoing resolutions are to be submitted to the whole company for approval. The whole company started out on our journey. After traveling about three miles, Bro. Roylance of the first fifty broke one of his wagon wheels, and we had to camp to repair. The second fifty passed on by a short distance.

**18th** The first Fifty traveled about sixteen miles. The Second Fifty had to go into camp before night owing to a birth.

**P. 114** A. Coon had a son born. We were hindered today having a very bad slough to cross--many had to double teams.

**1850** Also there was a boy ran over by a wagon but not seriously injured.

In the evening the First Fifty assembled and the byelaws and resolutions were read, and approved unanimously. The Second Fifty were not present owing to the birth before stated. It was further resolved That no firearms loaded, and primed, or capped, shall be allowed in camp, only by the guard when on duty, or in a case of necessity, and when the guard retire from duty, they shall instantly remove the priming or cap. A neglect of this law shall incur the severest penalty of Camp regulations.

On motion Joseph L Lish was chosen Captain, and John Hill sergeant of the night Guard, and Charles A Terry captain of the day guard. Also that each captain of ten should present to the captain of the guard three man each for the night guard. A motion for tying up dogs when not traveling was passed, and if found loose contrary to this law are liable to be shot. John Greaves resigned his office as Captain of ten, and John McDonald put in his place.

**19th** On starting this morning we had a very rocky stream to cross which took all the forenoon. Before starting we had a severe storm of wind, rain and awful thunder, which almost blasted our hopes of starting today. In the afternoon we came to another bad stream to cross. The First Fifty crossed and camped on the ground where five or six of our folks belonging to the company ahead of us had died four days previous. Traveled six miles.

**20th** We traveled ten miles--had two delays in crossing creeks. We met a number of homesick California Emigrants returning home. They report the **Cholera** terrible in their companies ahead of us. I saw two graves of the saints today who have fallen by the way. The second fifty is camped nears us and have several cases of Cholera in their camp,--the case of Alfred Brown serious.

**21st** While assembled at prayer this morning, it was voted that no one be allowed to take stock out of the corral before prayers in the morning, as some had got in the habit of so doing, thereby making much confusion. Alfred Brown died last night, and we buried him this morning before starting. We traveled sixteen miles and camped on the west side of Salt Creek. The Second Fifty is camped on the east side. Two boys died in that fifty today and one girl had her leg broken. The boys were Thomas Spafford's children.

**22nd** Two more children died in the second fifty. We started and traveled about seventeen miles,--encountered a storm of wind and rain which spared us in a measure, but was severe before us and behind us. It delayed us over an hour. There is much sickness in second Fifty.

**23rd** This is the **Sabbath**, and we only traveled four miles. Very wet weather.

**P. 115**  
**1850** **24th** Our second Fifty is near us. They have had several more deaths. Captain Foote called a meeting of the whole company for prayer to entreat the Lord to turn away the destroyer from our midst after which there was a council of all the captains. They all manifested a good spirit, but it seems there has been a great deal of murmuring in the Second Fifty. We had a good time in our meeting, and council and hope the sickness will be stayed. We have had very good health in the first Fifty so far.

**25th** We had a severe shower in the afternoon and another in the evening making every thing wet in camp pretty much. One broken wagon tongue today. The second fifty is with us and have had one more death. Traveled fifteen miles.

**26th** There is another death in the second fifty this morning. It was showery in the forenoon. We traveled about fifteen miles. Second fifty about 5 miles behind us.

**27th** We met Bro Moses Clauson and others from the Valley going on missions to England. They stopped and nooned with us, and I wrote an account of our travels thus far and sent back to Elder Hyde. We were happy to hear from the Valley. Our Camp (1st fifty) is in good health. We traveled about 15 miles.

**28th** There was a severe thunder storm last night. We came on to the **Platte** bottom yesterday noon, and today the bottom is very soft, our wagons often sinking to the hubs if we stopped our teams. The water is scarce for our cattle and a very hot sun. Some are complaining of sickness owing to exposure to wet by day and by night. The third and fifth tens fell behind today but came up late at night and for the first time we saw the power of death in the first fifty. A little boy who started out in the morning to drive stock died this afternoon of the cholera.

**29th** This morning a girl of Bro. Dart's, sister of the boy who died yesterday died. This family does not belong to the church. We traveled three miles and camped on the banks of the Platte river, where our camp washed their clothes. One young man came very near being drowned in swimming the river to get wood. In the evening we had the pleasure of a visit from Bros. Robert Campbell and Crosby who had the mail from the Valley. This night there was another thunder storm. Samuel Mulliner baptized John Dart into the church. His wife is sick and not able to be baptized now but will be when able.

**30th** Traveled fifteen miles and camped one mile west of the Pawnee village. Our camp is in reasonable health. Our second fifty has not yet come up.

**July 1st** We traveled about fifteen miles to a point of the bluff. It was a fine cool day,--a little showery. This evening Samuel Mulliner baptized Franklin Cunningham into the church. He is the person that came very near being drowned day before yesterday. Our fifty are in usual good health.

**P. 116**  
**1850** **2nd** Traveled sixteen miles. Had a pleasant day. One child of Sister Hart's died today. I observed on our way today the graves of Bro. Sargant and son who left Kanessville in a company before we did. Bro. Snallham was driven into camp tonight very sick with the cholera. He was well in the morning.

**3rd** This morning, we had to bury Bro Snallham. We traveled twelve miles today,--had a hard time crossing Willow Slough,-- broke one wagon tongue, crossing. Our second fifty is in sight tonight. We have not been together in one week now learned a thing of them only by the help of our telescope we see them in the distance.

**4th** We were reminded of the day of the month by the report of cannon at Fort Kearney. We traveled sixteen miles. Two cases of cholera in camp tonight.

**5th** One man died last night. He was a California emigrant by the name of \*King from Illinois.

---

\*I think that this man was driving stock for some person in the company to pay for his board to the Valley. When cholera broke out in camp he was very much scared. Two or three days before he died he came to me and wished me to write a letter for him sometime soon to send to his folks. But the poor fellow did not come to have it written before he died. He was taken in the day and died at night. He was a very quiet peaceable man of about 40 years of age. W. Foote

We traveled about fourteen miles and are near Fort Kearney. We see plenty of antelopes around. The weather is very hot, which is very hard on our cattle. This morning before starting we had a visit from Captain Wall and others of the second fifty. They reported well of their travels for the last eight days. They have had three deaths in their fifty since we heard from them last. We see them about five miles behind us,--in camp for the night. Mrs. Dart is very low tonight.

**6th** Mrs, Dart died last night. Yesterday she requested to be baptized as we were traveling and some one attended to it. She had been very low some days back. We passed Fort Kearney about ten o'clock A.M. The bottom is very low, and water near the top of the ground. Traveled twelve miles.

**7th** This morning we had to bury sister Dart. To day being the Sabbath we would feign have rested but we had no wood nor water so we traveled on thirteen miles, and have none yet near us tonight. We have to drive our cattle over a mile to the river to drink and carry a little to camp to cook with, Our fuel for the first time is Buffalo chips. Our second ten wished to stop awhile this morning to attend their sick, they have not yet come up. There were three cases of a mild attack of the cholera or Diarhea in camp this morning.

**8th** Our second ten did not come up last night. We traveled twelve miles today. We caught a runaway horse today which was soon claimed by two men from Captain Bennett's fifty of Captain Pace's 100. They reported their camp fifteen miles ahead of us, all in good health except for one woman. They had stopped to hunt Buffalo--had wounded two but got none.

**9th** Captain Foote's health is very poor and has been for several days. He has to be bolstered up in bed, as he can scarcely breathe when laying down. He has not had strength to talk but little for several days on account of weak lungs, as he took a severe cold sometime since which settled on his lungs. We are camping on Plumb Creek today for the purpose of washing etc.

**P. 117  
1850**

Our second fifty passed us, all in moderate health,-- no serious case of sickness in their camp. Captain Maughn of that fifty fell behind some days ago, but have come up and camped by us tonight. This captain was very much dissatisfied with our slow movements the forepart of our journey, as he called it, but some of his cattle have given out and he cannot now keep up. So much for go-ahead folks.

Our second ten has just come up and have saved **Father Rose** as yet who had an attack of the Cholera, He appears likely to recover. Sister Proctor is very low tonight.

**10th** We had to bury Sister Proctor this morning. We traveled twelve miles and stopped early to let those who had, had death and sickness to wash up while we could get wood. Captain Foote is still very weakly.

**11th** We had a terrible storm of wind and rain last night, but the Lord preserved us all from danger. We had one violent attack of Cholera this morning but the means promptly used with the blessing of God it was instantly cured. Medicine given was two doses of Pain Killer in 15 minutes of each other.

Our cattle are afflicted with sore feet and sore necks owing to so much wet weather. Today we passed 25 graves, mostly California Emigrants, there being only three or four of our people among the number. We traveled 16 miles today. Captain Foote getting better.

**12th** We traveled about fifteen miles today. At noon we came up to Captain Maughn's ten. They had stopped in consequence of one of his little sons being run over by his wagon. He died about an hour after the accident. Today we saw the first buffalo. Some of our boys went after him, but he easily escaped them, when they vented their vengeance on a stray ram that they came across, and brought him to camp. He eat pretty well instead of buffalo meat.

This evening it looked the most threatening for a dreadful storm that I ever saw, but in accordance with the prayers and faith of his saints, the Lord caused it to pass by us for which we praise His Holy Name. It truly looked awful all over the heavens.

This day we passed 15 graves, nearly all California emigrants. The dates on the headboards were from the 3rd of June to the 10th and some as late as the 17th.

**13th** We traveled eight miles and stopped to bake and wash, as we will not get wood again for a long distance. Our boys are getting some venison.

**14th Sunday.** Some of us took a walk to the road crossing Ash Creek, and met with Bro. Shadrick Roundy and company.

In the afternoon when the folks had got through with their washing, we went to the river where Samuel Mulliner rebaptized some 30 or 40 of our company, and in the evening we had a good meeting. Several of our brethren spoke well and the spirit of God prevailed and we parted rejoicing.

Several of our boys brought in their back loads of buffalo meat, the first we have got. This evening like others for several times past, the heavens gathered blackness in a very threatening manner but as on other evenings, before it could reach us it was scattered to the four winds for which we feel to thank the Lord for overruling the elements for our good.

**P. 118**

**1850**

**15th** We traveled nineteen miles today. In the afternoon we saw our second fifty. We saw three buffalo near us,--some of the boys went out and killed some. Our fifty are now all in very good health excepting **Father Rose**, who **seems to be failing**. This evening we met in council, and as many are out of meat it was thought best to stop over tomorrow and get a supply of buffalo meat.

**16th** Some went out hunting this morning. About noon we were visited by Elder O. Hyde and escort on their way to Salt Lake Valley. They were in good spirits, and after refreshing themselves and horses, they pushed on west.

**17th** We had to **bury Father Rose** this morning. We traveled fourteen miles today passing through large herds of buffalos. We are now pretty well supplied with meat.

**18th** Traveled sixteen miles. Our camp is now in good health. Grass is scarce. We have passed a great many graves in the past few days, and mostly buried between the 5th and 15th of June, and nearly all from Missouri. There is scarcely a grave but what has been robbed of its occupant by the wolves, and the bones lay bleaching on the prairies. Beds and bedding are strewn about with the stains of the cholera vomit upon them.

**19th** We traveled fifteen miles today. Our camp all in good health.

**20th** We traveled nine miles and came to the south fork of the Platte, which we crossed in safety, and found our second fifty camped on the west bank. They crossed yesterday. This is rather a dangerous crossing owing to quicksands. The river is very wide, but not very deep. The teams have to be kept a moving or the wagons will sink down in the sands. We had to double teams, and the drivers had to wade the river to keep the teams moving.

**21st** Being Sabbath day we are resting, although the feed is poor.

**22nd** We traveled twenty miles today and got to the **North Fork** of the **Platte river**.

**23rd** We are stopping today at Ash Hollow to repair wagons.

**24th** The road very sandy today. We traveled thirteen miles. The feed is very poor and our cattle look rather the worse for the wear.

**25th** The road is still sandy. Traveled 12 miles. All in good health except sister Lish.

**26th** We traveled sixteen miles today. There is nothing to be seen but sand and dust. No feed.

**27th** We started this morning at break of day, to drive till we found feed for our animals, as they got none last night. As soon as we found feed we stopped and got our breakfast. As we were done breakfast, it began to rain which detained us for several hours. We traveled thirteen miles today.

**28th** We traveled twenty miles, and camped opposite Chimney Rock. All well in camp. Last night L. Mulliner lost a fine cow, supposed to be poisoned by drinking bad water.

**29th** Traveled thirteen miles, Livingston and Kinkaid passed us on their way to the Valley. They are taking merchandise there. The grass is poor.

**P. 119  
1850**

**30th** We traveled about twenty miles and passed Scott's Bluffs. We had some difficulty with Silas G. Simmons Captain of the third ten, on account of a woman that he had picked up near Fort Kearney and was bringing her along. This woman was by the side of the road as we came along about a mile or two west of Fort Kearney. She told a very pitiful story how her husband had abused her and finally left her there. She said that they were going to California. We all passed her by, being very much in doubt about the truth of her story and thought if there was any truth in it she could very easily go back to the Fort.

When Simmons came up to her he was foolish enough to take her in. This he could afford to do if he wanted to, as he had no family but himself. For the last few days they have been quarreling and this forenoon they had a spat, and Simmons put her out of his wagon with her things; She came a running up and hollering for Captain Terry.

Captain Foote stopped the train and told Captain Terry to go back and tell Simmons that he would have to take the woman and her things along to Fort Laramie or leave the company; for he had taken her in on his own responsibility without counsel from his superiors, and it was not right to impose the burden on others, neither could the woman be left alone on the plains. Captain Terry went back, but Simmons would not take her any further, and withdrew from the company. Captain Terry got some one to take her as far as Fort Laramie.

The truth with regard to this woman is this, (as we afterwards ascertained) She was a bad character and had been stopping at Fort Kearney, until they had become so disgusted with her that they forced her to leave the Fort; and she told us the story about her husband's leaving her to enlist our sympathies in her behalf in order to get caried to the Valley.

Robert W. Bidwell was chosen captain, in place of Simmons. Company are all in good health.

**31st** Simmons left the camp alone this morning some hours before we were ready to start. We traveled fifteen miles today. In the evening Captain C. Loveland with the third ten of the second fifty came up and camped with us. They had laid by two days in consequence of Sister Loveland being very sick. She is now improving. The feed is very poor. Any case of sickness in our camp is immediately checked by the laying on of hands and the prayers of faith.

**Aug. 1st** We traveled twelve miles today. We had to stop to repair a broken axeltree. There are a number of Sioux Indians about us, who appear quiet. They have the small pox amongst them, may the Lord preserve us from this plague.

**2nd** This day we traveled twenty miles and camped on the banks of the Platte river two miles north of Fort Laramie. Feed very poor.

**3rd** Soon after starting this morning we were overtaken by Major Sanderson who is in command at Fort Laramie. He with his escort rode by the company to Captain Foote's wagon, and ordered a halt of the company.

**P. 120  
1850**

Captain Foote who was walking a short distance from the wagon, and seeing the company stopped, came up and demanded the cause of stopping. The Major said that he was informed by the woman that we left at the Fort that there were two deserters traveling with our company disguised in citizen's clothes, and that we would be detained until they were given up, as well as the persons who had given them the citizen's clothes.

By this time the captains of tens and others had gathered around, and Captain Foote told them what the trouble was and said to the Major that he could examine the company and search the wagons if he wished to, and if he found any deserters to take them as we did not want them with us. He assured him however that there were none in the first tens, but could not say as for those on the last end of the company, but he could search for himself. His escort rode back and forth examining the men but finding no one they claimed for deserters. Major Sanders made a very polite apology to Captain Foote for detaining us so long. He spoke very kindly to us, and said that we could proceed on our journey. He was very much softened in his manner towards us. We traveled eleven miles and came up to our second fifty. All well.

**4th** We drove fourteen miles and camped at the second crossing of Bitter Creek. Here we found good feed and water.

**5th** We are resting our teams and repairing wagons etc. Last evening the captains of the whole hundred met in council, and decided to travel the old road over the **Black hills**, as the new road had been traveled so much that grass was scarce. The old road is said to be more hilly than the new.

**6th** We are still resting. Captain Loveland, and ten, of our second fifty visited us this afternoon and informed us that the main body of the fifty had taken the new road contrary to the decision of our council, and that his ten was waiting for us to come up to go with us. (The second fifty did not lay by with us. ) Two days rest on good feed has done our cattle a great deal of good.

**7th** We started this morning from about one half mile east of what is called in our guide, "The Bend in the Road" near Dead Timber Creek, and as our last ten were coming into line on the road, a stampede occurred with the last teams.

Bro Clemens ran in before them to stop them but they knocked him down and trampled over him, and the wagon ran over his bowels, William McDonald being on horseback a little ahead of the ten rode in forward of the teams at the risk of his life and succeeded in stopping them before they came up to the rest of the company.

The first wagons had reached the gulch which caused the bend in the road, and if the stampede had not been stopped before it came up to the main company, there is no doubt but the whole company would have been plunged into the gulch which was eight or ten feet deep. Poor Bro. Clemens was so badly hurt that he died before night. We went into camp as soon as we came to the creek and done all that we could for Bro. Clemens. It was very providential it was no worse that it was.

**P. 121  
1850**

**8th** We traveled fifteen miles and camped at Horse Creek, where we found poor feed,

**9th** We lost several head of our cattle last night.

**11th** Our cattle not found yet. We started late in the evening and drove near to LaBont Creek. Found no feed.

**12th** Started early, to drive on to where we could find some feed for our cattle--drove two miles to LaBont Creek. Here we found poor feed but concluded to stop all day.

**13th** We traveled eighteen miles to A LaPrele river and had to drive our cattle about three miles down the river to get feed, some rainy tonight.

**14th** Drove ten miles to Fourche Boise river and camped. Here we had to drive our cattle two miles up the river to get feed. A number of our cattle are lame.

**15th** Traveled fourteen miles and camped on the **Platte** bottom. All well. Poor feed.

**16th** We drove fourteen miles, and found poor feed, but plenty of company. Captain Bennett's fifty close by and our second fifty two miles back.

**17th** We came nine miles on our way today and met two of our brethren from the valley, who had been sent out to meet the companies and pilot them to where they can find feed for their animals as there has been so much travel this season that it is very scarce along the road. Their names are--Stratton and George Madson, who is a son of Sister Ann Madson in our fifty. The news they brought by letter from the Presidency in the Valley was very cheering as was also the remarks and counsel from Bro. Stratton. The prosperity of our brethren and good crops in the Valley made us to rejoice. We camped near to the ford of the **north fork of the Platte**.

**18th** Soon after starting this morning it commenced raining. When we arrived at the ford our second fifty were just crossing. Captain Pace's hundred had crossed this morning before them. It was now raining and the river beginning to rise very fast, we followed right after our second fifty and found the water up to our wagon boxes. We all got over safely and in a short time after the river became impassable. We camped in the timber close by.

**19th** We are still in camp with our hundred in a cold rain storm, and our cattle suffering with cold and hunger. In the afternoon Captain Foote called a general meeting of the brethren for the purpose of settling all difficulties that may exist in the hundred as it would probably be the last time that we would camp together before arriving at the valley. There had been some faultfinding, especially in the second fifty. After considerable talk, everything was amicably settled, and all parted feeling well seemingly.

**20th** We traveled ten miles today over the worst road we have met in our journey. There has been a heavy rain for nearly forty hours, which has made the ground very soft. Many of our cattle gave out, but tonight we are in good feed on a creek near the Platte river. Our second fifty is camped close by. Today we saw the Sweet Water Mountains capped with snow.

**P. 122**

**1850 21st** Today we traveled nine miles and camped up a hollow west of the alkali springs where there is an abundance of grass. Our cattle being so long on poor feed, ate so much that it bloated them terribly. A fine cow of Captain Foote's died on the spot. We were up nearly all night and gave them several gallons of lard, for fear that they had been poisoned by the alkali. It looked awhile as though we were going to loose all our stock, but the Lord had mercy on us.

**22nd** Many of our cattle are very feeble this morning. We drove as far as Willow Springs,--eleven miles and camped for the night. There is but little feed here, but our cattle generally feel better. George Madson is traveling with us.

**23rd** We started at five o'clock this morning and drove to Grease Creek and baited our cattle and took breakfast. We found our second fifty starting as we drove up. From this place we drove to the Sweet Water river, ten miles.

**24th** As some wanted to do some repairs, it was thought best to stop and rest our cattle a few day and in the mean time hunt buffalo. Accordingly this morning we sent out four companies with a wagon to each company to hunt. They went in different directions. Captain Foote went with one Co.

**25th Sabbath.** Our hunters have not returned. Our cattle are enjoying themselves with plenty of good grass and water.

**26th** This evening three of our wagons returned from the hunt without any meat. They report the buffalo scarce and very wild.

**27th** We are still waiting for the rest of our hunters. Our cattle are doing very well and our camp are all in good health. Yesterday we killed a buffalo near the camp, but it seems that the herds have all left here and there are only a few stragling bulls left behind. The rest of the hunters--not yet returned.

**28th** Our hunters came in last night bringing three buffalos that they had killed. We got started at eleven o'clock and drove to the **Devil's Gate**, ten miles.

**29th** This day we traveled twelve miles and camped on the **banks of the Sweet Water**.

**30th** We traveled eleven miles today. There being some dissatisfaction in the fourth and fifth tens, a meeting was called to hear their complaints. They wanted to change the order of traveling by letting the tens take the lead in traveling alternately each day; that is, first ten one day, second ten next day and so on. Captain McDonald laid his views before the meeting, and said that he had made up his mind if this way of traveling was not granted he and others would leave the company. Captain Lish said, it was his feelings that it would be better to take the lead in turns, but he intended to be subject to the council. Several of their men expressed themselves like Captain McDonald, among whom was Wm Lish, son of Captain Lish. He was very insolent but that is common with him. Captains Foote and Terry have borne a great deal from him, in his insolence heretofore as well as the whole company.

**P. 123 1850** The Captains of the first, second and third tens viewed the present order of the Co. Good, and, we have been prospered so far, and as a change of traveling would discommode several in their tens, and cause trouble, where there had been peace and union all the way previous,--so of the two evils they chose not to let the fourth and fifth tens overrule them, because there was some trouble between them and their captains.

Captain Foote said that he was willing that they should arrange it as they thought best, but was of the opinion that, as we have come thus far on our journey without any serious inconvenience to the fourth and fifth tens he thought it best to continue traveling as we had done, especially so, as from what has been stated it is going to discommode several families in the first tens.

Captain O. L. Terry, said, that he would have to travel with the first ten because of his Father and brother as they were somewhat mixed up in their things and were obliged to camp together noons and nights and he could not see any benefit in changing our order of travel. The last tens should be ready to start as soon as the first tens, and should keep up so as to camp as soon and did not see why their cattle would not get as much time to eat as the first tens. A vote was taken when it was decided to travel as heretofore. As soon as this decision was made, several of the discontented ones left the meeting in an abruptly and noisily manner.

**31st** This morning before and during the time of prayer the following named persons drove away from camp firing their guns as they went. Of the fourth ten William S. Lish, Ira Caselman, John Hamilton, John Mayor, Jane Rigby, and Captain

John McDonald of the fifth ten. We expect to feel and enjoy more peace since some of those who have left were troublesome neighbors.

We traveled twelve miles today--all well in our camp and our cattle are doing well, as the grass is a great deal better than it has been.

**Sept 1st Sunday.** In the afternoon we traveled four miles to the Sweet Water river.

**2nd** We traveled nineteen miles and camped on the river bank. At all the camping places, also along the road for a long ways back the ground is strewn with wagon tires, chains, pieces of wagons, and a few whole wagons have been found. These things have been left by the California Emigrants. Their teams giving out they have had to abandon their wagons and many other things, but they made sure to destroy their wagons by burning the wood part of them and where they could not burn them they cut the spokes in two, and thus destroyed everything they could, so that it should not do the "Mormons" any good. The iron they could not burn up but they threw tons of it into the Sweet Water which we could see, the river being very low and clear at this time. Some of our brethren rather overloaded their teams with chains and other things which they picked up. Some found considerable bedding and clothing.

**3rd** Bro. Blodget had a fine son born today. We traveled ten miles. Sister B. doing well.

**P. 124 4th** This morning we started from the river to cross the Rocky Ridge as it is called in our Guide Book. We soon came to a fork in the road, at which was a finger-board informing us that the new road avoided going over the rocky ridge and was made by Captain Milo Andrus and company. We took the new road and found it very rough throughout, besides being a roundabout way.

**5th** Yesterday we traveled eleven miles. Today we arrived at the last crossing of the Sweet Water. Many of our cattle are failing fast. Traveled ten miles.

**6th** This day we traveled fourteen miles. Last evening we had a thunder shower. Today it is pleasant and warm. We came over the South Pass at noon and camped on Pacific creek. We saw a large number of dead animals along the road today.

**7th** We traveled twelve miles today and found good feed and water. Several of our company are behind in consequence of Sister Cragun giving birth to a child. Our pilot Gee. Madson lost his horse also, last night and he and others searched all day,--finally found him and came to camp just at night.

**8th** Our wagons have not come up, so we are resting today.

**9th** Our wagons came up last night. Today we traveled twenty two miles before we could find wood and water. At nine o'clock at night we came to the **Big Sandy river**. Our cattle are very tired.

**10th** This day we traveled five miles and camped on Big Sandy.

**11th** Traveled eighteen miles and camped on the banks of **Green river**.

**12th** Bro Stratton overtook us today on his return to the Valley. Traveled fifteen miles.

**13th** We traveled sixteen miles today. All well in camp.

**14th** We reached Black's Fork today after traveling nineteen miles.

**15th** We traveled nine miles and camped in a bend of a creek.-- Feed good.

**16th** Traveled nineteen miles and camped on a small creek two miles from Muddy Creek.

**17th** We traveled thirteen miles, part of it on a new road and camped near the dividing ridge before we come to Bear river.

**18th** We drove to **Bear River**, eight miles and camped.

**19th** We are stopping today to rest our teams. Several of our company went to the **Tar Spring** as it is called and got some of the tar and clarified it by boiling in water. The oily substance arises to the top and is then skimmed off. It is excellent for

greasing wagons and other purposes.

**20th** Today we traveled to **Echo Creek**. All well in camp.

**21st** We were detained somewhat on account of a fine ox that could not travel. We came nine miles down **Echo Kanion**.

**22nd** We arrived at the **Weber River** after traveling thirteen miles.

**23rd** We traveled fourteen miles over a rough road to Kanion Creek.

**24th** Today we began to ascend the Big Mountain, It is a long and weary road for our worn out cattle. We traveled eleven miles, and the darkness overtaking us after we had passed over the summit about a mile we were obliged to chain up our oxen for the night, as the descent was rather dangerous in the dark for loaded wagons.

**P. 125  
1850**

**Sep. 1850 25th** Today we reached the foot of the Little Mountain where we camped on Last Creek. As this will probably be our last camping together as a company Captain Foote called a meeting for the purpose of expressing our feelings one towards another and if any hard feelings existed to have it all settled so that we might part with good feelings. The meeting was well attended, and all felt well that we were so near our journey's end. A good spirit prevailed, and all forgave each other, as they all wished to be forgiven. The journey has been long, and sometimes our patience tried.

**26th** This day we traveled twelve miles and **arrived in Great Salt Lake City** and those who did not meet with friends camped on the west side of the city near the Jordon. We were **101 days on the road** from the Missouri river to this place. Thus ends our journey.

#### **Review of the Journey**

I will briefly review our journey. As I have stated my health was very poorly when I left Kanesville. After starting from the Missouri river I made it a practice to get on a horse towards camping time and ride ahead of the company and select a place to camp. About a week on the road as I was four or five miles ahead for this purpose there came up a thunder shower and I was completely drenched. I took a terrible cold which settled on my lungs, which caused the illness spoken of in the journal. I was not so but that I could get around a little, but my lungs were so weak that I could scarcely speak above a whisper. When we were along about Plumm Creek the atmosphere was so close and heavy that it seemed to me that I would have to give up breathing altogether. I remembered the promises of the Lord to me, before selling out the mill. I determined to be baptized for my health; after doing which I began to recover slowly.

When we came to Scotts Bluffs, I was able to walk some. From this place onwards the atmosphere became lighter and dryer, and my health gained very fast; and I was able to again take a more active part in the management of the company. When we first started it was decided that I should always travel on the lead. I soon found that there were some that were always behindhand in the morning, and would never think of putting their things into their wagons until they saw the head of the company moving. This determined me to always be in readiness in time to start and roll out. The first ten were usually ready to follow, when those slow folks seeing us would scratch around lively to fall in line in their places.

After the cholera left us we enjoyed ourselves well, although there were occasionally some murmuring yet I think that we crossed the plains with as little difficulty as any company that has crossed. I am certain that a journey through a desert country of a thousand miles, with five hundred souls will try the patience of any man, or set of men, who are set to be at the head; especially so when the company is made up of different nationalities, having different customs, and some without any experience in traveling with ox teams.

**P. 126  
1850**

I am thankful to be able to say that through the blessings of the Lord I was able to exercise patience to that degree that one captain of ten, said in one of our counsel meetings that I was certainly one of the most patient men that he ever saw. I do not think that he said this for a compliment to me, but it was because I would not agree to a tyrannical proposition that he was proposing. I was determined that every person in the company should have their rights respected, and I am happy to say that Captain Terry stood firmly by me in all things, in fact we were one in all our councils.

Sometimes our camping places did not suit some--"the feed was poor, and there was better ahead" and so on, but I do not know of a single instance where we found any better feed in traveling on the next morning; and the murmurers generally acknowledged that we had camped in the best place.

The second Fifty got into the Valley a few days before we did and were all dispersed before we arrived. When we stopped

to rest and hunt a little east of the Devil's Gate Captain Wall came to me for instructions. I told him that he had better push on to the Valley as fast as his teams could stand it and not wait for the first Fifty as it was getting pretty well along in the season. I also requested him to take the muskets belonging to the Nauvoo Legion and deliver them to the authorities in Salt Lake City and take their receipts. His Fifty had about ten of them. This he never did. He did not even go to Salt Lake City, but as soon as he got into the valley he took a road running south and went direct to Provo. These muskets I never recovered, and I hold their receipts to this day. (Jan 1880) I never saw him but once or twice after we got into the valley. I think he died in Provo Valley some ten or twelve years after arriving in the valley.

## CHAPTER 9

**P. 127** As has been stated we camped the west side of Salt Lake City on the Jordan bottom the evening of the twenty sixth of  
**1850** Sept. On the 27th Captain Terry and I went to see **Elder Hyde** who was still here. We found him at **H. C. Kimball's**. We **reported our safe arrival**, and asked him where he thought would be the best place to locate. He said that they had been up north looking for locations for the saints to settle, and among other places he mentioned Ogden, and said that place would suit him best. On our return to camp we reported what Bro Hyde said us, and many of our company resolved to go north.

Elihu Allen visited me at the camp today. His wife Loly is dead. His daughters Laura and Phebe Ann also visited us. I also came across Laura Bess. They are all living in the city.

**28th** I learned yesterday that Isaac Ferguson lives twelve miles south between the two Cottonwood's, so this morning I started for his place where we arrived towards night, and found them all well. They were much surprised to see us, not knowing that we were coming.

**29th** I spent all the day looking around with Isaac. I feel free again,-- the care and anxiety that has been on my mind for the last three months are gone. Everything looks flourishing. A bountiful harvest has rewarded the labors of husbandman. Isaac Ferguson has a good farm, and has raised about 1000 bus. of wheat this season.

**30th** Isaac and one of his neighbors (Bro Wm Mathews) have made their arrangements to go to the Salt Lake and get some salt, and he wants me to go along. As I wanted to see the Lake that I have heard so much about I concluded to do so. We went as far as Black rock and camped.

**Oct 1st** We drove to the lake and found plenty of salt. In the fall of the year it is generally found in abundance, as the waters decrease through the summer by evaporation, forming salt in the shallow places. We soon loaded our wagons and returned to Black Rock to camp.

**2nd** We returned home all well.

**Nov. 5th** I took up a small piece of land about three quarters of a mile from Isaac's, east, near Big Cottonwood, and the past month I made adobas and laid up the walls of a small house as far as the eaves. I also went to the Kanion, and got some ribs for the roof, and logs for sleepers. Bro Robert Gardner being in want of a miller and having heard of me, came to see if he could hire me to run his mill through the winter. He offered me two dollars a day and a room to live in. I thought probably that it would be the best thing that I could do, so I accepted his offer, and prepared to move to his place.

**P. 128** **Nov 6th** I moved down to Bro Gardner's today, and took a room in the second Story.  
**1850-**

**7th** I commenced work in the mill today. We have to run it day and night. Sister Gardner's half brother is helping me. George Gates who married my sister Clarissa lives near here, has two wives.

**Dec 31st** I am still at the mill. The weather was very cold the forepart of this month and continued so for about a week, during which time the mill was frozen up, since which time we have kept it going. There are but two mills that does much business in the Valley, so it keeps us crowded all the time.

Another year has passed away and truly the Lord has been very merciful to me in sparing my life and the lives of my wife and children, when death reigned all around us. I must say that I never saw a greater manifestation of the power and goodness of God than I have witnessed the past season. He has verified His words to me in bringing us safely to these Valleys, for which I feel to thank and praise His High and Holy name.

**March 1st 1851** I continued running the mill until today. I have worked half the day and half the night all winter.

There was a little circumstance happened which I will relate. Father Gardner took a wonderful liking to me, and sometimes came up to the mill and chatted with me.

The mill was generally so full that we had to carry the grists into the upper story. One day the old Gentleman came up to the mill to chat awhile. As we were standing by the hopper a man drove up with a grist. I directed him to carry it up stairs. After he had taken up three or four sacks, he let one slide off from his shoulder which fell to the floor, and breaking the

joice precipitated everything to the next floor and smashing that went to the next and broke that through to the ground. Father Gardner and I had stepped outside of the door about two minutes before this occurred, or we would have surely been crushed to death. I know that the Lord by His spirit put it into our minds to step outside at that particular moment in order that our lives might be preserved. It made a terrible crash, and as soon as the dust cleared away I went in to see what had become of the man. I saw him on the bottom, on a pile of sacks and rubbish. He had managed to keep uppermost and was not hurt, but the sacks and grain was in a terrible mess the grists were all mixed together, but we made out to get all straightened without much loss of grain. This is another instance that I have been preserved from sudden death.

I worked at the mill four months and earned \$211.00/00. Bro Gardner wanted me to work on a year or longer, but I thought that I would rather farm, as the mill work was very wearing on me, so I resolved to move back to my house on Cottonwood.

**P. 129**

**1851 3rd** I moved up to Isaac=s where I will stop until I get the roof on my house.

**13th** Having got my house ready I moved into it today. I have **rented three acres of land of Nathan Tanner** and three acres of Allen Taylor which I am going to put mostly into wheat. The land lies joining Isaac Ferguson's.

**Apr 6th** I have got my wheat in and it is all up. Isaac and I with my wife went to **Salt Lake City** to attend **conference**. It was so stormy that they did not hold meeting. We took dinner with Moses Clauson's wife, then returned home.

**7th** Isaac and I went to conference again. It commenced and ended today. Not much done.

**July 24th** This is the fourth Anniversary of the pioneers entering this valley. I went to the City to attend the celebration. The people could not all get into the Bowery. There were several speeches, and good feelings prevailed throughout the day. There was firing of cannon and a time of rejoicing.

**Aug 20th 1851** I have got done harvesting. I worked several days for Isaac. Benjamin F. Clapp worked Nathan Tanner's farm, all but the three acres that I rented. He, and I changed works a great deal in harvest. I find that he is on the road to apostacy. He is one of the first seven presidents of the Seventies. He finds a great deal of fault with the Presidency, and the Twelve, -- President Young in particular. He talked so much to me that I felt a little anxiety with regard to these things.

A few nights ago I had **a dream**. I thought that I was in a building and Jesus our Savior was there and a few other people were gathered in. When **I saw the Savior**, the first thought was to **ask him if President Young was leading the people right**. I thought that he was free to talk with any one. I thought that I approached him and asked him with regard to Brigham Young. He gave me to understand that he was doing as well as could be expected of any person in the flesh, clothed in mortality, and like all mankind subject to passions and imperfections. "But" said he "when I come all things will be made right-." This dream **satisfied my mind**, and I have not troubled myself about Brigham and the authorities since.

This gave me to understand that no person has gained to that degree of perfection, but what they are liable to err at times, while they dwell in mortality, for a perfected being could not dwell here with imperfect beings. This earth could not hold him, but like Moses and Elijah he would be taken away to mingle with the society of perfected beings. I told Clapp that the authorities of the Church were doing the best they could and that their labors were accepted of God.

**Sept 6th** I went to **Conference** in the City. It lasted four or five days. There was **much good instruction** given, and **the Spirit of God** rested upon the congregation in a manner which was very visible. It was voted

**P. 130** unanimously to keep the **Word of Wisdom** and also to begin anew to **pay tithing** and it was a general time of rejoicing  
**1851-2** with all the saints and all resolved to live their religion more faithfully in the future.

**27th** The summer has been very hot. I have made adobes and built an addition to my house. Today according to previous orders given, we organized a company of Militia in this neighborhood. George Thompson was elected Captain and I was elected first sergeant.

**Oct 6th** I went to conference in the City today. The weather is very fine. I have raised this year about 60 bushels of wheat, 75 bus. of potatoes, and some pumpkins, squashes, beets, melons, etc. I have lost my best cow, she died of the bloody murrain very suddenly. My other cow I killed for beef. So that I am left without a cow. All the stock I own now is three oxen.

**Nov. 29th** I have traded my odd ox for a cow.

This whole country has been divided into Military Districts. This District met at Captain Brown's in this neighborhood and organized today. Our Company was also reorganized. George Thompson was again elected Captain and I was elected second Lieutenant.

It is a cold day. I have been busy getting my winter's wood out of Little Cottonwood Kanion and working some on the road in that Kanion. I have also hauled some wood to apply on my tithing.

**Dec. 31st** I have taken up the floor of my house which was laid down loose and matched it and nailed it down snug. Our house is most to tight for health.

I and my wife were rebaptized last summer. It is required of all saints to be rebaptized and renew their covenants on settling in these Valleys.

**President B. Young being Governor of the Territory** has issued a **proclamation** appointing the **first day of Jan** next for **Thanksgiving Day**. Another year has flown. The blessings of the Lord has rested upon the Saints in these valleys and an abundant harvest has been secured, and there is no fear of want.

**Jan 1st 1852** I and my wife arose this morning early and while she was preparing breakfast I fed my animals and then when our breakfast was ready we knelt down before the Lord, and thanked Him for all His past blessings and mercies to us, and acknowledged all our past sins and follies, imploring His forgiveness and a continuation of His blessings unto us and all His Saints, and thus carried out the instructions of the Governor in his proclamation, and observed the day throughout.

**11th** Yesterday and today there was a two days meeting in this ward, which I attended. The weather was cold and disagreeable. I took a very bad cold.

**18th** I am sick with a cold, and did not go to meeting.

**19th** I fasted this forenoon and prayed the Lord to spare my life, to finish my work.

**20th** I was very sick last night, but feel a great deal better today.

**24th** I attended our officer drill about a mile from my house, but feel very weak.

**P. 131** **25th** I went to meeting, and partook of the sacrament. The weather is cold and foggy.  
**1852**

**26th** I made a bargain with Bro J. McMinds for his farm on Little Cottonwood Creek. I had a very severe shake like the ague, and was very sick at night.

**31st** I felt considerable better this morning, and being a fine day I concluded to go to our drill. At night I had a chill and a very high fever after it.

**Feb 1st** I was very feeble this morning. My appetite is very poor.

**5th** I entered into a contract with Bro McMinds for his farm. I gave him a cow at \$30.00/00 and agreed to pay \$120.00/00 in tithing by the first of Oct. next.

**13th** Bro. McMinds took sick soon after I bought his place and died last Wednesday night, and today I made a new contract with his wife for the farm. I am to pay wheat instead of tithing--75 bus. next Oct. and 45 one year from that time.

**15th** My wife and I went down to Bro James Jones at the mouth of Little Cottonwood on a visit, and returned the next day. After my return I sold my place here to Bro Perkins. He is to pay me two cows the first of Apr. next and one yoke of oxen the first of July next.

**17th** I commenced moving to the McMinds' place, and finished moving the 20th.

**22nd** It has been considerable stormy for a few days. Today it is clear and cool.

**March 31st** I had bought a house and a few acres of land (nearer the settlement,) of the Yager family and moved down there today. I sowed the McMinds place all to wheat, there being about twelve acres,--some of it very good land--I attended our drill and was elected first Lieutenant last Saturday the 27th

**Apr 5th** I went to the City to attend the **General Conference** and staid over night at Sister Clauson's wife of cousin Moses Clauson. He being on a mission to England.

**6th** The **new Tabernacle** was **dedicated** this forenoon. Dedication prayer by **Willard Richards**.

**8th** I returned home. We have had **excellent teaching** so far during **conference**.

**11th** Conference adjourned today. The spirit of God was poured out upon the people and all returned home rejoicing in the Lord.

**30th** My health has been poor this spring much of the time.

**May 12th** Today I rebaptized Frederick Margetson a son of my nearest neighbor who had lately come from England. (This family afterwards apostatized and went to California). Bro. Wynolds, Miller at President B. Young=s mill on Kanion Creek sent for me to come and help him a few days at the mill. He had got a piece of steel in his eye and was nearly blind. I went over and stayed until Saturday the 15th.

**16th** I engaged to **teach the school** in this ward one quarter; and commenced on the 24th. Scholars are all small. The weather is very hot.

**Aug 10th** I am **35 years old today**. David Adamson, (the young Scotsman that I hired at Kanesville to help me in the mill there came on to the valley last year and has been running Gardner=s mill,) came over to see me and wanted me to go in with him and build a mill on this creek. I have concluded to do so, and today I went to the City with some flour to purchase a bolting cloth. It cost us \$43.00/00. I have had to stop school to finish my harvesting,--will not teach more.

**P. 132**

**1852-3 23rd** Commenced getting out timber for the mill. Elisha Jones hews for us.

**28th** I attended a **special conference** at Salt Lake City. There were many elders called to go on foreign missions. The immigration is very large this season.

**Oct 11th** We had a **daughter born** to us, at three o'clock, this afternoon whom we named **Nancy**.

I moved down near our Mill site and we are living in a new small adobe house belonging to Bro James K. McClenahan. He built it for a stable and granary. It is close by the school house. D. Adamson is boarding with me.

**Nov 8th** Snow fell last night four or five inches and it looks like winter. We have got our timber hauled and mill raised.

**Dec 31st** The weather has been very stormy and cold, and we have got along very slowly with our mill.

Another year has gone by with all its cares, its joys and sorrows, and I find myself yet in the land of the living. In examining my heart, I feel to continue to strive to keep the commandments of the Lord. I realize that He has been very merciful to me, and my family in sparing our lives, and has blessed us in a manner that we should be very thankful for, and I feel to acknowledge His hand in all things. My desire and prayer is that I may continue faithful from this time henceforth and forever that I may be accounted worthy of an inheritance, with the redeemed in Zion.

**Jan 1st 1853.** We had a ward party today and night at the schoolhouse, and had a very sociable time. This is called Little Cottonwood Ward. Silas Richards Bishop.

**March 15th** The winter has been very severe and snow deep. Cattle have suffered much for food. We got our mill running about the first of this month and are doing very good work. On the 17th our penstock burst which cost us \$50.00/00 to repair besides loosing much grinding. We got it running again the 26th.

**July 4th** Celebrated Independence in this ward. Had a public dinner, and a dance in the afternoon. The weather has been

very warm this summer, and the creek the highest it has been known before, and has done much damage in the bottom. It also took away our dam which stopped our grinding for sometime.

**24th** This is the sixth anniversary of the Pioneers entering this valley. Had a fine ward celebration consisting of speeches, songs, public dinner winding up in dancing.

About this time **Indian Chief Walker** commenced hostilities in the south.

**Dec 31st** During the latter part of summer and the forepart of fall the Indians were very troublesome. They stole many horses and killed several whites in the south. The Southern Settlements were ordered to fort up immediately and also all the settlements in the Territory as soon as practicable. The companies in our Military District were ordered to guard the canions day and night. I spent about twelve days in guarding, but saw no Indians. Our Ward laid out a fort one mile below our mill, west of the county road leading to Utah County. It contains 10 acres and is laid out in lots containing 18 square rods (3 rods by 6) with two streets running east and west. This is to be walled in with adobes or earth ten feet

**P. 133**  
**1854**

feet high. Correll lots are laid off on the out side on three sides. I took one and a fraction lot inside near the northeast corner, and got a house up of adobes one story 16 feet by 33. Many have built in the fort and moved in. It is called Union.

Thousands of emigrants have passed through to California this season,--flour was very scarce before harvest. The emigrants had to pay from \$10.00 to 20.00 per hundred. After harvest from \$7.00 to \$10.00. We have ground during this year 8597 bus of grain our share is 859 and our tithing 85 bus. Thus passed away 1853.

**Jan 1st 1854.** I went to the city to meeting at the tabernacle. Afterwards went to my Quorum meeting.

**March 20th** I have got my house finished so that I moved into it today. My wife has been very sick with the erysiplas and has got about again. Our little boy **Warren** is now very sick with the **scarlet fever**. Dr. Lee who has been doctoring my wife has given him up and says that nothing but the power of God can save him, yet I feel confident that he will recover, for God is able to raise him up.

**31st** Our little boy is getting better. On Wednesday night last we had our last theater at our schoolhouse. We have had three since the 22nd of Feb. The proceeds are to go for the benefit of the **Choir** in this place; to which my wife and I belong. My nephew Darius S. Clement is living with me. He came to the Valley with I. Ferguson. My health has been very poor for sometime and today I was taken down sick.

**May 1st** I have had a very sick time of it with the Mountain Billious Fever, and am now beginning to get about again, but gain very slowly. The latter part of the winter was very severe--cold and stormy and our mill was stopped for the want of water. We ground but very little up to this time. The creek had changed its course and about ruined our site so we have concluded to move it down to the Fort. It will be a very hard job on us, but it will do us no good where it is. The spring has been very cold and stormy and backward.

**June 19th** I have gained strength so that I can begin to work a little. D. Adamson, Darius Clement and myself went up to the mill to take the mill stones out preparatory to moving the mill. We turned the runner on its edge and rolled it to the door, and as we rolled it out it got the advantage of us and canted over towards me and came down with the edge striking me on my left knee pan and jamming my legs into the ground to my knees. As good fortune would have it there had been a hole washed right under the ground where I stood and when the stone came down the ground gave way; or my legs would have been completely mashed. They got me out as soon as possible but I could not stand on my feet, I never suffered such excruciating pain before in my life. The cord of my leg under my left knee was broken. David Adamson and Darius carried me to the wagon and hauled me home. No mortal can tell what I suffered. For ten days and

**P. 134**  
**1854**

nights I had to lay on my back and being very weak from my spell of sickness, it seemed to me that I could not live it through. But my wife was at my bedside almost constantly and by constant care I got so that I could begin to sit up by the first of July. Mary Irene Clement, Darius Sister had left Isaac Ferguson=s and was living with me, she did the housework, while my wife waited on me.

**July 4th** They had a celebration in the fort. Some of the brethren carried me to the school house as I could not walk on my leg yet. I could stand on it a little, but could not straighten it. I enjoyed the celebration very much.

My wife said that she was going to straighten my leg, for she was not going to have a man with a crooked leg hobbling

about. I told her to go ahead. She got a piece of board and put along under my leg and then bound my knee down to it as much as I could possibly stand. The cord had growed together; but had drawed up and every time I attempted to straighten my leg it felt like a knife was piercing it. But she finally succeeded in getting it straight; though it was a long time before I could walk on it naturally. I had to step off with my right foot and bring my left one up even with it, and then step forward with my right one again. The people were now all living in the fort. Some built large adobe houses.

**15th** Major Kelsey had received orders to organize a regiment in this district and today was appointed for the muster and election, George Thompson the captain of my company had resigned, thereby leaving me in command. I rode over to the muster ground about half a mile distant. I had got so that I could walk a little with a cane. Major Kelsey was elected Colenel and I was elected Major. This was a **regiment of Infantry**.

**24th** We had a great celebration in our ward. All passed off pleasantly. We have got our Mill moved and enclosed.

**26th** Our Millwright Mr. White commenced work today. I am not able to do any thing yet. The **grasshoppers** are very thick, injuring gardens and late grain very much. It is now the highth of harvest.

**Aug 7th** I went to the election which was held about two miles from here. I was elected Justice of the Peace, much against my feelings.

**10th** My birthday has again rolled around,--**37 years old**. O how time flies.

**17th** I went to the City today with Otis L. Terry and took my oath of office and got my Commission, for **Justice of the Peace** of Govenor, B. Young.

**26th** This week has been very showery. The ground is thoroughly soaked.

**Sept 9th** I went to the city with my wife and Darius. My **wife** was **sealed** to me **by George A. Smith** this afternoon. We staid all night at his house.

**10th** We went to meeting in the **Tabernacle**. Had a good preaching from Geo. A. Smith and Orson Hyde. There was a soaking rain this morning and the mountain tops are white with snow.

**P. 135**  
**1854**

**16th** Company B of my Battalion had a drill today and I inspected them

**Oct. 6th** It is very rainy today. The **semi-annual Conference** commenced.

**7th** Franklin Allen and wife staid with us last night. I went to conference with them today and returned at night.

**8th** We went to conference again. **President B. Young** delivered an interesting discourse concerning Adam's being the father of our spirits as well as bodies.

**14th** I had a case of law before me. I got the parties to settle it.

**19th** We had bought a new run of stone for our mill, and I went to the City to get the bed stone. I staid over night with Moses Clauson who had returned from his mission to England. His wife Cornelia died soon after he came home. He had a second wife sealed to him before she died. I had a good chat with him and returned home the 20th.

**Nov. 17th** I went to the city with James K. McClenahan.

**25th** We had a general muster. I inspected my battalion. Very fine weather.

**Dec 25th** The weather has been very fine so far, and we have improved it by working on our mill. Being Christmas; my wife and I were invited to take dinner at our Bishop's (Silas Richards) which was most excellent. We assembled at the schoolhouse and spent the afternoon and evening in dancing.

**31st** This day ends another year,--a year of distress and trouble to me. There has been much sickness in my family, and I have done but very little work and many debts have accumulated. The moving of our mill has been a sore and costly job. But we now have our health and the prospects brightens before us. I feel thankful to the Lord, that our lives are spared

through our calamities.

I feel strong in the gospel, and I believe that the Lord will deliver me and preserve me until my work is done. When I realize the importance of the work in which I am engaged, and the responsibility resting upon me, I feel my weakness, and I feel to cry out; O Lord, I am but dust and ashes in Thy sight, and am unworthy of Thy favors and feel inadequate to the task, but through Thine aid and assistance, I will strive to do the work laid upon me, and perform all that is required of me,--that I may **redeem my ancestors**, by performing the **ordiances** of the gospel for them **in Thine holy House** in Thine own due time.

Help me **to lay a foundation that my posterity may build thereon**, and grant that I may obtain eternal life and an exaltation in Thy Kingdom. Therefore O Lord be with thy servant and suffer not the adversary to overcome me and tempt me above that which I am able to bear, but deliver me from evil and let Thy Holy Spirit direct me in all my ways, and be a light to my eyes and a guide to my feet, and give Thou unto me wisdom that I may judge righteously in all things wherein I am called to judge. O Lord strengthen my memory that I may retain knowledge, and understand the principles of Thy gospel as Thou dost reveal them from time to time through Thy servants, unto Thy Saints. And finally help me

**P. 136**  
**1854** Thy servant so to conduct myself in all things, that I may be accounted worthy to come forth in the morning of the first resurrection and receive the reward of the just, even an exaltation in Thy Kingdom, all these blessings I ask Thee in the Name of Jesus Christ Thy Son our Savior. Amen.

## CHAPTER 10

**Jan 1st 1855.** Terrible high wind from the south. We worked at our mill today and at night went to a dance at the schoolhouse.

**2nd** Snowed and blowed from the north all day.

**3rd** High winds from the south. The snow flies terribly.

**4th** This is fast day. The wind continues to blow very hard from the South.

**5th** The wind continues blowing from the south. Terrible time for the cattle.

**6th** The wind has changed to the north and snowed some.

**12th** The weather is fine again. My wife went over to Franklin Allen's on a visit. He is living at Draperville five miles south of Union.

**18th** Franklin sent for me. I went over and found his son George very sick.

**19th** I returned home. The weather is very warm and fine. Still working at the mill.

**21st** I went over to Franklin's after my wife. George is some better.

**28th** Went to meeting. The weather continues clear and pleasant.

**Feb 4th** We worked at the mill last week. E Wight finished his job yesterday.

**17th** We got the water into our race today. I have been **appointed President of Courtmartial** in this military District,-- We held our first court today. The weather has been warm, like spring--no storms and many are ploughing.

**25th** The past week has been very squally and disagreeable.

**Apr 1st** We have got our mill running at last--ground some horse feed today.

**6th** Got our smut machine started today, and ground 25 bus. of wheat. **Colonel Steptoe** is in Salt Lake City with about **300 soldiers**. He has been offered the Governorship of Utah. It is very doubtful if he accepts it.

**29th** It is very dry weather,--no rain to bring up wheat or garden seeds. I started north today in company with F. Allen and three other's for the purpose of looking at Weber Valley. We staid over night with Jacob Winters 13 miles north of Salt

Lake City; in Centerville.

**P. 137**  
**1855**  
**May 1st** We drove to the Weber river and followed the kanion road to the end of it. Here we met with Daniel Miller and two others on horseback. They told us that we had got as far as we could get with our horses. They had been up into the Valley and had run a very great risk in having their horses dashed to pieces in coming down the kanion. We concluded to camp here for the night and sent two persons to pioneer a route over a ledge of rocks close by called the "**Devil's Gate.**" If we can pass this there is no more obstructions in our way to the Valley. They soon returned, and reported that they thought they had found a way to get over. After supper we all went to look at the route and with our own hands and sharpened sticks we made a very good path by sundown, over a place which had been considered impassable for horses.

**2nd** We packed our two horses (which belonged to F. Allen) and was soon trying our new trail. We got over safely and proceeded on our way on foot (the horses carrying our baggage) and soon came to the lower end of Weber Valley which is very narrow. We traveled up the valley what we judged to be 15 or 20 miles and camped for the night. I was very tired after tramping all day, not having traveled much since I got my leg hurt. We found some excellent land and plenty of firewood handy, and the best range for cattle that I have seen in this country. The Valley is narrow with low mountains on each side and water abundant.

**3rd** We concluded to start home this morning, as we could see the upper end of the valley, and were satisfied with our explorations. I think that this Valley will be more or less frosty, yet I think it will be a good place to make a living. The weather turned very cool this morning. We passed the rocks in safety and arrived at our wagon before night. Weather quite cold.

**4th** After breakfast we hitched to our wagon and started homewards. We drove to the hot springs four miles north of S. L. City, and camped. Very cold nights.

**5th** We started out very early and saw ice along the ditches one fourth inch thick. We got to my house about 10 o'clock where the company took breakfast.

**13th** I attended meeting at the schoolhouse. The people are somewhat alarmed about the **grasshoppers** eating every thing up which was the subject dwelt upon by the preacher.

**19th** To look at things naturally, **famine** seems inevitable. The grasshoppers have eaten all the wheat in the country except a few secluded places, also the gardens are all destroyed. What the result will be the Lord only knows.

**July 4th** We had a general muster today. I attended to the inspection of the 2nd Battalion, which is under my command. In the afternoon I went over to F. Allen's. The grasshoppers have destroyed all the wheat in this section of country and nearly all south of here. The drouth still continues.

**16th** By orders from headquarters, the two companies of my Battalion had company musters. I attended to the inspection of them. Yesterday (the 15th) Mary Irene Clement was married to John Franklin Sanders, at my house by Bishop Silas Richards.

**24th** This is the eighth anniversary of the entrance of the Pioneers in this valley. We had a fine celebration at this place. The weather continues very dry and hot. There are no crops here but corn and potatoes and they are very late. Bread stuff is getting very scarce--begins to look like famine.

**P. 138**  
**1855**  
**Aug 2nd** This is fast day. I am not very well. This Ward was all (nearly,) **rebaptized**. I was rebaptized by Elder Jehu Cox and reconfirmed by Henry Hardy Wilson, and Grin Jefferds. All felt to try to live nearer to the Lord.

**10th** This is my **thirty eighth birthday**. Time flies swiftly away.

**14th** Franklin Allen with some others and myself, started north again to look at the country. I am not well--have a bad diarrhea; but concluded to start out. We drove to Jacob Winters and staid over night.

**15th** We went as far as Bingham's Fort three miles north of Ogden City, and stopped over night with cousin Moses Clauson. He had moved from Salt Lake City a year or two before. His half brother, Ebenezer Richardson also lives here.

**16th** I am very sick today and riding in the hot sun nearly used me up. We went about six miles northwest of the fort and

saw some very good land, but the water will have to be brought seven miles to water it. We returned to the fort at night, and stopped at E. Richardsons. The wheat crop is very good in this region. Grasshoppers did not injure it.

**17th** I feel some better. We started for home-- staid over night, north of Farmington.

**18th** I arrived at home about 4 o'clock P.M. Wheat crops are very good north of S. L. City.

**19th** There was a heavy shower this afternoon which revives the withered crops--corn and potatoes, but the chance for them to make much is very slim.

**Oct 6th** I went to the **conference** at the City. Thousands were gathered from all parts of the Territory. There was a frost last night, which killed all the corn etc. The corn did not all get ripe; but probably there will be enough to bread the people until next harvest with a good deal of economy,--weather very dry.

**22nd** This morning we had a **daughter born** precisely thirty minutes past midnight. We call her **Mary Irene**.

The weather is very fine and dry. The potatoe crop is very good. There are a great many immigrants from Europe this fall. It will be a very hard time for them on account of scarcity of grain.

About the first of July this year, David Adamson and I went to the American Fork Settlement in Utah County and rented Arza Adam's grist mill, and he went over to run it which I think will help us out through this year of scarcity. Our mill here has but very little to grind.

---

Note

My journal from Oct 27th 1855 to Dec. 25th 1856 is missing. I will have to fill up the vacancy mostly from memory. Nearly all my military orders are also lost. I have one with regard to a courtmartial which I will insert here.

Head Quarters Cottonwood Military District June 20th 1854. To Warren Foote Pres. of Courtmartial held in account for the aforesaid District on the 10th inst in Union Great Salt Lake Co.

I hereby return to you the names of the persons that was find by the decision of that Court. You will proceed to collect the fines according to law, excepting Wm Bringhurst who has paid his fine to me.

Signed Easton Kelsey; Maj

---

**P. 139** I have been **appointed Assistant Postmaster** and keep the P.O. at my house. Bishop Richards wanted me to take the **1855-6 school** here for this winter. I did so for \$2.00 per day and board myself. Darius does what little grinding there is.

We had our usual Christmas and New Years parties and although breadstuff is very scarce the people feel well and to trust in the Lord.

I paid into the Territorial Treasury on the 23rd day of Nov. \$22.90/00 being the amount of fines collected in the Cottonwood Military District up to that date. We had very good health in our family during the winter.

About the **18th** day of **Feb. 1856** I went to Provo after Eliza Maria Ivie daughter of James N. Ivie and Eliza M. Fawcett Ivie. I returned the 20th. The roads were very muddy.

On the **2nd day of March Eliza Maria Ivie was sealed to me by President B. Young in his office at Salt Lake City.** She was **born the 29th day of March 1842 in Monroe County, State of Missouri.**

The people had a hard time to get through, until harvest some were glad to get a little bran to make bread of. The first ripe grain was hailed with joy. The crops came in good and there is an abundance in the land again. We have done pretty well with the mill at American Fork but not very well with our own.

I have received several letters from George and a few from David (my brothers) since I have been in the Valley. George still thinks that I am deceived; but I am of a different opinion.

In the forepart of the fall the Authorities began to preach a reformation, and asked the people to repent and confess their sins, and make restitution wherein they have wronged any one, and then renew their covenants by baptism. Jedediah M. Grant one of President Young's Counsellors took a very active part in preaching the reformation and labored much beyond his strength which brought him down to a bed of sickness from which he never recovered. He died the first day of Dec. 1856 at 20 minutes past 10 o'clock P.M. He was perfectly enraptured in his labors and preached with great force, so that

all who heard him partook more or less of the same spirit, and the Spirit of the reformation spread with great rapidity throughout the whole Territory. Many confessed their sins and made restitution.

The sacrament was ordered to be withhold until the people humbled themselves and again renewed their covenants by baptism. The most of Union Ward was **rebaptized** on the 28th of Oct 1856. I was rebaptized with the rest, feeling a determination to keep the commandments of God more faithfully here after, the Lord being my helper.

**Dec 25th 1856.** There had been a dance appointed for Christmas being adjourned from last Christmas. The congregation voted to turn it into a meeting which became very interesting.

The winter so far is very severe. Many of the Saints from Europe crossed the plains with hand carts. Many of them were so late in starting from the Missouri river that they suffered terribly in the cold, and with hunger. Some had their feet badly frozen. Many teams were sent out to meet them and bring them in; and all were comfortably provided for in various ways.

**P. 140** (Artemisia Age 27)

**1856** My wife **Artemisia** was taken very sick about the middle of last Oct. She was so bad that I went to the City and got Dr. Williams to come out and see her. He said that she had the **typhoid fever**. He doctored her awhile but she continued to get worse and was deranged the most of the time. I waited on her and watched over her day and night, asking the Lord to spare her life. Satan was doing his utmost to destroy her, For instance, she said that something told her plainly, that I had prayed for her to die. She said that it was a voice that told her so. I knew very well that no good spirit told her that, for I never prayed for her to die, but on the contrary that she might live; and raise up her children in the way of righteousness.

During the summer and fall, there had been a **jealously** existing between my wives, which caused me a great deal of trouble; my second wife did not use that wisdom that she should have done; and I sometimes began to think that such a state of things would end in apostacy and the breaking up of my family. This was an idea that I could not think of enduring.

On a certain occasion after there had been quite a war of words between them and neither of them would listen to my counsel; I retired to a secret place, and poured out my soul to my Father in Heaven, and wept before the Lord, because of the state of feelings that existed in my family, and I prayed the Lord that, rather than any of my family should apostatize, that he would take them away, so that I might have them in eternity. I am satisfied that the devil heard this; and told my wife that I had prayed for her to die. I prayed what I have stated, before she was taken sick, and I know no one heard me; that is, of mortals.

It was with great difficulty, that I could convince her that it was a lying spirit that spoke to her. My wife got very low, and I think that all had given her up to die but myself. I besought the Lord continually to spare her life and thanks to His Holy name, He heard my prayer, and He raised her up and restored her to health. During her sickness our babe Irene who was over a year old was taken down with the mountain fever. By my constant care she recovered from her sickness but lost her hearing which is a cause of much sorrow to us.

**Dec 31st** Another year of trouble, and anxiety has passed away. It has been especially so to me. Many debts have weighed me down, on account of forting, moving our mill, grasshoppers, and much sickness.

Just before we had orders to fort up, D. Adamson and I bought James K. McClenahan's place which adjoined our mill, with a very good adobe house on it, and agreed to pay him five hundred dollars for it. In a day or two after we had drawn writings we were ordered to build and to move into a fort a mile below. After this order I would not have given \$150.00 for it. We afterwards took the house down and built the adobes into the fort wall.

**P. 141**

**1857** We have not been able to pay McClenahan but very little as yet, Our mill has brought in but little because there has been but little to grind.

Notwithstanding all these things, I feel to trust in the Lord, realizing that He rules and overrules all things according to His good pleasure. And as the Psalmist David says "I will trust in him though he say me."

**Jan 1st 1857.** This is fast day. I was quite sick in the night, taken with vomiting, and I feel very weak this morning. I ate a little, as I felt determined to go to meeting, All spoke freely and felt determined to live nearer to the Lord. I feel well this afternoon.

**8th** Elders Hutchinson and McBride, who are sent on a mission to Manti Sanpete Co. stopped here today, and at night gave us some good instruction, exhorting us to wake up and live our religion.

**10th** I went over to my sister Almira's. Her daughter Augusta is very sick. The weather is extremely cold. Today Elders Wilford Woodruff Abraham Smoot and Pack came to Union. They gave us some short discourses at night. The house was cold and uncomfortable and meeting was short. They gave out an appointment for tomorrow at 10 o'clock.

**11th** It is very cold this morning. Meeting commenced at 10 o'clock. Bro Woodruff spoke first. He mentioned the words of the Savior. "I am the true vine and my Father is the husbandman. Every branch in me that beareth not fruit, he taketh it away, and every branch that beareth fruit he purgeth it that it may bring forth more fruit. I am the vine ye are the branches" etc.

He said that they were sent forth to prune the vine, as there are many dead branches and some had but little life remaining in them. The dead ones should be cut off and if there were any twigs on them that had life in them they would graft them in again, that they may partake of the sap of the vine and begin to grow again. His remarks were very good and applicable. Bros Smoot and Pack also spoke well, and exhorted the saints to reform and keep all the commandments of God.

**12th** Colonel Kelsey is teaching the sword exercise here. I attended to night.

**13th** By the orders of Joseph Young President of the Seventies, the Seventies of this ward met at the schoolhouse and organized themselves into a Mass Quorum. 23 seventies reported. Lindsay A. Brady was chosen President and Charles A. Terry and Easton Kelsey, Counsellors and Andrew L. Siler Clerk.

**14th** I wrote the following letter to Bro Isaac Laney one of the Presidents of the 9th Quorum.

Union Jan. 14th 1857.

Bro Isaac Laney, Dear Sir,

It is with pleasure that I take up my pen to write you a few lines to let you know how we are getting along in this part of the vineyard.

I addressed a letter to President Archibald N. Hill last week, in which I stated my feelings with regard to the reformation and so forth. I am happy to inform you that the Seventies in this ward have organized themselves into a mass Quorum with President Counsellors and Clerk and will meet every Wednesday night during the winter. Twenty three seventies of this ward reported themselves, who belong to the various quorums. I am the only one belonging to the 9<sup>th</sup>. The

**P. 142**  
**1857** The brethren of the Seventies in this place are waking up, and feel determined to live their religion, and be on hand for that which may be required of them. This is my determination. I would be glad to meet with our quorum, but my circumstances are such at present that I cannot. Some one of my family has been sick for the last three months but they are now mostly recovered.

You told me at the last conference that you thought of coming out to this place, but I have not seen you here yet. If you can give us a call, I would be much pleased to have you. If you have time, please write to me, and address Warren Foote P.M. and it will come free. Bro Laney, may the Lord bless you and yours, with all Israel is the prayer of your Brother in the New and Everlasting Covenant, Warren Foote.

**March 6th** The winter has been very severe. The snow is now all gone and the grass is starting. I started for Provo today with my wife Maria, to visit her folks. We staid over night with David Adamson at American Fork, (now called Lake City). The next day we arrived at Provo, and stopped with Father Ivie.

There was a meeting in his block at night which he invited me to attend. I found the reformation spirit running very high with a great deal of enthusiasm. I was asked to speak, and spoke a short time, on the necessity of living above the law, and then we need not fear it.

**8th Sunday.** Went to meeting. J. Hovey addressed the congregation, forenoon. At the intermission several were rebaptized, who were required to make stronger covenants than I would like to make.

We took dinner with John Ivie Maria's brother. He being a member of the High Council was one of those baptized. In the afternoon James Snow, President of this place, and Dominicas Carter delivered some very enthusiastic discourses, and I think, intermixed with some false doctrine. I think that they are carrying things too far in this place,--more wildfire

than sound sense, but time will show.

**9th** Rainy, In the afternoon I visited some of my old friends.

**10th** It rained all night, but this morning the wind is cold. I took dinner with E. Jones.

**11th** We started for home, and staid over night again with David Adamson.

**12th** We arrived at home about sundown, and found all well. My wife Artemsia's health is improving very fast. Farmers are ploughing and sowing wheat.

**29th Sunday.** Bishop Richards requested, me to make it a business of writing down a synopsis of the sermons each sunday. Accordingly I commenced today. Franklin Allen, and his family are here on a visit. They intend to go to **Michigan** (where **Father Myers** is living) this season. Frank is a good deal on the background.

**30th** I went to the City and made a new bond for the Post Office in this place.

**P. 143**  
**1857**  
**Apr. 6th** In accordance with a proclamation issued by the Governor an election was held in all the precincts throughout the Territory to elect a Lieutenant General. Being Justice of the Peace I had to attend to the Election in Union Precinct. We only polled nine votes in this precinct, as nearly every one went to conference.

**7th** I went to the City to make my returns of election and attend the **conference**. There were a multitude of the people assembled. Joseph L. Heywood, President Young and Heber C. Kimball addressed the conference. Good instructions were given.

**11th** F. Allen and his family came here today, having started for the states. He says that he will come back in four years, but I doubt it very much. I took the synopsis of the preaching again today.

**13th** F. Allen and family bade us farewell, and started on their journey.

**16th** I got a horse and buggy, and took my wife Artemisia and went over to the Little Mountain to see Franklin and Rebecca before they started off for good. We found them camped at the foot of the east side of the mountain. There were about 12 wagons camped there, and another camp about one mile further on.

They were mostly bitter apostates. They got terribly affrightened just at night by surmising that the Mormons would be on them to slay them before morning, so they put out a double guard. I told some of them that I would ensure their lives from the mormons for a sixpence.

**17th** The morning has come, and no blood shed yet. Surely the "wicked flee when no man pursueth" and "a guilty conscience need no accuser."

It was very windy all night, and snowed briskly this morning. I found Franklin feeling pretty blue and also Rebecca. She had a little rather come back than go on. But Frank was bent on going to Michigan, although he thought that he was in pretty bad company. about nine o'clock it cleared up and they started eastward and my wife and I started westward. We stopped at my sister Almira's and took dinner. We had a very pleasant ride only rather cold in the forenoon.

**26th** Reported the sermons again today. On the 22nd I wrote a letter to my brother George.

**May 3rd 1857** At meeting writing as usual in the forenoon. In the afternoon the Seventies held a meeting. After some had spoken I made a few remarks, about apostacy, and said; O how necessary it is that we should live very humble and prayerful before the Lord that we may always have His Spirit to be with us, bearing testimony of the truth of the work we have embraced, and giving us power over the powers of darkness and the adversary, who is ever trying to destroy us. I also spoke of keeping a history of our lives, and said that God had commanded it, and he would not hold us guiltless if we neglected to do so. I fasted in the forenoon and in secret called on the Lord.

**5th** It seems that Satan is determined to destroy my family. O Lord wilt Thou not frustrate his designs. Thou knowest the desires of my heart, that it is to do right in Thy sight, and keep thy commandments, that Thy spirit may dwell in me. O Father suffer me not to be led astray.

P. 144  
1857

I took my two sons, David and Warren and went to a place by ourselves and presented them before the Lord, and asked Him to bless them and suffer them not to be led astray, but to preserve them in the midst of His Saints and that no power may be able to separate them from me in time or eternity. I then laid my hands upon their heads and blessed them.

The ground is very dry. There has not been any rain this spring. Some have commenced to irigate. The crops will be light in many places.

**9th** It is cold, and there are snowsqualls roundabout, and a little snow here.

**10th Sunday.** I was at my post writing as usual. It is quite pleasant today.

**11th** It is raining in the valley and snowing on the mountains.

**12th** This morning the mountains are white to their base. Drizzly today.

**15th** I went with my wife Artemisia to the City. When we started it looked as though it would be a fine day, although there was a small cloud hanging over the city, and another one over Salt Lake. Soon after we started from home they began to increase in size and soon spread over the Valley and began to snow. It snowed on us all the way to the city. We had a very disagreeable time of it. It cleared up about the middle of the afternoon, so we had a pleasant time going home. We have not had any mail from the east this spring, and we do not know what is going on in the States.

**17th** I went to meeting and wrote as usual. I was also called upon to speak. I said that our position was somewhat similar to Joseph's who was sold into Egypt. In driving us from the States, our enemies meant it for our destruction, as Joseph's brethren meant it for him in selling him to the Ishmaelites. But God brought us here to save the world, such as will hear the gospel;--then let us obey the counsel of the authorities and save our grain against the day of famine, when thousands will flock to Zion.

**19th** There has been several showers today, which has soaked the ground well. The weather is very fine for wheat now.

**26th** President Young, and company, returned from his journey north. They left Salt Lake City for the north the 24th of Apr last.

**30th** I took a load of wood to the City, and bought a spinning wheel. Price \$6.00/00.

The Eastern Mail arrived last night, with J. M. Burnhisel and George A. Smith. J. M. Burnhisel is our Delegate to Congress; and Geo. A. Smith was one of our delegates to present our petition to Congress for admitting our Territory under the name of Deseret into the Union as a state. They failed to accomplish it.

I went to Ben. F. Pendleton's and staid over night. He is an old schoolmate.

**31st** I went to **meeting at the Tabernacle.** **President Young** addressed the congregation, and gave a short account of his journey north. He did not recommend the country very highly. **Geo. A. Smith** spoke of his **mission to Congress.** He said that the people in the States were very bitter towards the Latter Day Saints. Congress would not have any thing to say on the subject of admitting this Territory into the Union. He said that there was an opposition to every thing that came up before Congress. I found my wives at the meeting. They came with John Sanders, and returned with him.

P. 145  
1857

This is the last of my Journal. I shall now have to write **from memory** and such dates as I will be able to find.

I received a **letter from my Brother George** about the first of June. He writes as follows.

**Ypsilanti, Mich. April 27th 1857**

Dear Brother, I was very much pleased to receive a letter from you, two or three weeks since, written last October. And now I am very anxious to hear from you again; for I learn from the papers that you have had a hard winter and a great deal of suffering.

I must express my regret to learn that you are so superstitiously blinded that you will not reason, and independent of priestly domineering priests. And now I warn you as a brother and you shall not be permitted to say that I did not when I saw the danger you and all of my friends are in at Salt Lake.

If you have any respect for your friends, if you have any love for your family, both for time and eternity, leave the country you are in--get you up and away from among the adulterous and wicked people you are now associated with. For it will be more tolerable for Sodom and Gomorrah in the day of judgment than for your adulterous generation.

Just as true as you were (the Mormons),--driven from Kirtland, Missouri, and Illinois, just so certain is it that you will be driven from Utah or exterminated, or give up your spiritual-wifeisms, and be obedient subjects to the laws of the United States.

Remember the fire is already being kindled that will either consume you or scatter you to the four corners of the earth. The men will soon be on the march that will enforce the United States Laws,--and your Rulers being blind leaders of the blind, will order you to arms, and to the contest, and make you believe that God will fight your battles,--and he will with a tenfold greater vengeance than on other occasions.

Be sure not to curse God in your calamity, for He has warned you in various ways, and He will not suffer your whoredoms nowheres in the wide world without being punished. What I have written you may think is unkind--not so, I have written it with the feelings of a brother.

You know that Mormonism has scattered our family and hurried some to an untimely grave. I ask you why I should not have feelings,--and you a brother, that I thought more of (excepts my parents) than any other person.

**P. 146**  
**1857**

You are most assuredly in danger. The Government and people, as well as High Heaven are incensed against the Mormons. It is believed that they are guilty of many murders and robberies, and many depredations, that was supposed to have been Indians are now believed to have been Mormons painted.

Please write as soon as you receive this. How does sister Almira look? How I would like to see you all:  
To Warren Foote. George Foote

I have not a copy of my answer to this letter. I felt very indignant at the vile epithets, and slanders hurled against the latter Day Saints. I need not say that I knew them to be false, because the teachings, and the history of the Latter Day Saints, and above all the Revelation of God to them as given in the Book of Doctrine and Covenants, should be enough to satisfy the world that the Latter Day saints are not the kind of people as represented in the foregoing letter.

Yet I could not help but sympathize with my brother, for I am sure that he felt deeply concerned for my welfare. He saw the flower of the American Army fitting out for a campaign against the saints and from his standpoint it looked to him as though they would swallow us up. Naturally it would look so to any person.

Judge Drummond, an adulterous Judge sent here by the Government as one of the Associate judges, had left the Territory sometime previous and reported to Government that the "Mormons" had burned the Court Records, and were in open rebellion against the United States and were committing depredations,--murdering etc, and through his hellish lies had induced President Buchanan to send out an army to subdue the Rebellious Mormons; But more of this bye and bye.

My Brother, hearing all of these lying reports, and that from a United States Judge, believed them of course, and gave vent to his feelings to me in his letter.

On the **10th day of June** I commenced work for Archibald Gardner. He commenced to build a large gristmill on Big Cottonwood creek by the State road six miles south of Salt Lake City. But before he commenced the mill he put up a large barn to work in, during the hot weather. I worked with several other hands until the 14th day of august at \$3.00 per day, and board, earning \$58.50.

He now wanted to make a new contract with his hands, and said that he could only pay one bushel of wheat and board per day. Some of his hands would not work for that, so they left. I concluded to work on, as it would be a steady job; and my circumstances were such that I was compelled to do something.

**P. 147**  
**1857**

I will here say in explanation that David Adamson and I got very much in debt on account of our having to build in the fort and moving our mill.

In the year 1854 I was not able to do but little and then the grasshoppers destroying all the crops the following season it

left us pretty flat. We also found that our mill could do nothing in the winter owing to the creek freezing up, and in the summer there was but little to grind. Taking all things into consideration we concluded to sell out if we could. We made proposals to sell to A. Gardner,-- and he fearing that we would sell to some one else concluded to buy the mill and take the Stones, bolt, and gearing, to his new mill. So we concluded the bargain,--he agreeing to pay us \$1200.00 in property.

This did not suffice to pay all my debts, and the companies, as I had previously bought D Adamson's share of the property but the mill. I felt determined to get out of debt if I had to go to work by days work to accomplish it. I let Darius Clement take care of the crops and things about home. I continued to work for A. Gardner the most of the time until the end of the year.

I will now go back to July. The celebration of the 24 of July was held at the lake at the head of Big Cottonwood Canon. President Young with the most of the authorities of the Church went up on the 23rd.

The 24th two men came in from the States with the express and brought word that **an army was on the way to Utah** for the purpose of fighting the Mormons. They proceeded directly to the head of Big Cottonwood to inform President Young, he also being Governor of Utah. It came upon them like a clap of thunder in a clear sky. Governor Young had not received any intimation of any thing of the kind before. I suppose that I was the first one in Utah who had been warned of this army coming to Utah, as will be seen by my brother's letter on the preceding page.

When Governor Young returned to Salt Lake City, he issued a proclamation notifying the people of the Territory that a hostile army was on the way to Utah, in time of peace, and proclaimed martial law throughout the Territory and ordered the Militia which had been organized under the name of the Nauvoo Legion to arm and equip themselves and to hold themselves in readiness for service, in a moments notice.

The command of the 5th Battalion 2nd Regiment devolved upon me, (I being Major's Adjutant) (the Major being away from home the most of the time). We were ordered out for drill and inspection, and the Battalion was placed in condition for active service.

Small detachments of **Calvary** was **sent out on the plains to reconnoiter the army**, and to destroy their baggage trains, and stampede their animals. In this they **succeeded** so as to **cripple the progress of the army** very much, in the mean time detachments of Infantry was sent out to **Echo Canon** to make defenses and ambuscades.

P. 148  
1857

I was frequently ordered to send out detachments of men and quantities of provision from our Battalion. I generally raised the detachments and provisions without much trouble as every body seemed to feel that we were in the right.

I sometimes, in my reflections, thought that it was a pretty big undertaking to withstand the army of the United States, but I knew that we had not transgressed the laws, nor done any overt act, to cause such an army to come against us. I knew that the Latter Day Saints were loyal citizens of the United States, and were peaceable pursuing their daily avocations, and minding their own business.

Then why should there be an army sent here to destroy us; to ravish our wives, and daughters, to commit rapine and murder. Should we sit down in a stupid state and make no exertions to save ourselves from such an awful calamity? No. We had endured enough of this kind of persecution and we felt like stopping our enemies the Lord being our helper before they reached the valley.

\*Governor Young ordered the detachments sent out not to fire a gun but to stampede their animals and destroy their provisions. He did not want to shed their blood if it could possibly be avoided.

When the army arrived at Hams Fork; and having been informed by some means, that Echo Canon was in a good state of defense, and well guarded, Johnston who was in command of the army concluded to march up that river to the head and enter the Valley by the way of Bear river; But finding that route impractical he marched back again.

Winter was now beginning to set in, up in that high country and he concluded to go into winter quarters on Green river.

When he left Ham's Fork for Green River, Governor Young supposing that, Johnston intended to force his way through Echo, ordered out the Nauvoo Legion of Salt Lake Valley almost enmasse, with as large detachments from the southern counties as could be spared. They were ordered to take their positions in Echo Canon, and man the defenses already

made, and to completely blockade the Canion. We received this order the 21st day of November.

**P. 149**  
**1857** Major Kelsey happened to be at home, and the 5th Battalion were immediately ordered to be in readiness to march the following morning. On the 21<sup>st</sup> I was working all day on a building in Union, and being a very cold raw day I took a severe cold and the following morning I was not able to get out of bed. Consequently I was released from going with the Battalion, but was ordered to see to sending out supplies when called for.

The **22nd** it snowed all day, and finally turned to rain, and our little army had a terrible disagreeable time of it. The Legion was out about two or three weeks, when learning that Johnston was going into Winter Quarters on Green River the most of them were ordered home, leaving only a small detachment to guard the works.

The people of Union Ward, last spring voted to build a large public granary each family to have a bin for their own private use. I did work on this building to the amount \$119.50.

A. Gardner having purchased a carding machine, spinning aperatus and looms, of M. Gaunt which has been in operation on the Jordan river for some years, concluded to move them over to his mill (having planned the building for that purpose as well as a grist mill).

As he wanted his hands to put that machinery a running after we got the mill a going, we again made a new bargain about Christmas. He is to pay us \$2.50 and board per day one half to be paid in cloth. It must be understood that clothing and all kinds of goods are very dear, and hard to be got at any price, as all traffic is stopped with the states.

Gardner's nails for all his building are made in Salt Lake City and cost him \$1.00 per Lb. So it will be seen that we are glad to have a chance to work for cloth if it is coarse. But homemade cloth is fashionable in these days. As a general thing the women spin and weave their own cloth; many of the farmers owning little flocks of sheep, which are herded about home by the children.

**Thus ends 1857.** There is no traffic with the outside world, but we have plenty of provisions and no one is suffering materially for food or clothing. But to look at things naturally the future looks rather foreboding. But we know that God is at the helm, and will overrule all things for our good.

Sometime the fore part of **February 1858 Governor Cummings** who had been appointed by the Government to succeed Governor Young was permitted to come into the Valley. He was received with great courtesy and respect, much to his surprise.

**P. 150**  
**1858** He found the Court Records, (which Drummond had reported burned) all right and that the "Mormons" were a law-abiding- people, and reported the same to the Government at Washington. The defenses in Echo Canion were a surprise to him, and he really began to like the "Mormons" for bravery and patriotism.

**Colonel Kane** (the person who visited the camp of the saints at Council Bluffs in order to raise the Battalion to send to California) came into Salt Lake City about the same time; having been sent here by **President Buchanan** to confer with the "Mormons" with regard to adjusting the present difficulties and through his advice, two Commissioners were sent on by the President to make a treaty of peace with the Saints. But more of this hereafter.

During the winter a standing army was organized for the purpose of guarding the frontier and watching the movements of Johnston's army.

The forepart of March it began to be talked of pretty freely of moving south enmasse and burning every thing behind us rather than to let it fall into the hands of our enemies; as we have done heretofore.

On the **4th of March 1858** I had a daughter born to me by my wife Artemisia S. whom we named **Artemisia**.

I continued to work for A. Gardner on his woolen Factory until the 20th of March. We got the grist mill in good running order in Jan. Robert Shimmin was miller. Gardner and Shimmin did not agree very well; so he made proposals to me to run the mill. I finally agreed to run it for 1 1/4 bus of wheat and board per day, and to commence the 22nd inst.

According to agreement I went down to the Mill early Monday morning the 22nd to commence grinding. As I went into the house, Bro Gardner and family were eating breakfast. About the first thing he said was, "Well Bro Foote we have got

to leave here. **President Young** preached yesterday at the **Tabernacle** that he thought it best to move southward and if the **United States** were determined to **send their army** into the Valley without some treaty, or agreement, we would burn our houses, cut down our orchards and make the country as desolate as it was when we came here. He then called for a vote of the congregation. They all voted aye.

He then said that he wanted the poor to be helped first and to begin tomorrow and get into Utah County at least, He wanted the people to get all their wheat floured and packed into boxes and hauled away." This is about what we had been looking for, for sometime, consequently we were prepared for it in a measure. I went into the mill and commenced putting the mill into good order for business, expecting to be crowded in a few days.

James C. Walker was hired to assist me. He was a young man who had been Working for Gardner and was formerly from Ireland, his parents were originally from Scotland. He had never worked at milling before, but I soon found him to be a good careful hand.

**P. 151** In a few days the State Road was lined with teams loaded with Families and provisions going southward and  
**1858** within a week our large mill was stowed full of wheat to be ground into flour, and packed. It required two more hands to help in the mill,--one to help me, and one to help James. We ground on an average from 14 to 16 bushels per hour, day and night, and then could not keep up with the customers.

One time we had the mill as full as it could be stowed, and the large barn also. This was a pretty hard time for me. I had to do all the dressing of stones, and run the mill half the night besides. But I seemed to be strengthened for the task. This rush continued for about two months; and we ground thousands of bushels of wheat, the flour of which was hauled southward.

A. Gardner declared, that the mill was inspired, he had never seen a mill grind so before. I recollect that one time I put a grist of 20 bushels into the sink and in one hour it was ground. Teams were constantly on the road going to and from the south day and night. Some went as far as Fillmore but the greater part of the people stopped in Utah Co.

On the **20th day of April my second wife's first born son was born**. She had very hard labor and the child was **dead when born**, caused by the unskillfulness of the midwife. We named him **Hiram**.

Soon after this I moved my family down to the mill as the people had nearly all moved from Union. I soon sent Maria to Provo to stay with her Father until things got into a more settled condition.

In about two weeks after I moved my family to the mill I moved them to David Adamson's at American Fork. I was absent from the mill two days. Gardner moved all his folks to Spanish Fork, and James Walker and I were left alone at the mill, with an old man and women to keep house, and these he soon moved away.

About three weeks after, I took my family to American Fork, I went over and moved them across north, to Dry Creek, four or five, miles below Alpine City with some other families camped there. I then returned to the mill. After I moved my family to American Fork, Darius Clement was called to go out to Echo Canon with a few others to guard the canon. He returned in about three weeks and stopped with me at the mill.

**P. 152**  
**1858** Salt Lake City was now deserted. A new Postmaster had come in and he was still keeping the office open. I opened the Union mail at the mill and forwarded it to the various places where the people had gone.

I went to the City one day to look around. It was as still as death,--not a woman or child to be seen. I occasionally saw a lone Man walking the streets like a lonely sentinel. Grass was growing in the deserted door yards and streets. I had strange feelings and reflections. What had become of all those merry children that was wont to play in those deserted door yards and streets? What had become of the blooming maidens and the joyful young men who once promenaded these, now desolat streets? Where are the middle aged who caused this city to resound with the busy hum of industry? also the aged who once leisurely walked these streets leaning upon the staff? What had caused all this terrible desolation? What has this people done that they must be harassed and persecuted in such a manner? What law have they broken?

The answer is; they have broken no law, they have not done any thing that can justify the great Government of the United States in sending an army here to destroy us. The fact is the Government has been deceived through the lying reports of their Judges, and being urged on by wicked, and designing men, who assured the President that the "Mormons" were in open rebellion against the Government, and was establishing an independent Government of their own. Had President Buchanan been a wise man he would have sent some reliable men to have investigated the matter before sending an army at such a vast expense. The old Prophet said, "The wisdom of the wise shall perish and the understanding of the prudent

shall be hid." This was certainly fulfilled in this case.

After viewing the loneliness of the City. I went to the post office and found several books there for me, which I had sent for sometime previously. I found the new Postmaster (Mr Morrell) very sociable, and on learning that I was Postmaster at Union, enquired the situation of various post offices especially those having local names different from name of post offices.

Soon after my return from moving my family to Dry Creek, the two Peace Commissioners arrived in Salt Lake City. President Young with the authorities of the Church met them there to hold a conference with them. A. Gardner being at the mill also went to the City to hear what was to be said. But their meeting was held with closed doors, and he did not get in.

After the close of the meeting George A Smith told Bro. Gardner that they had a pretty warm meeting, and it looked very doubtful about peaceably settling matters, and it looked as though we would have to burn every thing and flee to the mountains.

On the second days meeting matters took a more favorable turn, and before night the treaty of peace was signed. The saints were to return, to their homes in peace and Johnston army was to be permitted to enter the Valley, but were not to be allowed to establish their quarters in Salt Lake Valley. This was joyful news to the Saints.

**P. 153**  
**1858**

I took my team and started immediately for my family. I started about sundown and reached their camp a little after sunrise. I told my wife that I had come to move them home. It was with a glad heart that she heard the joyful news. I moved her back to the mill for the present.

When the Union folks had returned I moved my family up to my own house. We all felt truly thankful to get home again, and praised the Lord for His mercies to us in softening the hearts of our enemies, and overruling all things for our good.

Johnston with the solders entered the valley, and passed through Salt Lake City before many of the inhabitants had returned. He camped west of the City by the Jordon until he could select a location for permanent Quarters.

He finally selected a place in Cedar Valley Utah County, and moved to it, naming it Camp Floyd. Day after day for several days their baggage and provision trains hauled by oxen passed the mill on their way to camp Floyd.

Peace being now restored the people settled down again to their daily avocations. In consequence of moving there had not been as much grain and vegetables planted as usual and what was put in, had not received much care, and the prospect now was that the crops would be very light. But the most of the people had enough breadstuff ground up to do them a year, but it was all in the south, Consequently they were obliged to haul it back.

I had sent about 11000 Lbs to Springville and left it in care of Robert Johnson one of my old neighbors at the Bluffs. I think that some of it remained there a year before I got it away.

I continued working at the mill until the 20th day of November, when I went home to rest through the winter. I made from the 22nd day of March to Nov. 20th 300 bus of wheat in running the mill.

James C. Walker also left the mill and came and lived with me. Darius Clement also still lives with us and went to school through the winter.

So another year passed away. A year that had been big with events for the Latter Day Saints. But the storm clouds all passed away for a season, and the Lord had delivered his people from the hands of their enemies.

Government had sent in so many ox trains that oxen and wagons were very cheap. Large Government wagons were sold as low as \$15.00. Many were bought up for the iron that was on them, and knocked to pieces,--the timber being kept for sale, for the purpose of repairing smaller wagons.

Many people found employment in making adobes and putting up buildings for the soldiers: and thus the Lord overruled all these things for the good of His people, to whom be all the honor and praise forever.

## CHAPTER 11

**P. 154** In this chapter I will write some of **my poetry** with dates of composition etc. These verses should have been inserted in my history in their proper place, according to dates, but my daughter Olive had them from home, and I could not obtain them at the time. The following I composed in Greenwood Steuben Co. New York on the **15th of July 1835**. This is the year that several of the Elders of the Latter Day Saints visited Greenwood and quite a branch was raised up, causing quite an excitement among the sectarian priests.

### The Fall of Babylon.

Behold what delusion, and what great confusion,  
Old Babylon is all in commotion  
Her work is most done, and her end is most come  
And the Lord will soon give her, her portion.

She says she'll not fall, "for behold I am tall,  
And my throne is as high as the heavens."  
But soon she'll come down, even low as the ground,  
Thus John did behold in a vision.

A mystery it was, to understand all her laws,  
But the Lord has revealed all her secrets,  
Her mysteries are known, and her craft is all shown,  
To all those who are diligent seekers.

But soon she will fall, and that is not all,  
She'll be cast in a fiery lake,  
Never more to return, but forever to burn.  
For she's burned many saints to the stake.

The saints then will sing, and praise their great King,  
And a thousand years with him will reign,  
And sing of His praise, throughout endless days,  
For His Saints He will never disdain.

Then lift up your voice, all ye saints and rejoice,  
For shortly your Savior will come,  
In the clouds He'll appear, and all those who will hear,  
He'll take to a glorious home.

**P. 155** The following is on the discovery of America, by Columbus. Composed in Chester, Geauga Co. Ohio, **March 1838** (Long Metre)

- 1 Columbus was the man ordained,  
To cross the Atlantic's surgy main  
And to old Europe's sons unfurl  
The beauties of the western world
- 2 This bold idea he entertained  
That far beyond the wat'ry main  
A vast extent of land there was.  
Which the old world new nothing of.
- 3 In this he was so confident  
He sought to try the experiment  
The truth of this to ascertain  
Or see if his theory was vain.
- 4 Although he met with great contempt  
And from king's courts in sorrow went,  
He through his troubles persevered,

P. 156

- And before the court of Spain appeared.  
5 At length the sovereigns of Old Spain  
Declared his theory they'd maintain.--  
Three vessels then were fitted out,  
And manned with ninety men throughout.  
6 With these he left the coasts of Spain,  
To cross the Atlantic's wide domain,  
And to all Europe's sons unfurl  
The riches of the Western World.  
7 Two thousand miles or more he sailed,--  
In his discoveries yet he failed,  
when all his crew with voices stern  
Declared that now they would return.  
8 Columbus them to pacify  
Said, to their wishes he'd comply.  
If in the course of three days more,  
They saw no island coast or shore.  
9 As he was standing upon deck.  
(The appointed time being almost up.)  
At nearly twelve o'clock at night \* "Oct 11th  
He spied far off a shining light. 1492
- 10 Soon as the day began to dawn,  
All eyes in eagerness were drawn,  
When to their joy and great surprise,  
The land appeared before their eyes.  
11 The ships and music of the crew.  
Multitudes of the natives drew,  
Who with emotions of Surprise,  
Stood gazing on with eager eyes.  
12 Columbus,--arrayed in splendid dress,  
(And being followed by the rest.)  
With a drawn sword in his hand,  
Stepped himself first upon the land.  
13 After returning thanks to God.  
Who'd brought them safely o'er the flood,  
He took possession of the land,  
In the name of King Ferdinand.  
14 After a few discoveries more,  
They set out for the Spanish shore,  
They, the roaring waves oft' heard,  
But were by providence preserved.

In connection with the foregoing I composed the following about the same time, entitling it. **Origin of the Natives of America.**

To' Columbus now we'll bid adieu,  
And pass to more modern times,  
Among the natives take a view,  
Their origin try to find.  
O, Red Man we'll enquire of you,  
Who your ancient fathers were,  
O,tell us if you ever knew,  
And the truth to us declare.  
"To answer you I will engage  
"Nothing but the truth to tell;  
"So I will boldly take the stage,  
"And that mystery dispel.  
"I, by the Book of Mormon true,

P. 157

"Learn that my ancient Fathers,  
"Once lived amongst the ancient Jews  
"And understood their manners.  
"But by priestcraft and wickedness,  
"In darkness they were fallen,  
"Although the prophets of the Lord,  
"Ceased not to give them warning.  
"Their wickedness became so great.  
"The Lord appeared to Lehi,  
"And showed to him the nation's fate,  
"And a great destruction nigh.

"He said 'Arise and leave this land,  
"For I will surely bless thee,  
'And lead thee to a promised land  
'Far beyond the mighty sea.'  
"He, to obey his Lord's command  
"Did himself and house prepare  
"Then he soon after left the land  
"God's great promises to share

"But yet there was another man,  
"(Ishmael and his family)  
"Who did with Lehi leave the land,--  
"The promised land to see.  
"After many a weary step.  
"They to the ocean came,  
"Where they a vessel did prepare,  
"To cross the watery main.

"They, by the Lord's Almighty hand  
"Were preserved upon the deep,  
"He drove them towards the promised land,  
"As they did his statutes keep.  
"After many generations  
"Were all number'd with the dead,  
"They became two mighty nations,  
"And most of the land o'erspread.

P. 158

"But they often had contentions,  
"And with one another fought,--  
"From God's church there were dissensions,  
"Thus to darkness they were brought.  
"But God gave them many warnings,  
"And in mercy spared them long,  
"But in darkness they were fallen,  
"And to ruin went headlong.

"They fought many bloody battles,  
"In which thousands oft' were slain,--  
"Until one whole mighty nation  
"Were into oblivion lain.  
"Thus for their works of wickedness.  
"They were suffered to be slain,  
"Others being left in darkness,  
"In which state they still remain.

"But there yet is hope within us,

"That the Lord will not delay,--  
"For He soon will come to bless us,  
"And his mighty works display.  
"For He's promised us, to gather,  
"And all others, who will come,  
"All the wicked from us sever,  
"Then we'll dwell in peace at home.

The following **hymn** I composed in Chester Ohio, in **March 1838**

When Zion doth in beauty rise,  
And God accepts her sacrifice,  
Then righteous all her sons will be,  
From sin and Satan's power set free.

Though wicked men and apostates rage,  
And all the powers of hell engage,  
That blessed day will surely come,  
And all the saints be gathered home.

Though persecutions oft' abound,  
And devils hurl their darts around,  
God's servants will in boldness stand,  
Proclaiming truth throughout the land.

And what though some of them be slain,  
And moulder into dust again  
When all the dead in Christ shall rise,  
They'll soar to meet Him in the skies.  
On earth they'll reign a thousand years,  
And God will wipe away all tears,  
O then their souls a rest shall find,  
In love, and joy, and peace divine.

P. 159

O, may I with that heavenly band,  
In that day on Mount Zion stand,  
With all my garments freed from stain,--  
Cleansed by the blood of Him t'was slain.

After the Prophet Joseph Smith and others were betrayed into the hands of the Mob--Militia at Far West and the promulgation of Governor Bogs' exterminating orders I wrote the following lines dated, Shoal Creek 8 miles east of Far West, Caldwell Co. Missouri

- 1 Let Zion and her children mourn, (**Nov. 10th 1838**)  
And all the saints below;  
Let all the Heavenly host look down,  
And join in mourning too.
- 2 For soon her land,--all desolate,--  
(Her children scattered o'er.)  
Will fall a prey to wicked men,  
Who'll flock to it by scores.
- 3 Already they have plundered much,  
And taken many lives,  
But soon the Almighty God will hear,  
His children's mournful cries.
- 4 They've set all law and justice 'side;  
Not fearing God nor man,  
And from this land the saints they drive,

P. 160

- To try the Lords command.  
5 Which says "My saints shall gathered be,  
On Zion's precious land,  
Where all the righteous rising free,  
Shall in my presence stand."  
6 Although the state's Chief Magistrate  
Said, "Masacre and kill,"  
But yet their lives are still preserved  
Contrary to his will.  
7 So they may boast their wicked deeds,  
And threaten us, to kill,  
This sure will never stop the work  
Nor pure religion still.  
8 Then let the wicked triumph now,  
Their joy will soon be o'er;  
For soon the measure they do meet,  
will on their heads be poured.  
9 And if the saints shall faithful prove,  
When in another land;  
Deliverence they will sure receive,  
From God's Almighty hand.  
10 The wicked then, must gathered be  
Into the thrashing floor;  
As Micah did their state foresee  
Some thousands years before,  
11 Arise and thrash O Zion fair,  
Whose hoofs are made of brass;  
And make them even small as dust,  
To be blown off like chaff.  
12 Then let that happy time roll on  
Which prophets did foretell,  
When earth shall ne'er conceal the blood,  
Of any creature slain,

Some time after the Militia had left Far West and several of the saints were shut up in prison, Bogart (who command the mob in the battle of Crooked River.) with a party of men kept scouting through the country in search of arms and "Danites." In their excursions they generally made it a stopping place at old Father Lyons. Lyons had a son named Carlos a young chap, and a comrade of mine, said that if I would make some verse about the mob, he would read them to Bogart some night when he stopped at his father's. Accordingly I went at it and wrote the following on the **5th of Jan. 1849**, and headed it; "**The Mormon Boys.**"

Come all ye sons of Freedom, and listen to my noise  
While I relate a story, about the Mormon Boys.

These gallant sons of liberty once fought against a mob,  
Who'd swore vengeance on their heads, their religion and their God.  
This mob-war did at first commence on an election day  
When some mobbers I'll assure you on the ground did prostrate lay  
When they had recovered and fairly rubbed their eyes  
Away they ran for help then, these Mormons to surprise.

A force they soon collected, these Mormons Boys to scare,  
But sir, they got mistaken, for they would not stir one hair.

P. 161 Without recruits they thought it vain, to fight these gallant Boys  
So away they ran with might, and main and made a dreadful noise.

Then next to Carroll county they thought they'd try their luck,

To drive a handful Mormon Boys, in whom they found--good pluck.

Here, was a reverend gentleman, whose name was Sashel Wood,  
Who headed these brave (?) mobbers, which done him sure much good.

So after bothering them awhile, the Mormons left them there.  
The mobbers that they'd wonders done, the Mormon Boys had scared.

Then up to Davis county next, these mobbers off did prowl  
And took a canon 'long to make, the Mormons jump and howl  
Now the Mormons tho't the time had come to have a little fun,  
The mobbers tho't they'd lose their lives, so they cut dirt and run.

Their canon was a burden, so, they hit it under ground,           Adam-on-di  
The Mormon Boys soon found it, and carried it off to town.       Ammon

Next down by the Crooked River, Some \*wolves were heard to howl,  
Being dressed in fleecy sheepskins, they tho't t'would do to prowl.

The Mormon Boys soon heard them there, and after them did go;  
They tore their fleecy sheepskins their colors then did show.

Now th' Gov'nor he raised a force, these Mormon Boys to take  
The one t'whom he gave command, was the brave Gen'ral Clark.

He soon with some thousands men against eight hundred came,  
He tho't if he could take th' Boys t'would immortalize his name.

The first night they encamped, one half mile south of town+  
They were much affrighted, for, they tho't the Boys were 'round  
Also from Livingston this night, three hundred ruffians came,  
And killed eighteen +Mormons, which gave them a great name.

Now all the Mormon Boys tho't it vain for to resist,  
So long as all the State would these mobbers sure assist.

Now another howl was heard from th' wolves in sheepskins dres't.

Saying if we get the Head<sup>&</sup> we're sure of all the rest.

So off they went t'get the Head, a treaty they said t'make  
They promised them protection, but did their promise break.

They then took all th'arms away from these brave Mormon Boys,  
And placed a guard around them, as prisoners of war.

The Head<sup>&</sup> was carried off by the wolves and put in irons  
The Body<sup>-</sup> still remains, as inhabitants of Zion.

Although against th'laws, they saw th'Body must banished be,  
And never will be suffer'd its Head again to see.

**P. 162** Ye brave and hardy Boys, now I'll bid you all farewell,  
You fought bravely for your homes, where you can no longer dwell.

O farewell sacred liberty, for which our Fathers fought,  
Under feet thou now art trampled, just like a thing of naught,  
But the day will surely come when righteousness will reign  
And God will bring you victory, and to your homes again.

---

\*The mob in the garb of State's Militia.  
+Far West.  
+Haun's Mill massacre.  
&The Presidency of the Church.  
=The body of the Church.

---

The following lines were written in **1840** before my Mother came to Illinois, as I was recovering from the ague.

- 1 Farewell my Mother Dear; Farewell;  
My face no more you see  
I now have gone far hence to dwell  
But still I think of thee.
- 2 Once when Missouri's distant land  
My longing eyes did see  
And prairies spread on every hand,  
My tho'ts were still on thee.
- 3 When there arose on every Side,  
Scenes strange and new to me  
Then when the mob did with us chide,  
I strongly tho't of thee.
- 4 When th'Mississippi I recrossed.  
With those who had to flee.  
Or else their lives would sure have lost.  
O then I tho't of thee.
- 5 When chilling agues shake my frame,  
And naught but death I see,  
When trouble has my mind o'er came.  
O then I think of thee,
- 6 Tho' th' fertile plains of Illinois  
And prairies rich I see;  
Should often times my mind employ  
Yet still I'll think of thee.
- 7 The' mirth and laughter doth abound  
And oft' times foolish glee;  
The' music in my ears resound.  
I still will think of thee.
- 8 Tho' I should go all o'er this earth  
And roam from sea to sea.  
And wonders to my eyes unfurl,  
I still would think of thee.
- 9 If wealth I ever should obtain,  
And riches ever see  
Or poverty; 'twould be the same  
I still would think of thee.
- 10 Let sorrow then, or joy abound  
This one thing sure shall be,  
That nothing can on earth be found  
To make me forget thee.

**P. 163**

A **Hymn** Composed **Apr 12th 1841**. (Common Meter)

- 1 Come sinners turn unto the Lord  
O turn and seek His grace  
For fast the day is rolling on  
When you shall see his face.
- 2 Turn ye for soon the Son of God

- Will in the clouds appear,  
 When all those who despise His power,  
 Shall shake with awful fear
- 3 Turn ye, for soon the day will come,  
 Which all the saints desire;  
 When this vast earth shall be consumed,  
 And purified by fire.
- 4 O turn then that ye may escape  
 The judgments of the Lord  
 Which He will send in latter days  
 According to His word
- 5 Turn ye and when the world's on fire  
 You with the saints shall rise,  
 And meet the Lord with all His band  
 Triumphant in the skies.
- 6 Come white and red both bond and free,  
 Obey the Lord's command;  
 Prepare your hearts with righteousness  
 To in His presence stand.  
 Then in the New Jerusalem  
 The saints will all reside.
- 7 Then when Old Satan shall be bound,  
 And th' earth is purified.
- 8 And when th'Archangel's trump shall sound,  
 And time shall have an end,  
 Our God will take us home with Him,  
 Eternity to spend.

**P. 164**

**Hymn** 2nd composed **Apr 13th 1841** in Adams County Ill. Co. M.

- 1 Lift up your heads ye saints of God.  
 And wipe your weeping eyes,  
 For soon our Savior will appear,  
 Triumphant in the skies.
- 2 Altho' the wicked triumph now,  
 Their joy will soon be o'er  
 For when their sins are fully ripe  
 He'll vengeance on them pour.
- 3 They then will weep lament and howl,  
 And cry with all their might  
 For rocks and hills to fall on them,  
 And hide them from His sight.
- 4 Then when the elements shall melt,  
 And all the world's on fire.  
 The dragon's hosts will gnaw their tongues,  
 And raise their curses higher.
- 5 Come all who would escape this pain  
 Yourselves with faith prepare  
 That ye may rise above the flames  
 To meet Christ: in the air.
- 6 O what a promise then have we,  
 If we'll but watch and pray,  
 That one day we shall meet our Lord,  
 And ever with Him stay.
- 7 We'll reign with Him a thousand years,  
 When wickedness shall cease  
 And we'll be made unto our God  
 For ever kings and Priests.

- 8 Then all ye saints lift up your heads  
For your redemption's nigh.  
And keep your hearts in purity,  
Whil'st here below the sky.

**Hymn 3rd composed Apr 17th 1841 (11)**

**P. 165**

- 1 Behold the great day of the Lord is at hand,  
And none but the saints will be able to stand,  
When loud thunders roll and the red lightings flash  
And mountains thrown down with a most awful crash.
- 2 Then think ye unrighteous of that dreadful day,  
When all things around you shall cease and decay,  
When th'elements melt and the earth will be burned,  
And the Savior descend whom so long you have spurned.
- 3 O what lamentations and weeping there'll be,  
Throughout Satan's camp as the Savior they'll see,  
They'll call on the rocks and the mountains in vain,  
To hide all their guilt and to cover their shame.
- 4 But lift up your heads all ye saints and rejoice,  
For this is your Saviour, whom you've made your choice,  
He's come to avenge you, and call you away,  
And take you on high, with Him ever to stay.
- 5 Whilst all the unrighteous must perish by fire  
For after this glory they would not aspire.  
But now they must drink of their own bitter cup,  
The contents of which they once made you to sup.
- 6 But now all your troubles and trials are o'er,  
The curses of Satan you'll never hear more,  
But with saints and angels forever you'll dwell  
Whilst all the ungodly are thrust down to hell.

The following lines I composed when I was very much down, in body and mind on the **7th of Aug. 1841**. Adams Co, Ill.  
(Common Meter. )

**P. 166**

- 1 O what a wretched world is ours,  
Where death and sorrow reign;  
Yet many paths are strewn with flowers,  
But mine are filled with pain.
- 2 Cares arise on every side,  
To fill my troubled breast,  
And if one even should subside,  
With more I am opprest.
- 3 Disappointments strike a dart.  
T'anticipated joys,  
And O! what feelings wound the heart,  
Whilst this our minds employ.
- 4 I grasp at pleasure but alas!  
It always proves a trouble,  
And when the joyous moment's past  
I find 'twas but a bubble.
- 5 I sometimes find a loved friend,  
In friendship growing cold,  
Which keenest darts of sorrows send,  
Into my troubled soul.
- 6 Where shall I find a faithful friend,  
To cheer my drooping heart,

- That would a moment with me spend.  
 And joy to me impart.
- 7 If such an one on earth I knowed,  
 How much would I rejoice,  
 T'would ease the trouble of this world,  
 To hear that soothing voice.
- 8 Perhaps there's one who dwells on high,  
 That cares for wretched me,  
 If so, then what's the reason why,  
 To Him I should not flee.

The following I composed **March 23rd 1842, the day previous to my baptism** into the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints.

- 1 There is a road that leads to Heaven  
 A road by inspiration given,  
 A road that leads direct to God,  
 A road that Christ Himself has trod.
- 2 O, then, if there be such a way,  
 Why should I here longer stay,  
 Where naught but death and sorrow reign,  
 And all my paths are filled with pain.
- 3 The world would fain its joys impart,  
 To cheer and soothe my troubled heart,  
 But O Alas! its joys are vain,  
 When they are past they bring me pain.
- 4 But now the gospel I'll obey,  
 I'll rise and wash my sins away,  
 Then I'll pursue the road to God,  
 Which all the former saints have trod.
- 5 This road is strait the scriptures say  
 Th' commandments all I must obey,  
 And every word that God has given,  
 Or else I'll not arrive at heaven.
- 6 Many friends I am forced to leave,  
 The gospel they will not receive,  
 But will pursue the road to hell,  
 Therefore I bid them all farewell.
- 7 Now the short remnant of my days  
 I'll spend to my Redeemer's praise,  
 And when He in the clouds doth come  
 I then shall find a heavenly home.

**P. 167**

Thus ends my poetic compositions, After I was baptized I did not seem to have any spirit for writing poetry. But had I continued, I probably might have become quite an amateur.

## CHAPTER 12

**1859** I purchased the claims to some land in what is called the Jordon Field one mile west of Union, and in the spring of 1859 I sowed considerable wheat. Darius S. Clement worked with me.

In May, one of the U. S. Judges threatened to issue a writ to apprehend President Brigham Young for some trumped up affair, and intended to call on the soldiers at Camp Floyd to assist in taking him.

This becoming known, the Nauvoo Legion was privately ordered to hold themselves in readiness for any emergency. A. H. Raleigh adjutant of the 2nd Regiment N. L. came to me as I was plowing one mile up the creek from Union to bring me verbal orders, which was to send a detachment of men from the 5th Battalion (of about 5) to the low mountains between Salt Lake Valley and Cedar Valley and overlooking camp Floyd and watch the movements of the soldiers, I sent out privately three men with instructions that if any one inquired their business to tell them they were hunting stock. If they saw any soldiers move towards Salt Lake City they were to report immediately. But there was no movement with the soldiers, and the prosecution of Pres. Young given up.

In the spring of this year several of the brethren of Union sold out and moved to Sanpete County. Among them was Jehu Cox, who was Bishop Richard's first counselor. The Bishop called me to take his place as first counselor, which position I accepted, being unanimously sustained by the ward. I felt my weakness in taking this position especially in being placed ahead of his second counselor (Henry H. Wilson who was a man much older than myself, but I made up my mind when I embraced the gospel, never to back out when called upon to perform any duty; but would try and do the best I could trusting in the Lord.

The 12th anniversary of the entrance of the pioneers into the Salt Lake Valley was celebrated at the head of Big Cottonwood Canon. Bro. H. H. Wilson and I attended it. We had a general good time although it was somewhat showery. President Young with the most of the general authorities of the Church were there, and a great many from Salt Lake City and the surrounding country. There was music and dancing,--some fishing in the lake, and some rambling through the pines and over the mountains. All seemed to enjoy themselves well.

**P. 168**  
**1859**

While at this celebration I made an agreement with Archibald Gardner to assist in running the Cottonwood Mill during the fall and winter. I cradled all my wheat (which was very light) and my son David and Darius Clement raked and bound it.

I should have stated that my wife **Maria** went to Mt. Pleasant in Sanpete Co. the last of May to stay with her Mother during her confinement (Her Father had sold out in Provo and- moved to that place). I received a letter from her the last of June that I had a **son born** on the **22nd** of that month. As soon as she was able to ride without danger she came home, We called our son **James Franklin**.

The latter part of August Bro. Gardner sent word to me that he wished me to commence work at the mill. Accordingly I commenced on the 28th of that month at one bushel and one peck a day, and board. I left Darius Clement in charge of business at home. Robert Shimmin, the person who run the mill when first built worked with me. He chose to run it the latter part of the night and the fore part of the day. This suited me well, for I always preferred the latter part of the day and forepart of the night.

In the forepart of November I received the following **letter from my brother David**.

Flint Genesee Co. Mich **Oct 16th 1859**

Dear Brother, I have delayed writing to you so long that it seems such a task that it is almost impossible for me to commence, but I made up my mind that I would put it off no longer. You see I have commenced on a small sheet so as not to get discouraged before I get it full. Myself and family are all well as usual. I am to work at my trade now,--have been getting along rather slow for the past four years. I thought that I could do better than to work at the cabinet business, and after trying the Merchantile business about two years, and was burned out I found that I had lost over \$3,000.00. I then went to work by the day at my trade, which I find is a very poor way to support my family. The fact is I think any man with a family should be in some business so that he can have the whole profits of his labor. But as I was situated I could not get into business to suit me, so I have done the best I could until a better opportunity presented itself.

The first day of this month I, in company with another man bought a steam engine of about ten horse power, which we are using for the manufacturing of furniture, which I am in hopes will pay better, and it also gives employment for my boys, which I consider of great importance, and if I can furnish them with work, and keep them at home and bring them up to be sober, and industrious men, I think I shall accomplish more than I should if I had succeeded in obtaining a

**P. 169**

**1859** fortune for them. Wealth is but of little worth unless the owner has the faculty to use it for the best good of himself and mankind.

We have five children four boys and one girl. Our oldest boy's name is David Burns. He was 18 years old the 21st day of last May. The next is Warren Cook--was 14 the 28th of last Jan. Mary Eliza was 11 the 14 of last March Albert was 9 the 21st of Sept. and William Harrison was 5 the 6th of June. Andrew Hyslop was born the 15th of May 1856 and died the 10th of March 1857.

Flint was organized into a city about 3 1/2 years ago. We have about 5000 or 6000 inhabitants. It is a healthy place with a good farming country around it.

The Methodist Church has 300 members and is doing well. I am satisfied that a person can serve God and be a Christian here in the Methodist Church as truly as to join the Mormons and go to Salt Lake or any other part of the globe.

I want to hear from you very much, and from all our folks in that region. Do write as soon as you get this, and I assure you I will answer it without delay.

George and his folks were well the last we heard from them. I have not heard from Wm Ferguson in some 3 or 4 years. I suppose that he is still living in Ohio.

I should like to see you, and ask you a great many questions. It has always been strange to me how you could be a Mormon. It would seem that if there was nothing else, that polygamy would be so disgusting to you, that you would leave them at once.

Perhaps the men may be satisfied with it, but I am sure their wives and children see many a day of trouble and sorrow and would gladly have it otherwise. My wife and family join with me in sending love to you and yours.

From your Brother. David Foote

I have not retained a copy of my answer to the foregoing letter but as he has always been very mild in all his letters to me as touching Mormonism. I think that I answered in a mild candid way. I have no doubt but what he looked upon polygamy as a great sin. But when I read the Bible, which all professing christianity pretend to believe in, I feel greatly astonished that they should profess to believe some portions of it and reject others, and yet they say that the Bible is the Word of God.

**P. 170**  
**1859-**  
**1860**

In speaking of Abraham they say that he was a very righteous and good man, and they expect to associate with him hereafter and still they read that he was a polygamist. They sing, and praise the Psalms of David and say that he was a man after God's own heart, and they read he had many wives. They will quote the wise sayings of Solomon, and we find that he was the chief of polygamists. What consistency is there in this. If polygamy is a sin now, it was a sin in those days. If it was not a sin in those days it is not a sin now. A righteous principle cannot change to a sinful principle, If so God would be a changeable being. We read in the bible that He says of Himself, "I am the Lord I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed."

If it were possible for a pure and righteous principle to become a corrupt and unrighteous principle, what assurance could we have in any principle called righteous or what faith could we have in God Himself. Doubts would arise in our minds when we went to call on Him. We would begin to think in our hearts, that He was not of the same mind that He was yesterday. Faith would cease to be "an anchor to the soul both sure and steadfast@.

But, O man, be ye assured that all correct and true principles are as eternal, and as unchangeable as God Himself is. Therefore if we are penitent and of a contrite heart we can call on Him with boldness and an assurance that He will hear us, and if we keep all His commandments to the end of our days we shall receive a crown of Glory in His kingdom.

On the **31st of Dec.** I found that I had worked at the mill eighty one days, amounting to 101 1/4 bus of wheat.

**Jan. 1860** I continued working at the mill. There was considerable snow, and very cold weather.

Early in the morning of the **14<sup>th</sup> of Jan.** my wife **Artemisia had a son born.** It was a very cold night. We call his name **George Albert,** I continued working at the mill until the 16<sup>th</sup> day of Feb.

Since the 28 of last August until this time I worked 120 days which came to 150 bus of wheat. I now came to the conclusion to build a house a mile up the Little Cottonwood Creek above Union. I got some house logs hauled on the

place. I put in my crop on that place, but did not get the house built.

On the 2<sup>nd</sup> of Sept. 1860 I commenced working at the Mill again, by days work. I continued working until the 27<sup>th</sup> of Oct. and earned 57 bus. of wheat. I now rented the Mill of A & R Gardner and commenced running it the 1<sup>st</sup> of Nov. I am to run it until the first day of April 1863, and am to have one fourth of the proceeds and the Gardners furnish candles and Mill grease and keep the mill in repair. I hired James C. Walker to assist me.

I hauled the logs that I took upon my place above Union, down at the Cottonwood Mill and built a house and moved my family down, although I still continued our names in the Union Ward, but I resigned my counselor-ship to the Bishop and Thomas Terry was put in my place.

I was elected Justice of the Peace for three terms, in the south Cottonwood precinct, but at our Election last August I utterly refused to serve longer, and Thomas Terry was elected to that office. I think that at the election in Aug. 1856 Union ward had been set off in a precinct by itself called Union Precinct. Consequently my last two terms or four years **P. 171** was in Union Precinct. I was kept very busy at the mill the rest of the year. I run the mill myself the after part of the

**1861** days and the forepart of nights, and generally had to be at the mill from breakfast until dinner to attend to business.

The soldiers are still at Camp Floyd but peace and quiet prevails in all the settlements.

The Church sends teams to the Missouri River every season to bring our immigrants to the Valley. The year 1861 came in favorably for Utah.

The **war** of the rebellion **broke out** this spring, and the **soldiers** in Utah were **ordered back** to the states. When they arrived there, General Johnston and many of the soldiers joined the Confederate army. Johnston was finally killed in battle. And thus ended the **Flour** (flower) of the American Army@ which President Buchanan sent here to subdue the "Mormons@. They sold off a great deal of property at auction before they left Camp Floyd, which brought them but a mere trifle. Thus the Lord overrules all things for the good of his people, instead of our enemies taking a spoil from us, they became a spoil.

During the summer season we were rather slack of grinding. My second wife lived in a house belonging to James C. Walker. It was not but a short distance from my house. The Military Districts were reorganized in October.

The Cottonwood district were ordered to be and appear at the schoolhouse in South Cottonwood Ward for the purpose of reorganization, on the 12<sup>th</sup> of Oct. 1861.

On the day specified General George D. Grant, came out from Salt Lake City to take charge of the election and division of the district. He called upon me and Wm W. Casper (who was formerly Captain of Co. B in my Battalion) to locate the division line between the two Districts. After consulting together a short time we agreed that Big Cottonwood Creek should be the line. This was then sanctioned by the people present. The District south of the creek was called the Cottonwood and Willow Creek Military District. The one north of Big Cottonwood Creek was called Mill Creek district and Casper was elected Major of that District. The election of the officers of the Militia in the Cottonwood and Willow Creek Military District resulted as follows:

Easton Kelsey Major  
Warren Foote Adjutant,

Co. A John Fitzgerald Capt.

Daniel Tyler Adjt  
Perry Fitzgerald 1<sup>st</sup> Lieut.  
L. Smith 2<sup>nd</sup> Lieut.  
Robert Shipley 3<sup>rd</sup> Lieut.  
Andrew J. Allen 4<sup>th</sup> Lieut.  
W. Bateman 5<sup>th</sup> Lieut.

Co. B Charles A. Terry Capt.

Charles Pulsipher Adjt.  
Marion H. Brady 1<sup>st</sup> Lieut.  
Elias W. Howel 2<sup>nd</sup> Lieut.  
James Spillett 3<sup>rd</sup> Lieut.  
Wm H. Shirley 4<sup>th</sup> Lieut.  
Daniel S. Cahoon 5<sup>th</sup> Lieut.

Immediately, or in a few days after the foregoing election, a great number of families were called by the authorities of

**P. 172** the Church to go and **settle** on the **Rio Virgin River** in the south west part of the Territory for the purpose of **raising**  
**1861** **cotton**. Quite a number were called from Union Ward, in consequence of which, Major Kelsey ordered a meeting of the 5<sup>th</sup> Battalion at Union on the 26<sup>th</sup> of Oct 1861 for the purpose of ascertaining the names of all the officers who were called

to go on the foregoing named **mission**. The following named persons were found to be called. Easton Kelsey Maj, **Age 44** Charles A. Terry Capt of Co. B; Charles Pulsipher Adj. Co. B. Consequently those officers resigned. The office of Major now being vacant, left me in command of the Battalion.

**Oct. 31st** I had a daughter born to me of my **wife Maria** which we named **Eliza Ollive**.

About the **20th of December** I received the following orders.  
Captain Warren Foote Commanding 5<sup>th</sup> Battalion 2<sup>nd</sup> Reg. N. L.

Dear Sir, a complete Return Roll is wanted immediately by the General; of your active command; Each officer=s name, each private=s and musician=s name, and opposite, the number, and kind of guns and amount of each ones ammunition,--your means of transportation named in the orders which you received, and they must be had immediately. Very Respectfully Yours etc.

A. H. Raleigh Major, Commanding  
19 Ward Salt Lake City Dec 19 1861.  
2<sup>nd</sup> Reg. 2<sup>nd</sup> Brigade 1<sup>st</sup> Division N. L.

The foregoing order was promptly attended too, but I have not a copy of the full report at this time. I have the muster roll of Co. B. which was made at that time, which I will put on record.

**P. 173**

**Muster Roll of Co. B. 5<sup>th</sup> Battalion 2<sup>nd</sup> Reg. 2<sup>nd</sup> Brigade, Nauvoo Legion**

Office	Names	Muskets	Yaugers	Rifles	Pistols	Lbs Powder	Lbs Lead	Caps
1st Lieut.	Marion H. Brady			1		0.5	6	150
Adj't	Levi H. Calaway		1					
	Ephraim Wilson			1			2	400
	Henry Wilson			1			1	
	Joseph Smith			1		4	20	200
	Wm W Morrell				1	2	6	500
	Charles Sharp		1					
	Richard Morgan							
	Orison Kelsey						6	
	James C. Walker							
2 <sup>nd</sup> Lieut.	Elias Wm Howel			1		0.25	3	100
Adj't	Charles Nowland	1						
	Ezra Pate		1			0.5	1	200
	Rufus Foibush			1		0.5	4	100
	Isaiah Cox			1		0.25	2	50
	Thomas S. Terry			1		0.25	14	100
	John Sharp							
	John Oborn			1				
	Richard Middleton			1			0.5	12
	Ebenezer Thayne			1		0.5	2	100
	Oscar Mann			1		0.25	2	75
3 <sup>rd</sup> Lieut.	James Spillett			1		1	4	75
Adj't	Thomas Wheeler					1	1	
	Wm Newman							
	Alvin Green							
	Warren F. Reynolds			1				
	Harvey Butler							
	Jeter J. Jenson							
	James Graham							
	John Graham							
	Wm Turner							
	Edward Tanner			1				
4 <sup>th</sup> Lieut.	William H. Shirley			1		0.25	1	75
Adj't	William Wilcok						2	
	Thomas Shirley		1					50
	Lars Larson	1						2
	Andrew Horn							
	Thomas Horn							
	Edward Fairbome						3	
	Joseph Clayton							
	Jacob Fical						2	
	Seth A. Pymm						2	200
	George Shell			1			2	
	Charles Wilkins	1						40
	Wm Panter	1						400

**New Recruits**

Joshua Jarvis  
 Walter G. White  
 Jens Jenson  
 Peter Salisbury

Matthew Rowen  
 Joseph Thompson  
 James Corruth  
 Lewis Huffaker

Wm Huffaker  
 Jacob Boeler  
 John Boeler  
 James Winchester

Butler  
Daniel McAllister  
Nathan Hunting  
Almo Butler  
Dugald Adamson  
Alx. Adamson  
Albert Bishop

Martin Hanson  
Daniel Saurer  
-Musicians-  
Fifers  
Darius S. Clement  
Alfred Holmes

Alx. Calderwood  
Joseph Gaugh  
Drummers  
Norman G. Brimhall  
John Williams  
Jacob Pate

I had hauled all the grain, and feed that was raised on my place at Union; down to the mill, and wintered my cows, and sheep there. I had bought a span of ponies and harness during **the fall of 1861**, and also during the winter following a light wagon of James Townsend who kept a hotel in Salt Lake City for which I paid flour, to the amount of \$130.00 at \$4.00 per hun. Soon after renting the mill, I made a contract with Townsend to furnish him with flour.

I moved my wife Maria up to my house, in Union, in the beginning of the winter. Where she stayed until the spring of 1862 when I moved my first wife and family up, and my second wife back to the mill.

**P. 174** My firewood cost me about \$150.00 during the fall and winter and spring. I had continued the drills, and inspection of  
**1862** arms of the 5th Battalion as I received orders from time to time.

Sometime the latter part of June 1862 I received orders from Gen Franklin D Richards to order the 5th Bat. to meet at Union for the purpose of electing officers to fill the vacancies that had occurred in the Bat.

On the day appointed, Gen. Richards, accompanied by his brother Samuel, came out to conduct the election. After drilling a short time, we marched into the schoolhouse and were seated. After making some remarks, Gen. Richards nominated me for Major. It was seconded and voted unanimously. Marion H. Brady was elected Capt. of Co. B. Having no minutes of that election, I do not remember the names of the other officers. The election being held on Saturdays, the Gen. and Brother stopped over Sunday and preached.

My son David put in the crop on my farm, what little I had left,- the flood having washed away the most of my land on the creek bottom.

Grinding at the mill was very slack during the summer.

In the fall of this year (1862) there was another **call for families to settle Southern Utah**. Robert Gardner was called among others. He concluded to sell his half of the mill. President Young and Fred K. Kesler would buy it provided they could get the whole of it. A. Gardner did not want to sell. But after repeated solicitations of his brother he concluded to sell if President Young would pay his price, which was \$7000.00 Robert had offered his share for \$6000.00. After considerable bartering they finally closed the bargain at those figures. On Nov. 5th 2 o'clock P.M. 1862, Young and Kesler took possession.

As my time for which I had rented the mill would not expire until the first of Apr next, Robert Gardner asked me if would not as lieve quit now. I told him no, I could not do it without much damage to myself. President Young said that it would not make any difference, he was willing that I should run the mill to the end of my contract.

Father Ivie and sons having moved from Provo to Rhode's Valley on the Weber River, sometime previously. I had got him to take my sheep and keep them for me through the summer and also to winter them there. I made several trips to that place.

In November I received the following orders.

Head Quarters 2nd Reg. Infantry

Orders No. 1) Major Foote,

**P. 175** You are required to enroll all persons who may be found residing in your Military District, liable to do military duty,  
**1862-3** according to the requirements of the regulations governing the Militia of Utah.

This is in view of any and all who may have settled among you since your report was last made. Do this quietly but efficiently, avoiding all excitement,--detail all particulars as formally. Instruct recruits that the law requires each man to have not less than 40 rounds of ammunition. Fail not to make returns of this on or before the 25<sup>th</sup> inst.

Signed Jonathan Pugmire jr. Col.  
Nov. 18th 1862)

David McKenzie Adjt

The foregoing was promptly complied with. The Civil War continued to rage in the States but we had peace in Utah.

On **Jan. 10th 1863** my son **Jacob Alfred** was **born of my wife Artemisia**.

I continued running the mill until the first of April 1863. James C. Walker also continued to help me, and then after I quit, he run it for Young and Kesler. The President wanted me to continue to run it, but my health was failing, from so close confinement in the mill, and I found that I must have a change of occupation, or I would not last long.- I hired J. C. Walker at \$1.50 per day to be paid in flour at \$4.00 per hun. He worked on this contract until March 11th 1862, earning \$413.25. I then made a contract to pay him three pecks of wheat per day until Apr. 1st 1863. During this time he earned 215 bus. During my stay at the mill I had got a good wagon, a span of horses, and harness, and had wheat to bread my family one year. My sheep had increased to about 50 head, and I had paid for taking care of them. Flour had continued low during my whole term.

My wives made our own cloth, from the wool of my sheep. On the first of Apr. I moved all to Union.

**I could not see any more prospect of making a living on the little land that I had, and I concluded to seek some place where I could get more.** Rhode's (Round) Valley being a very cold place, Father Ivie, and his sons came to the conclusion to leave there and go south to some place where they could raise grain. As he had my sheep and young cattle, keeping them for me I concluded to go with--them. The time set to start was about the first of Sept.

During the summer I and my son David made two trips to Sanpete Co. for grain, in exchange for tobacco etc. I made very well with the grain but the last trip, I foundered a horse which had cost me \$200.00 from which he never fully recovered. (I sold him a year and an half after for \$65.00).

Father Ivie and company came along at the appointed time, and I took my wife Maria, and my son David, with all my stock and started out not knowing where we would make a stopping place. James Allred a cousin of Father Ivie was also along. He had about 300 head of Cattle, which with the Ivies made a pretty large herd, and consequently slow traveling. We arrived at Chicken Creek in about 5 days.

**P. 176**  
**1863** The next day we drove to the Sevier Bridge. There being abundance of grass here we stop a day or two, and send some ahead to look at Round Valley. I was chosen for one, also James A. Ivie and J. Allred. The distance was 10 miles. We went on horseback.

We found a small settlement, and on enquiring of the facilities of the place, we learned that there was another valley, laying east, containing a lake and an abundance of grass, we concluded that it would answer our purpose, although we learned that there would be considerable opposition to our locating there. We returned to camp, and reported.

It was agreed that we would move over. Accordingly we gathered up our stock and drove about a mile east of the old settlement, and camped. We found that the people were very much divided. One party were greatly opposed to our settling there, and the other party were as much in favor of it. The Presiding Elder was of this last party.

We went to the upper valley and cut some grass for hay for winter. David and I put up quite a large stack and returned to Union, for supplies. We soon went back to Round Valley, and hauled logs and built a house on a town lot in the new town site, which had been surveyed on a place selected by President Young.

Father Ivie, and sons, also built on the new town plat. After I had moved Maria in the new house David and I returned to Union. Sometime in Nov. we went back again and put up the walls for another house for Sidnie my first wife, and returned again to Union.

The **26th or 27th of Dec.** I took a load of household goods, with my sons, David, and Warren, and **started again for Round valley**. David took sick just before we got to Payson. I got to stay over night with a man by the name of Oliver. It was a pretty cold night. In the morning David appeared some better and we started quite early, and drove to Salt Creek and stopped with Bro. Luther Reed who was building a gristmill at that place. David was very sick, and I saw that he had all the symptoms of Lung Fever. Bro Reed gave him a heavy dose of rhubarb which physiced him pretty thoroughly. The next morning, I fixed him as comfortably in the wagon as I could. The weather was clear and pleasant, and we drove to Chicken Creek Station, which was kept by Bro. Gullup. David was very much fatigued,-- riding and was still very sick. Sister Gullup made a comfortable bed for him by the fire, and went to doctoring him. He rested pretty well through the night and appeared much better in the morning. I made a comfortable bed in the wagon, and being a pleasant day I started

P. 177 for Round Valley, where we arrived towards night. David felt better than he did in the morning. He soon recovered, and was able to work again.

On the **24th of Nov. 1863** my son **Sidney Wallace** was **born of my wife Maria**. We staid in Round Valley until the forepart of **February 1864**, during which time we finished the house for my first wife. I obtained an other team and wagon, and went to Union to move all away.

I obtained the following certificate of Bishop Richards:

Tithing Office Union U. T. Feb 25th 1864.

This will certify that Warren Foote has paid his produce, labor, and increase tithing in full from the 1st of Jan 1852 to the 31st of Dec. 1863. Also \$23,32 on Property Tithing on Gen. Tithing Office in 1856.

(Signed) Silas Richards, Bishop

I fixed the cooking stove in one wagon, so as to make a fire, if needed to make my wife and children comfortable. After bidding our old neighbors "good bye". we started out about the **26th of Feb 1864** and drove to Willow Creek and stopped with Absalom Smith, over night. He and wife were old acquaintances.

The next day we drove to Pleasant Grove and staid over night with Bishop John Brown, who was our neighbor when I lived on Big Cottonwood. The following day we drove to Springville and stopped with Bro. Roylance, who came to the Valley from Kanessville in my Company. From this place we drove to Salt Creek. The weather was clear and cold, with some snow on the ground. We staid over night at Bro Miller's one of our neighbors at the Cottonwood Mills, who had moved to this place. From Salt Creek we drove to Chicken Creek Station and stopped with Bro. Gullup. Sister Gullup had to tell David's Mother how sick he was, when we went out the other trip. She said that she did not think that he would get well. The following day we arrived at home all well.

In the spring I rented Bro. Pierson's land and sowed it to wheat,--12 acres I think.

The last of June I started for Union with my son Warren. We drove to Bro Gullup's. In the night our oxen went back home. The next day David sent them to us, and on the third day we started on. We took good care that they did not get away from us again for we chained them up nights after filling themselves with grass.

We went by the way of Goshen, and west side of Utah Lake, and west of the Jordon River, to Gardner's Mill, where we crossed to Union. We took this route to avoid the high waters of Provo River.

P. 178 I went for the purpose of getting some wheat due me, which I obtained after some difficulty. I stopped with Father Terry. He and Mother Terry seems like my own folks. While here I sold my house and lots, to Wm Kelley for \$300.00 to be paid first of Nov. next. I had previously sold my land and orchard up the creek, for a yoke of cattle and \$75.00. The oxen I got last fall, and I got the balance now, by discounting about \$25.00.  
1864

We returned home by the same route that we came, with flour to do us until harvest.

During the spring, and summer, the old settlers, nearby all, built on their lots in the new town. There was still quite a division among the people. Jesse Martin had been sent there to preside in place of Bro. Pierson, resigned.

By request of the people, I got up a petition, in the spring for a Post Office with my name for Postmaster. This was granted and in due course of time my Commission arrived.

We also organized a Mass Quorum of Seventies, of which I was appointed President, and David Ross Secretary.

I raised an excellent crop of wheat, my share amounting to 100 bushels.

In the last of Aug. President Young, with several of the Twelve, and quite a company, went south on their anuel visit. James A. Ivie and myself, and another person were appointed to make arrangements to entertain them; as they would be obliged to stay over night. President Young, and his immediate attendants, with some of his family stopped with J. A. Ivie. Five of the Twelve Apostles stopped with me, namely George A. Smith, Amasa Lyman, John Taylor, and wife, Wilford Woodruff and wife, and Franklin D. Richards, also Henry Miller, who was traveling with G. A. Smith, and Gabriel Huntsman, who brought Amasa Lyman from Fillmore. There were some others also, that eat at my house. They all seemed to enjoy themselves well.

Robert T. Burton was Marshall of the company. They were in the habit of keeping a guard out every night. Being pretty well acquainted with Bro. Burton, he asked me if I would see to the guard that night,--said he had been broken of his rest a

great deal, and if I would take charge of the guard he could lay down, and rest, and feel all right. I told him I would do so. I soon found enough men, that I could rely on to guard, I was out all night, looking after matters, for I would have felt very bad had anything happened through my neglect, after having been entrusted to my care. The object of guarding in a town, was principally to see that nothing befell their animals through the night. All were well in the morning, and they started out for Fillmore.

On their return, the latter part of Sept. They stopped over night again, and held a meeting. John Taylor, and wife; and F. D. Richards, drove to my house, and staid all night again. James Ivie concluded to accompany the President's Company on their way home, as they intended to go by the way of Sanpete Co. As I was intending to go to Salt Lake City soon; I accepted the invitation to go with James. Father Ivie, and Mother Ivie, also went along. We went to Gunnison the first day. Here they held a meeting.

**P. 179** The next day they went to Manti, and held meeting in the afternoon. Some of the Twelve went on to Ephraim, and held  
**1864** meetings. The next day they drove to Mt Pleasant and the following day held meetings, after which they drove to Fairview, and staid over night. I stopped with my Niece, Irene Clement, wife of John Sanders.

We all started very early next morning, in order to drive to Springville by the way of Thistle Valley. We arrived there before night and James Ivie drove on to Provo. I staid over night with Jacob Young. The rest of them went to some of their friends, and concluded to stop a few days. But I was anxious to go on to Union. While at the breakfast table; I saw Thomas Clement (my Nephew) and wife drive by. I jumped up and hailed them and told them I wanted a passage to Union. So I finished my breakfast, and got aboard. He had been on a visit to see his sister Irene in Fairview, and was returning to his home at Plain City, Weber Co.

We arrived in Union just at night, and stopped. I found the old friends all well. I had made arrangements for David, and his Mother to start for Union, in a few days, after I left home, with an ox team, so I went over to John Tanner's to stop with my Niece Augusta, until they would arrive.

After they arrived I made arrangements to get my pay of Wm Kelley for my place, by taking wheat to mill and getting it floured, and then taking the flour to Salt Lake City, and selling it. I sold it very readily for greenbacks, which was worth about 50 cents on the dollar, but being legal tender, I was obliged to take them at their face value.

My wife went to the City with me. We soon traded out our money as every thing was very high, (it being war time) for instance I paid \$150.00 for a No. 6 New Era Stove, and everything else was in proportion. This stove I bought for Maria my second wife.

After visiting a few days with my Sister Almira, and our old neighbors, we set out for home, where we arrived all well.

When I was in Mt Pleasant, Sanpete Co. James K. McClenahan wanted to engage me to run his gristmill at that place the following winter. He owned but one half of it, and run it one half of the time. His two partners, run it the other half. He was building a house and when I was not working at the mill I could work on the house. I did not see any chance to make any thing in Round Valley, so I concluded to take McClenhan at his offer.

On the 13th of Nov. I let Thomas Robbins have my sheep for one year on shares. Warren H. Ferguson moved to Round Valley this fall. The last of Nov. I took Maria and children, to Mt Pleasant and went to work for McClenahan, and let Warren Ferguson live in Maria's house. I was to get 1/3 of the tole when I ground and 1-1/2 bus wheat per day when I worked on the house.

We moved into Bro McClenahan=s old house which was quite comfortable. Everything went very well until about Feb.17th 1865, when a messenger came from Round Valley bringing the sad news of the **death of my beloved son Jacob Alfred**, and that all my family were down with the measles. My son **died Feb 16th 1865**.

**P. 180** My wife Artemisia was also sick with the measles, and wanted me to come home immediately. I got a horse of Bro McClenahan and started just before dark. There was considerable snow on the ground, but the road was pretty well broke. I rode alone all night, passing through Fountain Green, and about midnight I passed through Nephi, arriving at Bro. Gullup's just after daylight where I stopped to rest. I had rode about 40 miles without stopping, and was very much fatigued. I laid down on a bed and slept about an hour, and after getting breakfast started on again, and when within about four miles of home, there came up a furious snow storm, right in my face. I got home about 3 o'clock P.M. very cold. I found my wife and children getting better, but my dear little "Jakie" was not there to greet me,--how lonely it seemed not

to hear his little prattling voice. He was a dear little child, and was always happy with his Pa.

I staid at home two weeks, and saw my wife and children all about again, and then started for Mt Pleasant by the way of Gunnison. I traveled as far as Manti and stopped over night with Sanford Forbush, with whom I was acquainted. The next day I rode to McClenahans and found all well.

There was a **call made** this winter **for volunteers** to go and **settle the Muddy Valley** near the mouth of the Rio **Virgin River**. I had found that the Round Valley was a frosty place, and very little prospect for raising fruit, or any thing but small grain and potatoes, I felt desirous to go to a warmer climate, so I thought that I would try the Muddy, having heard good reports of the place.

There were five or six families, who volunteered in Mt Pleasant, and I concluded to go with them. The forepart of **April 1865** I wrote to my son David to come after me with two yoke of oxen and wagon so as to take what flour I had and family at one load to Round Valley!

During the winter a man by the name of Dallen came from Nephi to Mt Pleasant soliciting orders to purchase goods for the people in Chicago Ill. the coming season. He had done so the year before and gave entire satisfaction. He proposed to take wheat now in payment for goods and give his note to be paid in the articles that the people sent for. He succeeded in getting a great amount of bills for wagons, and good of various kinds. As every body considered him trustworthy I concluded to send for a Schutter wagon, a plow, and some other things, and paid him wheat to the amount of about \$175.00 and his note.

**P. 181** Soon after I sent for David, the **Indians commenced their raids**, and I felt very much worried on his account as I had  
**1865** heard that there were some in Salt Creek Canyon. He arrived in a few days all right, not having seen any Indians. He had not heard of the Indian trouble when he left home. They had killed two men below Manti and run off some stock.

I settled up with J. McClenahan, and after paying for provision, wood, etc. I found that I had about 1500 lbs of flour and Dallen's note for wagon, plow etc. I had also purchased some things at Jennings Store and paid in wheat. The company got ready to start for the Muddy in a few days after David came, and I started with them by the way of Manti and Gunnison. We traveled to gather until we got to within a day's drive of home, when we left them and got home all right.

We now began to prepare for our Journey to the Muddy. Before I left Mt Pleasant, John Ivie, (my wife Maria's brother) made up his mind to go with me as far as St George, and take a load of flour, and trade for molasses to take back to Sanpete. He arrived in Round Valley the last of Apr. Having all things in readiness, we started the **first day of May 1865**.

My son David and I took a few hundred lbs of flour. We had two yoke of oxen to our wagon. John Ivie had three. We got started at 10 o'clock A.M. and traveled 12 miles.

**2nd** When we arrived at Fillmore I exchanged some wheat for flour, 700 lbs. We then drove one and an half miles south of town and camped.

**3rd** We had to take a road running along the foot of the mountain to avoid some bad mudholes and had several mountain streams to cross, as the snow on the mountains is melting fast, being south winds. Near Corn Creek, we had a very bad mudhole, but made out to get through. Went five miles south of Corn Creek settlement and camped, traveled 18-1/2 miles.

**4th** It is a long uphill grade through Baker's Canyon to Dog Valley. We drove past Cove Creek To Pine Creek and camped. Traveled 20 miles.

**5th** We had a pretty steep hill to pull up in going out of this Valley to the head of Wild Cat Canyon. It froze where we were last night, and there were plenty of snowdrifts in Wild Cat Canyon. The wind blowed quite cool from the north today. Camped at the lower end of the Canyon. There were some other wagons with us. Traveled 12 miles.

**6th** Passed through Beaver. This place is nicely located on Beaver Creek, but is a cold place, having a high altitude. It froze last night where we camped. We drove to near the summit south of Beaver and camped. The company that came from Mt Pleasant is with us. Traveled 18 miles.

**7th Sunday.** Traveled 14 miles and camped two miles south of Buckhorn spring.

**8th** Passed through Parowan about noon. The City lots are quite small and the houses are very close together. Apple trees are in full bloom. We camped about 1-1/2 miles south of Summit. Grass is very short. This is very high cold country.

**P. 182**  
**1865** I would have no desire to locate here.

**9th** Passed through Cedar City. It looks like a poor country about here. We traveled 16 miles, and camped near **Hamilton's Fort** six miles south of Cedar. Bro. Hamilton crossed the plains in my Company. I called to see him. I had not seen him before since he came to the valley.

**10th** The weather is very cool,--wind from the north. We came to **Kanarrah** about noon. I stopped at Bro. **Wm Willis'** and took dinner. He formerly lived in Union. This place is on the top of the Rim of the Basin. From here the water flows south to the Rio Virgin River. Camped opposite Old Harmony Fort.

**11th** The wind blowed very hard all night from the north. We drove to Ash Creek, where I found Sister Kelsey, (wife of Easton Kelsey) with her family keeping a sheep herd. I stopped and took dinner with her. Somewhere about Meadow Creek in Millard Co. Thomas Forsythe who was returning from Salt Lake City, got into our company with a heavy loaded wagon, and having some flour at Corn Creek, that he wanted to take with him, he came to me, to see if I would haul it for him. Having a light load for my team, I agreed to take it. He lives at Toquerville. He having went on home, sent his team to meet us at Ash Creek as we would not go through Toquerville. I went home with his son to get my pay for hauling the flour, where we arrived a little before noon.

This place is situated at the base of a high mountain near the mouth of Ash Creek. Fruit trees and grapevines looked very flourishing, although the peach blossoms had been killed by the late frosts. I took dinner with Forsythe and returned to the forks of the road 3 miles from Toquerville, where I arrived just as our teams were driving up. We camped here, and found several more wagons bound for the Muddy.

**12th** We learned by experience today that we had got into a warm country. Some parts of our road was very sandy, which with the heat made it hard for our oxen. We camped two miles west of Harrisburgh.

**13th** We arrived at Washington about noon; I stopped at Moses M. Sanders and took dinner. He was not at home. His wife, Mary Jane; wanted to trade some molasses for flour, I let her have 100 lbs for 5 gal of Molasses. I also traded 100 lbs flour for 22 lbs cotton in Washington to be paid when I returned, I done this to accommodate the family who seemed very much in need of flour. It was very scarce here.

**14th** We arrived in St George last night. I found many old neighbors and friends here. Among them John G. Smith, with whom I was acquainted in Ill. and at Kanessville. He came to me and said that he had not a dust of flour in his house, and nothing to buy with; but if I would let him have a hundred lbs. He would try to pay sometime. I told him he could have it if he never paid for it. I found that it was very hard times here for bread stuff. I disposed of what flour I had to spare for molasses, which I was to get when I returned home. John Ivie disposed of his load, and started for home very much disgusted with the country.

**P. 183**  
**1865**

I drove to my Nephew's Darius Clement, who lived 1-1/2 miles north west of St George, and found them all well, and glad to see me.

Today is **Sunday**, and **two weeks since we left home**. We went to **St George** to meeting. I saw a great many old acquaintances, in fact, it seemed as though I knew all the folks, and for the time being, was transferred to Salt Lake. Having an invitation, I spoke a short time.

We found quite a large company here going to the Muddy, who had come from various places in the north, and had all arrived at this place about the same time. President E. Snow counseled the Company to take the old California road to the crossing of the Muddy, and if there was a place suitable, to locate above the road, but to consult Capt. T. Smith who had been appointed to preside over that country. Capt Thomas Smith was from Farmington Davis Co. and was called last fall to take a company and locate a settlement as near Call's Landing as the country would admit of. He accordingly went down to the Muddy arriving there Feb. 8th 1865, and the mouth of the Muddy being the nearest place available for a settlement, he stopped there, they named the place St Thomas.

We started on our journey about the 16th and drove up to where the road leaves the Santa Clara Creek, where we came up with our company that we had traveled with, namely, Alma H. Bennett and Bro. Rodolphus, George Tucker, David Holdaway. These all had their families with them, and were all from Mt Pleasant. The next day we drove to Camp Springs, about two miles from the Clara Creek, and stopped until 4 o' cock P.M. It is 25 miles from this place to the Beaver Dam

Creek, and no water until we get there.

The weather was very hot and we was obliged to travel the road in the night. After traveling until about midnight we stopped our teams in the road and without unhitching them rested about two hours. It was nine o'clock A.M. when we got to Beaver Dam Creek. Our teams were terribly jaded. Here we overtook all the wagons which had left St. George before we did. I think that there were about 20 families of them. We stopped at this place until the next morning and then started out ahead of all the others, and after driving a few miles we came to the Rio Virgin. Here was plenty of grass and water.

From this place we drove to the Mesquite Flat. The weather was very hot, making it bad traveling for oxen. The next day we drove to the lower end of Mesquite Flat, the road being very sandy. At this place **Wesley Willis** from Beaver overtook us, on horseback, and stayed with us all night. **He said** that he had been **appointed to take charge of the new settlement we were about locate**, and told me some of his plans. He was going down to **St. Thomas** to get President Smith to meet where the California road crosses the Muddy.

**P. 184  
1865**

He left us in the morning and we pursued our Journey to where the road leaves the Virgin to go over to the Muddy. The road to St. Thomas follows the river to the mouth of the Muddy. We had got in company with three more wagons in coming down the river.

The following day we succeeded in getting our wagons up the Virgin Hill. This is the awfulist hill that I ever saw any attempt to draw a wagon up. But we got up all right, and turned our teams back to the river for feed and water. Here we came across some of the Muddy Indians, (Pah Utes) who herded our stock and drove them up in the morning, with some of our assistance. The wind blew most furiously from the south the day we ascended the hill. We set out as early as possible there being no water until we reached Muddy Creek,--the distance about 22 miles. There was not much wind today, and the weather being hot made it very trying to the ox teams. We reached the Muddy a little before sundown, five wagons of us. The next day some of us went up to the head of the Muddy about five or six miles distant to look at the country.

We found that the Indians had considerable wheat in patches, which looked extremely well and was nearly ripe. The creek is made from a large number of warm springs which issues from the bluffs, clear as crystal.

The first one I came to, I said to Levi Calaway (an old Union neighbor) who was with me, "Now we will have a good drink of water once more" I got down to drink and took a draft into my mouth, but soon cast it out again as it was warm as dishwater. I now discovered what made the creek so warm at our camp. This spring boiled up amongst the roots of some small ash trees, and looked like clear cold water.

We found that the Indians occupied a great deal of the land, and they were quite numerous and I made up my mind that it was hardly safe to settle there, so far from St. Thomas, it being about 25 or 30 miles. I was about to give out before I reached camp.

A great many of the wagons got in at night, some teams had given out, and others had to be sent back for them. The Indians were kept going back, and forth with water kegs, for those who were behind.

On the **26th day of May**, **President Smith** and **Andrew S. Gibbons**, with **W. Willis** arrived from St. Thomas. I had seen Bro Smith at the Cottonwood Mill, but had no acquaintance with him. The next day he wanted some of us to accompany him and bro Gibbons to the head of the Muddy to look at the country. He invited me to ride in his wagon. We camped near the head, and the next day made a thorough exploration. We found some excellent land, but they came to the same conclusion that I had before, that the settlements would be far apart for safety against the Indians. Subsequent events proved the wisdom of this decision.

**P. 185  
1865**

We returned to camp towards night, and found many more wagons added since we left. I found James Jones there sick. He was bishop of Fairview, but had been released, so he came to the Muddy. He was my neighbor at Kanessville. The others were all strangers to me except Levi Calaway and Westley Willis, and those I had got acquainted with on the road.

**May 28th Sunday.** As there were some wagons which had not yet arrived, it was thought best to await until the cool of the evening before we had our meeting. About four o'clock the people assembled, **Thomas Smith** presiding. It was quite a large assemblage, as the most of the brethren had brought their families. President Smith said that it was thought best by himself and the brethren who had accompanied him to locate the settlement nearer St. Thomas for safety as we found a quite a large number of Indians living about here. He said that there was a place about 12 miles below that he thought

would be suitable for a settlement. If we located there the two settlements would be only 9 miles apart and in case of difficulty with the Indians could assist each other much better than we could 25 miles apart, and he considered the location fully as desirable as the Upper Muddy.

He said that it would be necessary to appoint someone to preside over us and take charge of directing our affairs in locating the people. He then **nominated me to preside** over the settlement we were about to make. It was voted unanimously. I was very much surprised at this movement as I had supposed that W. Willis had been sent down for that purpose. He told me when he camped with us on the Virgin river that he was going down for that purpose, and he proposed to call the new settlement **Williston**. On making enquiry next day of Bro. Smith, I found that Willis had not been appointed for any such purpose. He had not produced any papers to show any such authority, in fact he had no papers for authority of any kind, but he was merely a volunteer like the rest of us. It was agreed at our meeting that we move down to the location indicated by Pres. & Smith and accordingly on the 29 a few wagons started down. I went down with Bro's Smith and Gibbons.

Below the crossing of the California road the creek runs through a Canyon called the narrows. It is about six miles thorough this kanion. On emerging the creek forms a large swamp about three miles long and will average one and a quarter wide. Our location is about one mile below the swamp on rising ground east of the creek.

**30th** I looked around some today and found that there was considerable land suitable for farming, and some fine grass for hay. My son David arrived tonight with my wagon in company with L. Calaway.

**P. 186**  
**1865** **31st** We are waiting for the rest of our company to arrive. Some Brethren who had been waiting at St. Thomas for the locating of the new settlement came up today to look at the place. They said that they would move tomorrow and said they liked the place very well.

**June 1st** I hauled some willows to make a shade. Fine cool breeze.

**2nd** The wagons from the California road arrived, and also those from St. Thomas. I have a very sore eye and have to stay in the wagon. We held a meeting at night and appointed Bro. Murry to level a water ditch to bring the water out on our townsite, and Alma H. Bennett to superintend the digging of it. Jesse J. Fuller was elected our surveyor, and a company appointed to assist him to survey our town site, namely, Levi H. Calaway, George Tucker, myself and son David. As they had had some surveying done at St. Thomas it was thought best to connect our survey with their lines.

**3rd** We started for St. Thomas about nine o'clock and arrived there about noon, and had an interview with President Smith, with regard to the size of our city lots etc. We finally decided to survey the town into one acre lots. We found the variation of the compass to be 16 degrees, by the St. Thomas survey. After taking dinner with Bro. Rhodes, (who had moved from Rhodes Valley) we went up to the north line of St. Thomas survey, and ran about two miles of line, and camped for the night. It was quite cool.

**4th** We got up very early and found a fire very comfortable. We continued our surveying and found the valley to run about due Northwest, so consequently had a great many angles to run. Bro Calaway and myself carted the chain to within about two miles of our camp, when G. Tucker took my place, and I drove the team to camp, where we arrived about three o'clock P.M. Distance from St. Thomas survey on nearly a straight line about 9 miles.

I called a meeting tonight for business purposes. There were between 30 and 40 men,--heads of families. We made some arrangements about labor, fixing the price per day, for surveying, and digging the water ditch etc. which I think was \$2.50. We named the town St. Joseph.

**7th** We finished surveying farm land into 2-1/2, and 5 acre lots. Some more families arrived today. We are getting to outnumber St. Thomas by a great many.

**9th** While we were surveying in the forenoon, word was brought to me that a man was killed in camp. We hastened to the scene of the murder, where we found the corpse of a man who had been stabbed in the heart and had died instantly. Upon enquiry, we learned that the murdered man was a person that did not belong to the Church, and had come there with Alexander Ogilvie. After the men had all gone out to work, Oglivie had a quarrel with him and finally stabbed him with a butcher knife. The men soon gathered in from work and three men were appointed to hold an inquest.

**P. 187**  
**1865** I immediately sent a letter to President Smith informing him of the sad event and desired him to come up and take charge of the case. The three men appointed brought in a verdict that deceased came to his death by a stab of a butcher knife in

the hand of Alx. Ogelvie. Ogelvie was immediately arrested and it being very hot the man was buried as soon as possible. Ogelvie did not deny stabbing him, and appeared to be very sorry.

**10th** Pres. Smith came up, and the people chose him to act as Justice of the Peace in this case, as there were no civil organization in this country. He accepted the position and a jury was called. I was chosen clerk. After examining the witnesses they found that the testimony was very plain, and soon brought in a verdict of guilty. The question then arose, what shall we do with him. We could not send him to any settlement in Arizona, the nearest one being Mohave, and a terrible road to travel, and besides that there were none that would go. It was finally thought best to send him to St. George and they could do what they pleased with him. Three men volunteered to go with him. Ogelvie had not a very good reputation. He soon made his escape from St George, and no one bothered themselves about him any more. He came to the Muddy with good teams and considerable stock. His wife soon returned to Warm Creek, near Gunnison on the Sevier river from which place they came. We were very glad to get rid of such characters.

**11th Sunday. Bros. Smith and Gibbons preached** to us. They had a **letter from President E. Snow**, (who presided over all this southern country) which was read. It was full of counsel on many points to the people settling here. I spoke a short time and gave my testimony to the wisdom of the counsel given by the brethren. At two o'clock we met again and completed our organization as a branch of the Church. Jesse J. Fuller was chosen Clerk and Philip K. Smith, David Holdaway, and H. P. Olson were appointed teachers. Several of the brethren spoke and all seemed to feel well, a good spirit prevailed.

**12th** We **drew numbers for our city lots**. Towards night, P. K. Smith and myself went to see **Tashob**, the principal **Indian Chief** who was very sick. He asked us to administer to him, which we did. He was around again in a few days. The weather is very hot. The Indians have harvested their wheat sometime ago. The grains are the largest that I ever saw. They plant wheat in hills.

**13th** David and I planted a little corn. Did not feel very well.

The St. Thomas settlement were building a dam in the creek about five miles below our camp. They have dug a large canal to carry the water around the lower swamp which has been a very heavy job for them. They wanted some assistance to put in their dam. Twenty of our men went down to help them.

**14th** I assisted to locate some water ditches along the streets to bring the water on the lots, so that gardens could be planted, Some wanted to plant sugar cane etc.

**P. 188** **15th** David and I plowed about an acre of ground and planted it with corn. It was a very pleasant day,--a cool breeze  
**1865** from the north.

**16th** We watered the corn to bring it up. It was very pleasant day again.

**17th** I went down to the dam to see President Smith, about my returning home, and to see how they were getting along with the work. I found it a big job. The banks were high, and on the north a small bottom across which the dam had to be built in order to raise the water so as to run in to their canal. This was dug as low as it could be so as to get the water around the swamp. Bro Smith thought that we were organized in good working order at Saint Joseph, and I might return if I chose. I recommended Alma H. Bennett to take charge during my absence, with which he concided.

**18th Sunday.** We held public meeting in the forenoon, and the sacrament was administered. Several of the brethren spoke,--a good spirit prevailed. In the afternoon we had a business meeting, as I intended to start home next day. We organized a company of 36 men to finish the dam for St. Thomas, and arranged various other business matters preparatory to my leaving. There were some two or three wagons going to return with me.

**19th** We could not find one of my oxen. David and I hunted all day. The company going with me started out in the morning. Very hot day.

**20th** I got up as soon as it was light to hunt for my ox and went Straight to him. We got started about six o'clock A.M. and drove down to St. Thomas and took dinner with Father Rhoades. After having some talk with Bros. Smith and Gibbons we drove down to the Virgin river and it being so excessively hot we stopped until towards night. We then traveled on until we met with David Sessions, and company who took Ogelvie to St George and were just returning. We traveled about 18 miles. Sessions had our mail from St George. I obtained two letters from home; informing me that all were well.

**21st** We started soon after daylight and drove to the old California road at the Virgin Hill, and stopped to get our breakfast, which consisted of water pancakes, and molasses and tea. This had been our diet for sometime. We overtook our company about two o'clock. The hot winds blew very strongly up the virgin, which made our oxen pant very much, but we had plenty of water, as we were traveling along the river. We made about 22 miles today.

**22nd** We started at daylight, and drove five miles and stopped for breakfast. The forenoon was cloudy which made it pleasant traveling over the Mesquite flats which are very sandy. This morning David and I both had a diarrhea caused by drinking too much of the Rio Virgin yesterday. We made some strong tea for dinner which helped us very much. We camped at the last crossing of the Virgin where the road leaves the river to go over the hills to the Beaver Dam.

**P. 189**  
**1865** **23rd** We followed up the river to the mouth of Beaver Dam creek and camped a mile below the settlement until 4 o'clock P.M. There are several families living here presided over by Henry W. Miller of Farmington Davis Co. Utah. There is but very little farming land, and it never can be much of a settlement; and is liable to be washed away. At four o'clock we started over the dry country between this place and the Santa Clara, and drove all night.

On the morning of the **24** we stopped on the summit to rest our team and get breakfast. We got to the creek about ten o'clock A.M. where we stopped until four P.M. our oxen being very tired. We then drove down to an Indian farm and camped for the night, 5 miles from Clara Settlement.

**25th Sunday.** We drove to Darius Clements,--distance about 9 miles where we stopped until three o'clock, and then drove to St George, and staid over night with Joseph Hammond. I went to see President Snow and reported our labors on the Muddy, and had a very pleasant chat until near midnight.

**26th** We started very early and drove to Harrisburgh and nooned, and then drove on to Father Egbert's (now Leeds) and camped. Here is a good spring,.

**27th** We crossed over the Black Ridge and stopped over night with Sister Kelsey.

**28th** Drove to **Kanarrah** and took dinner with Bro **Wm Willis**, and then drove to Hamilton's Fort, and camped. I took supper with Bro. Hamilton. It was quite a cool day with north wind, making a wonderful contrast with the hot winds on the Virgin river.

**29th** Traveled to within five miles of Parowan, and stopped at a Bro. Allen 's. Cool day again.

**30th** Drove to Buckhorn Spring. This spring is good cold water. Here is a plenty of grass; and there is one house.

**July 1st** We traveled 20 miles to Beaver and camped. Not much grass.

**2nd** Went to Indian Creek and nooned on good grass, and then drove to Cove Creek.

**3rd** There is no water between this creek and Corn Creek about 20 miles. We got to Corn Creek about 6 o'clock P.M. Our cattle were very tired.

**4th** We got to Fillmore about noon, and took dinner with Bro James Huntsman. In the afternoon it rained, but we thought we would drive to Cedar Spring and camp. It was nearly dark when we arrived there and not finding any feed for our cattle we drove on a few miles, it having stopped raining, and thought some of stopping for the night, but after resting awhile David and I concluded to drive on home as it was only about six miles, where we arrived about two o'clock in the morning.

We found all well and glad to see us. We were also very glad to get where we could have some rest, and I think our oxen were as glad as we were.

We were kept busy next day answering questions about the country etc. We had enjoyed very good health during our absence, and I had enjoyed my journey and labors at the Muddy, and I believed that the majority of the people down there were a good people. This is the end of my journal Which I kept during the whole journey.

## CHAPTER 13

**P. 190** On the **first day of August 1865** my last daughter was born of **my Wife Artemisia S.** We named her  
**1865 Clarissa.**

The latter part of this month I received a line from the miller at Fillmore, wishing me to go and fix his millstones, as they were out of order. I went out and found them in a very bad fix. The miller did not profess to understand dressing stones, and knew but very little about milling. I worked four or five days, and got the mill in pretty good trim, and showed him all I could which he appreciated very much.

When I returned home I found my dear little **son Sidney Wallace** sick with a diarrhea. We could not get any thing to stop it. He continued to pine away, as he had no appetite to eat, until the **eighth day of Sept** when **his spirit left his little body**. He was a **son of my second wife**, and always wanted to be with his Pa. Two of my dear little prating sons was taken from me, within nine months. O may they be restored to me in the resurrection.

The latter part of September, my son David and I went to Salt Lake City. I called at Springville to see Dallen who had returned from the east, but his wagons had not yet got in. As he was going to Salt Lake City soon he agreed to see me there and if the wagons were not in by that time he would try and get one for me.

I took some wheat from Round Valley to sell. I got it floured at the Cottonwood Mill, where I found Jimy Waker still running the mill. The flour I sold at C. Bassit's store for goods. I found Dallen but it was a mere chance that I got a wagon of him. He made all manner of excuses,--said that he could not make any arrangements to get any. I told him that I must have one, as I was depending on one to move to the Muddy, and could not come again for it.

While we were talking a man stepped up and said that he had a new Schutler 3-1/2 wagon he would let him have for me, if they could agree on the terms. They soon made their contract, and I hitched on to the wagon and started for Cottonwood. The hand of the Lord was very visible to me in this transaction, for if I had not got this wagon then as I did, I would never have got any thing from him, for his train of wagons got caught in the snow and did not come in until spring. This broke him up. I never got my plow, and other articles. And besides if I had not got the wagon it would have crippled me terribly about moving to the Muddy.

We went out and stopped the night with my **sister Almira**. She regretted very much that I was going so far away where we could not see each other often, but little did I think that this would be our last meeting in this probation. We bade her farewell in the morning and went to Union and stopped until the next morning, when we gave the parting hand to our old neighbors and started for home, where we arrived all well.

**P. 191**  
**1865**

I now set about preparing for our journey to the Muddy. I sold my two lots in town to Father Ivie for two yoke of oxen and wagon, and gave him a two year old heifer to boot.

I will now go **back a little** and write some things pertaining to the Muddy settlements. Several persons passed Round Valley returning from the Muddy. In **August** I received the following **letter from Jesse J. Fuller**, dated St Joseph **Aug 6th/65**.

"President Warren Foote, Dear Bro. I received your communications from Virgin river, Beaver Dam, and St. George. I was glad to hear that you were making such good time, and hope you have arrived home all safe and well, and found your family well also. I have not been able to write to you before owing to press of labor. I have surveyed the five acre lots as was first intended. There not being a block each we were forced to divide the blocks in the center. You will see by the plot on the opposite side of this sheet how the work was executed. We put the numbers into a hat and each man drew. (On the plot mentioned above, each person's name was written on the lot he drew).

St. Thomas dam has broken twice. The first time we had to turn out enmasse, and repair it. We have taken out another water ditch for the city, about one half mile below the first ditch, which conveys the water through the center of the city. President Thomas Smith has granted us all the land across from Simonds Mill Site, including the whole of the Island. The brethren have planted about 45 acres of corn there, and some will continue to plant until the 15th inst. The corn land over the second creek, was thrown up.

The Indians have killed some of our youngest cattle amounting to four or five head. They lay it to the Upper Muddy Indians. They are all however very friendly. We have made a corral for our stock, and we guard them very strictly days.

P. K. Smith has gone with a party of 6 or 7 of the brethren, and an Indian guide to explore for timber, North West. They are looked for tonight. Your corn is tasseling out and is by far the best corn in the place, although there will be considerable corn raised on some of the lots. Every thing looks as promising as could be expected. With my best wishes for your welfare I remain your sincere friend, J. J. Fuller.

P. S. Aug. 7th Bro. Smith and party returned today,-was absent 5-1/2 days. They report an immense body of the best timber they ever saw 60 miles to the north west. For 35 miles there is no water for teams at this season of the year. They obtained water for themselves and animals by digging at the timber. The road is a gradual ascent to the timber and can be made by ten men in three or four days. The Indians say, there is plenty of water at different places along the road nine months in the year. J.J. Fuller@

**P. 192**

**1865**

The following are the names of the persons who drew farm lots. J. Crick, L. Rollins, Philip K. Smith, James Farmer, Thomas Day, Thomas Riley, David Holdaway, H. P. Olsen, T Smith, Seth Heap, R. Hunter, John Denton, James Anderton, O. Clark, James Ferguson, Geo. Wilson, John Murray Jr., Swain M. Anderson, John Hyott, Geo Palmer, N. Smith, Christian Jensen Jr., Elijah Billingsly, Moroni Billingsly, Roldolphus Bennett, John Moyes, Christian Jensen Sen., Westly Willis Jr., C. Wilkinson, David Sessions, Benne Benson, Geo. Tucker, David Foote, Warren Foote, J. Sessions, Simeon Drolinger, Westley Willis Sen., Wm. Ferguson, C. Sessions, Jrif. Cherry, John White, Cyrus Hancock, J. Hunter, W. Paul, Elijah Elmer, Richard Helmsley, Jesse J. Fuller, Levi H. Calaway, J. Wilkinson, P. Holsten, Alma H. Bennett, John Murray Sen.--52 persons.

Jesse J. Fuller came north with his wife, after supplies in September and returned again. His wife is a daughter of Wm. Wall, who was Captain of the second fifty in my Company in crossing the Plains. He has been dead some years. Bro. Fuller is a Nephew of Judge Elias Smith of Salt Lake City. In October Alma H. Bennett came up for supplies. I agreed to be ready to return to the Muddy with him if possible. After I returned from Salt Lake City I got every thing in readiness as fast as possible. Henry Wilson, (a son of Hardy Wilson my old neighbor and fellow laborer at Union, and now living in St. George) came with me from Union, to drive a team for me to the Muddy. I had sold my sheep to Tho. Robbins for a yoke of oxen, and was now able to fit out three wagons, two of them with two yoke of oxen each, and one with one yoke, it being a light wagon. I fixed the stove in one of the large wagons so as to make a fire in, when needed, for Artemisia S. and also one in the light wagon for Maria, which made them very comfortable.

About the first of November, Bro. Bennett came along. We had gathered up all our stock but one cow, which belonged to David. He spent two days more hunting for her, while we loaded our wagons, but did not find her. Franklin Ivie offered him a cow in place of her, which he accepted. All things now being in readiness we started out very early and drove up in the Kanion south of Round Valley and stopped for breakfast. Besides the five yoke of oxen we had eight cows and six head of young stock. We arrived at Fillmore the second day and stopped with Bro. James Huntsman I brought what wheat I had on hand to get floured at the mill. They ground it during the night. In the morning we loaded up and I found that I had about 3000 lbs. flour. Part of this was for the work I had done on the mill. The Miller paid me much more than I charged him, saying that I would need it before I could raise a crop on the Muddy, which was very true. He felt so thankful for the information I had given him in dressing the Millstones, and grinding, that it seemed as though he could not pay me enough.

**P. 193**

**1865**

We drove to Meadow Creek and camped. The next morning was quite frosty, but the stoves made our wagons very comfortable. The weather being very fine we continued our journey without any accident. When we arrived at Kanarrah, we stopped and took dinner with Bro Wm. Willis and got a few potatoes of him to eat on the road. Continuing our journey we arrived in St. George, where I collected the molasses due me for flour which I sold when I came down before. We then drove to Darius Clements and staid over night. We passed from the Clara Creek, to the Beaver Dam very pleasantly, the weather being cool and pleasant. We found the quicksand very bad in some of the crossings of the Virgin river. Bro. Bennett being very heavy loaded we had to assist him at many of the fords. When we got to the Virgin Hill we found several wagons going to St. Joseph, and were doubling teams up the hill. They were anxious for us to go with them that way, and we concluded that if we could haul Bro. Bennett's wagon up the hill we would go that way.

While we were making preparations to start up President Snow, and others from Saint George drove up and stopped to noon. They were going to visit the Muddy Settlements. The brethren doubled on to Bennett's wagon, and started up. We followed with two wagons. The hill is not so very steep part of the way. When they came to the steep part they could not pull Bennetts wagon. The cattle had become discouraged, after having pulled up so many wagons before, and would not pull. We were finally obliged to turn around and go down the hill and take the road by the way of St. Thomas. Could we have went over the hill it would have saved us two days travel. It was only ten miles from the top of the hill to St. Joseph,

while by St. Thomas it is thirty five miles.

We finally arrived in St. Joseph all safe, and found Bro. Snow waiting for us to get in. Simonds of Payson, Utah Co. was called last winter to go to the Muddy and build a grist mill. He immediately went down and located his millsite which is nine miles above St. Thomas and three below St. Joseph. A short time before we got there, he had arrived with the most of his mill gearing, and his Mill Wright Warren Tenny, and a few families. We found that he was using all his influence with Bro. Snow to get him to counsel the brethren of St. Joseph to break up that place and move down to his place.

**P. 194**  
**1865** The next day after I had arrived President Snow called a meeting in which he intimated very strongly that it was his wish that we would move down to Simonds place. I had had no chance to consult the brethren before meeting, but was very sure that they felt that they had done too much work at that place to now throw it all away. Consequently I did not say any thing about it. One of the brethren who was of Bro. Snow's company, sitting beside me, gave me a nudge and told me to make a motion to move. I told him no. I would not take upon me any such responsibility. I felt that if we were required to throw away our hard labor here, President Snow might shoulder the responsibility himself. I would have no hand in it. However, no one made any motion and the matter was dropped at that time, much to the chagrin of Simonds and company.

The next morning Bro Snow said to me that we had better move our camp up on the Public Square' and build for the present around that, in the shape of a Fort, and let Bro. Simonds take charge of the settlement at his place. They called their settlement Mill Point. After Bro. Snow and company had departed I began to look around, and converse with the brethren. I found that I had not mistaken their minds about moving to Mill Point. A few moved down there among whom was **Westley Willis**. He had never felt right since our organization at the crossing of the California Road. Philip Klinginsmith also moved down, for which we were very thankful, he being one of the principal factors in the Mountain Meadow Massacre.

When I left here to return to Round Valley, I supposed that the brethren would move camp on to higher ground but they did not, consequently there had been considerable sickness, such as chills and fever, and Bro. Geo. Palmer had died. Some had made considerable many adobes, and a few small houses had been built. Bro. Bennett had put up a small house on his lot, before he went north. I stopped my wagons near his house.

Bro. Wilkinson had become discouraged (His wife's mother had died and also one of his children) and wanted to go to St. George. He being a wagon maker, Bro. Snow counseled him to do so. I bought his adobes that he had made, and some other articles, for which David was to take a load for him to St. George.

We divided the spaces for building around our Public Square, and the brethren commenced building. I also commenced, - Bro. Jesse J. Fuller working with me for which I was to help him on his house. We built only temporary buildings, to do us until we could build on our City lots.

On the night of the 5th of Dec. I had a son born to me of **my wife Maria**. He was born in the wagon. We named him **John Ammon**.

I soon got my house so as to live in and put Artemisia and family in, and was not long building one for Maria, and soon got comfortably sheltered. In a short time our adobe cabins were strung around the Square.

We had good meetings, and all seemed to enjoy themselves. The weather seemed almost like Spring. At Christmas I noticed that the blades of Sugar cane left on the stubble was not yet killed. I grubbed the willows on my five acre lot, and plowed and sowed some wheat. It was very lonesome, not getting any mail only about once a month we knew but little what was going on, in the outside world, but when our papers came they were all read, no matter how old they were.

**P.195**  
**1866** The buds of the willows began to open in February and by the first of March the leaves were out. It did not seem that we had any winter at all.

By spring, Simonds had induced quite a number of families to stop at his Place. Some of our St. Joseph brethren owning land opposite their camp, was working there almost daily, and often came in contact with them. They kept insinuating to the St. Joseph people, that we would yet be broken up, and have to move down there. And finally there began to be considerable feelings between the two settlements. Simonds had returned to Payson, and left Tenney to preside in his place. He said some things with regard to St. Joseph not very complimentary, and we saw that he and Simonds, and a few others, were, using all their influence with Bro. Snow to break us up. The feelings became so intense, that President Smith

called a meeting at Mill Point, to see if matters could not be fixed up. He preached in the forenoon, and in the afternoon he wanted W. Tenney and me to see if we could settle the difficulty. Accordingly we met,--many of the brethren from both settlements being present. I made a statement of the complaints that had come to me, and said that some of our brethren could not go to their fields to work without being insulted and tantalized about being broken up as a settlement. Bro. Tenney tried to smooth it over, but there was too much testimony against them and it became very plain that they were operating against us. However we fixed it up as best we could, and agreed to try to live in peace. I am satisfied that jealousy and disappointed office seekers were the cause of all the trouble. Westley Willis and some of his Beaver friends had never felt right because he was not appointed to preside over St. Joseph. They had left St. Joseph and gone to Mill Point, and it seemed that they were determined to break up the former settlement.

Sometime in Feb. the Indians made a raid on our stock. There is quite a large tract of land opposite the town which is surrounded by water. As the water leaves the swamp it forms two streams, one on the east side of the bottoms, and the other on the west side. The banks along the west stream were perpendicular so that animals could not cross, and there were but very few places along the east stream that were fordable. These streams came together about a mile below, thus forming an Island. On this Island we turned our work animals, nights, and such days as we were not using them, supposing that they would be safe from the Pah Utes.

**P. 196  
1866**

One morning we went for our teams, and behold, they could not be found. On examining the west creek we found that the Indians had made a bridge of the willows growing along the banks over which they had driven our stock and taken them over the bluff, in the direction of the Timber Mountain. We immediately sent word to Mill Point, and St. Thomas informing them, and asking some aid to pursue the Indians. We soon learned that they had taken several head of stock from Mill Point also. We sent out a party in pursuit as soon as possible, who followed the trail some distance but not being supplied with water, and being unacquainted with the country they thought it best to give up the pursuit. As soon as possible after the first posse started out we organized another company better supplied with water and provision. They followed the trail to the Timber Mountain about 60 miles to the northwest. They found that they had passed over this mountain, and not knowing anything about the country beyond they gave up the chase. They found some dead animals along the trail which the Indians had killed, being those that had given out and could not go any further. They had got away with about 25 head, among which was an excellent yoke of my oxen. David had just started for St. George after Darius Clement and family, or probably they would have had all my oxen. They took two span of mules belonging to Simmeon Drolinger which was all the team he had. Our cows had been strictly guarded day and night, and yet the Indians had succeeded in making away with a few head that had wandered unobserved into some of the ravines and gullies that abounds northwest of us.

Once previous to this big steal the Indians had been followed by a party of about 15 or 20 of our men to their strong hold at the upper end of the Narrows. They came suddenly upon a party of the Indians who were drying the beef. They fled up the gulches and rocks. One Indian was mortally wounded. The old Indians laid this stealing to some young reckless bucks and agreed to see that they did not steal any more. When they made the big raid, they had prepared every thing beforehand. They had carried water and deposited it along their route so as to make a quick drive, and every Indian and squaw left the Muddy. Not one was to be seen from the head of the Muddy to St. Thomas. We determined that they should not return again until they were sufficiently humbled to behave themselves. We knew that they could not sustain themselves any length of time out of the Muddy Valley and supposed that they would be sneaking back when their beef was all gone.

In about 8 weeks after, an old Indian who was called Capt. Thomas with two or three others with him came polking along. We immediately took them in charge, and went to St. Thomas with them, and delivered them up to President Smith. Bro. Smith called a general meeting of the settlers to decide what should be done with regard to letting the Indians return, and what punishment they should receive. Accordingly a large number of the brethren from St. Joseph and Millpoint went down, as we were the ones most interested.

**P. 197  
1866**

Andrew S. Gibbons was our Indian Interpreter, having been sent to the Muddy with President Smith for this purpose. Old "Capt. Thomas" was called up to make his statement. He said that the Muddy Indians had been prevailed upon to assist in stealing the cattle by the Indians who live over the Timber Mountains, that he and "Capt. Rufus" and other leading Indians were opposed to the stealing, but being unable to prevent it, they fled for fear that the Mormons would kill them.

After they had got the cattle to the homes of this other tribe of Indians, they quarreled about the division of them. They took them all from the Muddy Indians, and left them to starve. He said that he and those with him had come to give themselves up, and we might do as we pleased with them, if we would only let the Indians come back to their homes. They were now in starving condition.

Bro. Smith talked to them, saying we had settled there to do them good, and were their friends, and told them of the many favors we had shown them, and they had now stolen many of our teams, which deprived us of plowing our land, and raising grain to feed our women and children, in consequence of which they might go very hungry &etc. When Bro. Smith's talk was interpreted to them, the tears ran down old "Captain Thomas" cheeks, and they seemed fully to sense the crime that they had committed, and to throw themselves upon our mercies.

President Smith requested the brethren to express their feeling on the subject. Some of us thought that they should be made to pay something to those who had lost stock, if it was nothing but labor, (which in fact was all they had to pay with) not for the profit their labor would be, but for a good wholesome chastisement for them. Some thought that they had been sufficiently chastised. It was finally decided to let them come back to their homes, and try them once more, and "Capt. Thomas" was set free.

In a few days there were Indians all about. We had taught them a good lesson. They never made another raid on our stock, but we could not break them of their little petty thefts. The squaws were the most notorious thieves. It seemed to be bred in their bones.

Every thing went on very quietly until we got our grain harvested, when Bro H. W. Miller and another brother arrived and informed us that Pres. Snow had gone down to St. Thomas and would hold meeting there next day and wished all who could do so to attend. I went down accompanied with several of the brethren. We learned that we were going to be required to all move to one settlement, in consequence of the trouble with the Indians in Sanpete Co. and on the Sevier river known as the "**Black Hawk war.**" It was difficult for us to understand how that war could affect us in this distant place, especially as the Utes and Pah Utes had no intercourse with each other. But never the less, we were willing to obey counsel. A conference was appointed to be held at St. Joseph for the purpose of deciding which settlement we should gather too.

**P. 198**  
**1866** The conference commenced according to appointment, President Snow presiding. He stated the object of the meeting, and said that all the weak settlements north of St. George were required to move together, so as to be strong enough to defend themselves against the Indians, and he thought that we should submit to the same orders, &etc. It was voted unanimously that we concentrate at some point.

The next thing was to decide which settlement to go too. Bro. Snow called on Bro. T. Smith to state the facilities of St. Thomas, and which place he thought would be best to select. He did so, and of course St. Thomas was his choice. He next called on me. I set forth the facilities of St. Joseph very clearly, but was willing to abide the decision of the people. Bro. Tenney of Mill Point was called upon. He set forth that place in glowing colors. The bench east of the creek would make an excellent site for a City, which would also be close to the grist mill &etc.

Some of the other brethren also gave their views, and each one was in favor of their own settlement. Bro. Snow said that we would drop St. Joseph and make choice of one of the other Places, and would hold a council at four o'clock to decide which. Accordingly at the time appointed, the most prominent of the brethren with some others, went a short distance into the sand hills southeast of town and counseled the matter over. Bro. Tenney, very enthusiastically set forth the claims of Mill Point.

Now the bench he spoke of was a fine location for a town but the difficulty was about getting the water to it. They proposed to take the water through our town ditch, and continue it on to the bench, and thence to Mill Point. This ditch would be about five miles in length from St Joseph, and three miles of it through drifting sand, consequently every wind storm would fill the ditch level.

After considerable talk, Bro. Snow asked my opinion with regard to getting the water to Mill Point. I answered that according to our experience in carrying the water through the sand at this place, I did not think it possible to make a ditch that would be depended on, for that distance through the sand, as the loss of water absorbed by the sand, and the evaporation would consume the most, if not all, before it reached town. And besides every windstorm (which were frequent) would fill the ditch with drifting sand. He then asked Bro. Billingsly what he thought about it. He answered about the same in substance that I did. Bro. Snow did not give his decision until the next morning.

After the brethren from St. George had got their teams all hitched up, and Bro. Snow had got into his carriage, he called the people together and said, that in consequence of the unbelief of bros. Foote and Billingsly, he thought it best for us to move to St. Thomas. We could see plainly, that his own feelings were for us to try Mill Point, but he did not like to  
**P. 199** assume all the responsibility in case of failure. In a few days after this President Smith received a letter from Pres. Snow,

**1866** advising the people of Mill Point to stay at that place and the people of St. Joseph to use their liberty in moving to that place or to St. Thomas. Bro. Smith called a meeting which was held in the mill, to ascertain the feelings of the people. The brethren at Mill Point felt pretty well, and some of them felt that they had accomplished their purpose in breaking up the settlement of St. Joseph. They had accomplished their designs, and were satisfied with one exception, that was, Alma H. Bennett was appointed to preside over that place by Pres. Snow. This was a sort of wet blanket to them although they tried to keep up a good appearance. But subsequently, the most of them left the mission. I stated at the meeting that I felt thankful for the liberty of choosing for ourselves which place to go too. My mind was fully made up where I would go. I did not wish to throw cold water on their expectations with regard to the big city they contemplated building on the bench, but I had no faith in it. They had no power over the sand to make it lay still. I did not believe that they could ever get the water there to do them any good.

After this meeting the brethren of St. Joseph began to make active preparations for moving. Bro. Bennett called a meeting to ascertain how many were going to Mill Point. Some of the brethren had partaken of the enthusiasm with regard to building a city on the bench, and Bro. Bennett naturally used all his influence to have all the People to go enmasse to that place. The people of St. Joseph outnumbered the people of Mill Point, and consequently would have a majority if they all went there. They finally concluded to all go there excepting Jesse Fuller, Simeon Drolinger and myself, and I think there were two other families whose names I have forgotten. Some of my intimate friends tried to persuade me to go there, one of whom was bro. James Farmer. I told him that they would never be able to get the water on that bench, to do them any good, and I felt that I had thrown away enough hard labor at St. Joseph, and I was going to St. Thomas, where there was some prospect of permanency.

The forepart of July, Jesse J. Fuller and I left our hard earned improvements and moved to St. Thomas, where we were kindly welcomed.

My son David was married about the first of April previous to Emma Bennett, sister of A. H. Bennett, and he concluded to go to Mill Point. I obtained an adobe house to move into and also a place to store my wheat that I raised that season. My son Warren's health was very poorly. The hot weather did not seem to agree with him very well.

**P. 200**

I will here give the names of the first settlers of St. Joseph,--those who came there while I was down there first, as recorded by our Clerk Jesse J. Fuller.

**A List of the names of the first Settlers of St. Joseph.**

Warren Foote, President	John C. White
Jesse Johnson Fuller Clk, with family	Levi Hamilton Calaway
David Foote	Cyrus Hancock
David Holdaway & family	Wilmer Poul
John Murray Sen. & family	Wm. Westley Willis Sen.
Thomas Riley & family	Alma Harrison Bennett & family
James Farmer & family	David Sessions
Swain Magnus Anderson & Mother	George Tucker
John Moyes & family	James Anderton
Andrew Jensen & family	William Ferguson
Christian Jensen	Carlos Lyon Sessions
Lewis Jensen	Robert Hunter
Thomas Day & family	Elijah Elmer
Jacob Ferguson & family	Norman Smith
Peter Holden	M. H. Bone
Charles Wilkinson & family	Ephraim Caffil
John Murray Jr. & family	Elijah Billingsly & family
Jeremiah Murray & family	Orrin Clark & family
John Hyatt & family	Jesse Baker
George Palmer & family	James N. Jones & family
Hans Peter Olsen & family	Wm Ferguson & families
Smith Heap & family	John Denton
Benny Benson	Wm. Westley Willis Jr.
Philip Klingingsmith & family	Griffith Cherry
N. P. Warden	James Hunter & family
W. Baker	James Session
Simmeon Cook Drollinger & family	James Crick & family

W. P. Wilson  
George Wilson  
Gilbert Summe & family

C. Peterson  
John Anderson  
Richard Hemsly & family

I find by the record that I married the following named persons.

David Foote and Emma Uphrasia Bennett April 1866

James Anderton and Dinah Palmer (widow of Geo. Palmer) May 9<sup>th</sup> 1866

Christian Jensen and Martha Heap May 1866

There are five deaths recorded. One is an infant of Charles Wilkinson and wife, one a daughter of Hans Peter Olsen & wife, died Oct. 18<sup>th</sup> 1865. George Palmer Oct. 23<sup>rd</sup> 1865 aged 45 years, member of the 7<sup>th</sup> Quorum of Seventies. Sarah Denton Nov. 1<sup>st</sup> 1865 aged 67 years and nine months. She was the mother of John Denton and Charles Wilkinson=s wife. The first settlement of St. Joseph came to an end in July 1866.

## CHAPTER 14

### P. 201

On the **eighth day of February 1865** Thomas S. Smith with ten brethren and three sisters arrived on the Muddy. T. L. Smith was appointed by Pres. Brigham Young to build up a settlement in the south, as near Callville as he could find a suitable location.

The Muddy Valley at its junction with the Virgin river was found to be the nearest available place to locate. They surveyed a townsite about three miles up the creek from the Rio Virgin river.

The latter part of February 1866, in accordance with Pres. Snow's counsel, another townsite was surveyed by J. J. Fuller of St. Joseph which was a much better location than the first one. There were now at the old town about 45 families. They built their houses above the townsite and at the southwest side and in two parallel lines about ten rods apart running north and south. The north end was kept open so as to add to the length if necessary. About the first of April they all moved into this fort.

The town was surveyed into 85 City lots, and adjoining, there was surveyed about the same number of two and an half acre lots for vineyards, and outside of these about the same number of five acre lots for farming purposes. They raised a very large crop of wheat this year, some of their land producing from 30 to 60 bushels per acre. They did not finish hauling their grain for some time after I moved down there.

President Smith had his second wife and family with him, and soon after I moved there, he went north, and left me in charge during his absence. I built a house adjoining Frederick Christensen's for my wife Maria. Bro. Smith returned early in the fall.

Before I moved down there, they had put up the adobe walls for a meeting and school house, and now wanted to roof it. A committee was appointed to assess a tax for this purpose. I was one of this committee. It was necessary to have some larger timbers to support the roof, than any we could get on the river. The nearest place to get it was about 25 miles southeast of St. Thomas. Jesse Fuller and I took the job of getting two loads for which we were paid in wheat. I also worked on the roof by which means I got wheat enough to do me until the next harvest.

### P. 202

Soon after I came to this place I was granted a town lot, and 2 1/2 acre lot, and two five acre lots. I sowed them to wheat. My son David concluded to move to St. Thomas, and Pres. Smith gave him a town lot adjoining mine, and also some farming land. He did not move down until about the middle of February following.

After Pres. Smith returned from the north he appointed A. V. Gibbons and myself to act as teachers. The people had got very dilatory about attending meetings.

About the forepart of Dec. Bro. Smith was taken sick. He became so bad that some doubted his recovery.

One night as Bro. Gibbons and I were guarding our cattle corral, at about nine o'clock we were surprised at seeing Bro. Smith approaching us. On coming up he said "Bro. Gibbons I want you to come with me, Bro. Foote you stay here and guard until he comes back. I could not think what was up, but I soon found out, for it was not long until I heard some pretty loud preaching. He had called the people together, and was telling them of their slothfulness, and negligence, and wickedness of some. There was some whisky in town and some had got drunk. He commanded them to repent, and do better. He spoke with great power and authority to the people, which affected them very much. He also said the devil had been trying to kill him and make him believe that he would never get well, but he had got power over him, and in the name of the Lord had rebuked him, and said that he was not going to die yet.

The following Sunday he asked me to take Bro. Charles Hubbard and go up to Mill Point and preach repentance to them. We went up and had a very good meeting. The brethren of that place had built on the hill in a shape similar to St. Thomas Fort, only the rows of houses were farther apart. They had to haul all their water from the creek, both for house use and mixing mortar.

During the fall I had made adobes to build me a house for my first wife which I laid up the forepart of February.

President Smith's health continued very poor, being troubled with a diarrhea all the time. He finally concluded to go north to his home in Farmington Davis Co. He appointed James Leithead to preside during his absence. Bro. Leithead came to the Muddy on February 21<sup>st</sup> 1866.

The following spring and summer he and A. S. Gibbons were employed to put the roof on the warehouse at Callville Landing of the Colorado river, about 35 miles from St. Thomas. This warehouse was built by a company of merchants in Salt Lake City. The walls were built of rock. A company under the direction of Anson Call of Farmington Davis Co. Went down in the fall of 1864 and put up the walls of the building. They supposed that steamboats could ascend the river to this point. I will here relate my first trip to Callville.

**P. 203**

**1866** In August, Bro. David Ross (who came from Round Valley soon after President Smith went down) proposed to me that if I would furnish some flour he would take his horses and some flour of his own, and go to Callville. Being in need of some things I concluded to do so. His horses were very thin in flesh and I felt some dubiety about them, but he said that they were in good heart and would stand the trip well enough. So I furnished I think 600 lbs of flour and he took 200 of his own and we started out.

The first day we went down to where the road left the river. Here we found a terrible steep hill. We packed the flour up on the horses backs, and made out to get the empty wagon up with a hard struggle. We had my light wagon without any box on. We traveled on the second day very well, but very slowly, the road running up a loose gravelly wash. We went to near the divide and camped. In the night one of the horses got to a sack of grain, and foundered himself.

We drove on in the morning by making the well horse pull nearly all the load. We were about 12 miles from Callville and the weather very hot, and there was no water for the horses and a very little for ourselves, until we reached there. When we camped last night we expected to get there before noon this day. After we got into the wash leading down to the Colorado it was a gradual decent to the river and a pretty good road. Our water was all gone long before we came to the river, and we got very thirsty. We reached there about four o'clock.

There were five or six persons here who had taken up claims for the purpose of speculation, supposing that Callville would become a very important place. Benjamin H. Paddock was one of them. He and James Ferry had a small store of goods. We sold our flour to them at \$14.00 per hundred and received in payment some goods and some money.

Our sick horse appeared much better next day, but we concluded to lay over one day to give them a good rest, but we started about four o'clock and thought we would take the night for it. We drove about five miles up the wash and our sick horse gave out, and we had to leave the wagon. We packed our bedding and things on the well horse and traveled nearly all night and then laid down to rest until daylight.

The next day we got to the Virgin river. Some person passed us going to St. Thomas on horseback during that day, and our food being nearly out, we sent word home for our folks to send an Indian to meet us with a fresh supply. We started from camp very early, having nothing for breakfast, but after traveling four or five miles we met an Indian with our grub. I never liked the sight of an Indian so well in my life before. We were getting very hungry and faint, the weather was extremely hot. After eating and resting sometime, we traveled on, reaching home about night.

**P. 204**

**1867** The **22nd day of February** 1867 was a day of deep sorrow to us. We had moved into our new house two days before, and left David living in the one we moved out of. That house contained one large room and one very small one. Our son Warren slept in the small room, as I had but one room finished in my new house. David arose very early in the morning, and asked Warren if he would get up and help him load some adobes. He said he would. David then went out to harness his team. Warren was so long coming out that David's wife spoke to him, and not receiving any reply she went in, and found him laying on the floor with one arm in his coat sleeve, dead. She called David and immediately ran up to our house and called to us, saying **Warren** was **dead**. His mother and I were still in bed. We hurried on our clothes, and ran down. David had ran in and picked him up and laid him on his bed. We immediately conveyed him to our house,--the neighbors came flocking in, and we tried every means in our power to restore him, but his spirit had departed.

O what anguish filled our hearts. I felt as though I could never be comforted in this life. He was such a dear affectionate son and kind to all. Every body liked him. The night before he died, he spent the evening with us, and seemed unusually happy, and was so thankful that we had got so comfortable a house. He said that it seemed like home. The afternoon before he died he and Jesse Fuller had agreed to go over the trail to the Virgin river today to look for cattle. His health had seemingly been very good since last fall, and he had done considerable work. His sudden death cast a gloom over the whole town. After he was laid out, he looked as though he was in a peaceful sleep with a pleasant smile on his countenance. We **buried** him on the **23rd**.

O how lonesome I was for many a day afterwards. He had almost always accompanied me in my work, and I felt my loss

very keenly, when I had to go alone. After pretty hard struggling we became resigned to the will of our Father in Heaven. We were assured that our loss was his gain. He was gone to rest. No more pain and sickness for him. Poor boy, he had suffered very much in this world. Perhaps the Lord thought that it was enough, and took him home. We have an assurance that we shall meet him, and our other little sons and daughter, where sorrow and sighing will be known no more. O what a joyful day that will be to all those who keep the commandments of our God, and have attained unto the ordinances of the House of God.

This life is but short at best, only a moment compared with the life to come. How necessary then that we should improve every moment in the service of our God, and seeking to build up His kingdom.

**1867**

**1868** Brother Thomas S. Smith's health continued very poorly after he went home, and President Young released him from the Mission, and sent a letter of appointment to James Leithead informing him that he was appointed to preside over the Muddy Mission in place of Bro. Smith released. He continued Andrew S. Gibbons, and myself in office as his counsellors.

I had to borrow some wheat, probably about 30 bushels to do me until harvest. I had a very fair crop of grain and some cotton this season. Sometime in the spring Benjamin H. Paddock commenced boarding with me. He was the mail subcontractor. He brought a few goods and groceries to my house which I sold for him. This was the means of helping us some. We now had a mail three times a week from St. George to Mohave. James Leithead was appointed Postmaster but as he could not attend to it, he appointed me his assistant, so I kept the Post Office at my house. In the latter part of the summer Brother Leithead went north to sell out and bring his family down. He exchanged his farm in Farmington with Simons for his grist mill at Mill Point seven miles above St. Thomas. He returned about the last of Nov. He wanted me to run the mill for him. I concluded to do so and we made a contract that I should have two fifths of all the tole and smuttings and he to keep up all repairs, sharpening of picks & etc. We took possession about the 20th of Dec. 1867.

I set three days in a week for grinding, Mondays Tuesdays and Wednesdays. I generally went up to the mill on Sunday toward night and took provision with me for three days. Some weeks the grinding would not last more than two days, and some four. The Indians raised considerable wheat, and I done a great deal of grinding for them. I hired Darius S. Clement to help me occasionally, as he lived at that place. I built a house on my lot, and purchased a two and an half acre lot across the street to put out a vineyard on. On the 6th of March 1868, I bought 2150 grape cuttings of Jacob Hamblin for which I paid him \$57.50 in flour and cotton. Flour was 10 cents per lb. I built a house on this 2-1/2 acre lot for my second wife.

On the **11th** day of **November 1868** I had a son **born of my second wife** whom I named **Charles Lane**, after my Mother's brother.

In **August 1868** there was three supervisors for Pah Ute Co. elected namely Elijah Billingsly, Andrew S. Gibbons and myself. One was for the term of one year, one for two, and one for three. We drew for the different terms. I drew the three year term. The office of Supervisor is the same as selectman in Utah. We had a very fair crop of wheat this year. A great many had forsaken this mission and returned to their old homes in the north. They could not endure the hardships and privations we had to endure in establishing these settlements. Many were called from Salt Lake and other places to come here from time to time, but few out of those numbers had stamina enough to settle down permanently.

**P. 206**  
**1868**  
**1869**

The population of St. Thomas in December 1868 was as follows; Males 75, Females 62, Children under 14 years Males 49, Females 32. Total 216.

In the spring of 1868 quite a number of families went from what had been called Mill Point, but now called St. Joseph, and located at the Upper Muddy valley, about 25 miles above St. Thomas. They called the settlement West Point. Andrew S. Gibbons went to preside over the place.

The fall previous a large number had been called from Salt Lake City and regions roundabout there, to come and strengthen the Muddy Mission. The most of them were young married men, and inexperienced in pioneer life. As they came to St. George President Snow advised them to settle at St. Joseph (formally Mill Point). The most of them passed by St. Thomas without as much as looking at it. When they arrived at St. Joseph it looked so barren and having to haul all their water from the creek up a pretty steep bluff they got discontented and wanted the privilege of going to the Upper Muddy.

President Snow came down to visit the Settlements sometime in February and very reluctantly gave them permission to go. But when President Young heard of it, he ordered them to move back to St. Joseph. This broke up the settlement. The

most of these young folks returned to Salt Lake in the fall and abandoned the mission altogether.

In the fall of 1868 Another call was made by the First Presidency to strengthen the Muddy settlements. This time older and more experienced men were called. They mostly located at St. Joseph. Joseph W. Young was sent down to take Presidency of this mission under President E. Snow. They set out with a determination to build up a city on the dry sandy bench in accordance with Bro. Snows plan when he broke us up at St. Joseph in 1866. They had tried in vain to bring the water down to their old fort at the mill, so they concluded to move their town about 1 1/2 miles further up. This located them right into the midst of drifting sand, but they thought that they could keep the water there, sufficiently to cause the sand to pack. Consequently they surveyed their lots and went to building on them. They had to haul their adobes from the creek bottom through heavy sand, some places half way to the hubs of their wagons. They made a new ditch around the upper swamp taking the water out right at the lower end of the Narrows. They had to cut through a ridge about 10 feet deep and several rods long. This required an immense sight of labor. After working through the spring

**P. 207** and summer they learned by experience, what some of us had often told them, that they never could keep the water on  
**1870** that sandy bench. They might clean out their ditch, and the first wind storm would fill it level again. Wind storms were very frequent from the southwest.

They finally concluded to abandon the bench altogether and about one half of the people resolved to move up to the old town site of **St. Joseph** where we first located, and the other half went over on the west side of the creek about one mile southwest of the mill and surveyed a town site. This place they called **Overton**. It was a very good location. They now commenced to build up those places, and by the spring of 1870 they became quite respectable towns. Helaman Pratt presided over Overton, and Daniel Starks presided at Old St. Joseph.

In the meantime the **upper Muddy** had been resettled, and **George Leavitt** was Presiding Elder. It numbered about 25 families. Under the direction of E. Snow and J. W. Young several of us went down to the junction of the Rio Virgin with the Colorado river, and surveyed a town site and secured it, thinking that probably Steamboats might possibly ascend to that point. We called the town site Junction City.

During the session of **Congress** in the **winter of 1868 and 1869**, they took **one degree of longitude from Utah and attached to Nevada**, and all that portion of **Arizona** laying north of the Colorado river also. The line between Utah and Nevada was not run until 1870, and we had supposed that these settlements were east of that line, and we had paid our **taxes** to Arizona, although St. Joseph a year or so before had organized in Utah and paid their taxes there.

In the **autumn of 1870** President Brigham Young and a number of others visited the settlements on the Muddy. They also went down to the Colorado river. A quite a number from the settlements accompanied them. I and my wife Artemesia also went. We camped over night. The brethren of St. Thomas had built a ferry boat and taken it down Previously. The river was very low, and President Young was very much disappointed, and refused to cross the river. He said if the Gentiles wanted that country they were welcome to it.

The next morning it was cloudy and looked like rain. C. R. Savage the photographer was along and took a picture of the camp. We got back to St. Thomas in the afternoon. Geo. A. Smith and his wife Bathsheba was in the Presidents company. They held meetings in St. Thomas and St. Joseph. It was plain to see that President Young was disappointed in the whole country. He did not consider that it was as desirable a place as it had been represented to him.

**P. 208** In the winter following the survey of the line between Utah and Nevada was completed and it was found to run about  
**1870** 18 miles east of St. Thomas thus throwing **all the Muddy Settlements into Nevada!**

As soon as it was found that we were in **Nevada**, the County officers at Hico, Lincoln Co. sent their assessor down and **assessed us for the two past years**. This made a **very heavy tax** on us, and we objected to paying it, as **we had paid our taxes to Arizona and Utah during those years**.

In the fall of 1870 the settlement at West Point was abandoned, and the settlers moved to St. George and other places, I bought some fruit trees and building material, -lumber, poles &etc of some of the brethren who left there and hauled it to St. Thomas. I had also bought two more 2 1/2 acre lots adjoining mine which lay across the street from my City lot. After it was ascertained positively that we were in the State of Nevada, many began to feel very uneasy, as the people of that state were generally very hostile to the "Mormons," and their taxes were very heavy, much more so than in Utah, or Arizona. Some of the brethren on this mission were not satisfied and never had been, but were staying because they were called to come here. Their hearts was not in the mission, consequently they hailed with delight any thing that would be calculated to release them, even to the breaking up of these settlements.

Presidents B. Young and George A. Smith were spending the winter in St. George, and Joseph W. Young, (having moved up there) was sent down in company with Bro. Richard Bently with a letter from them, and President E. Snow, with regard to the affairs of this mission. A meeting was called at St. Thomas on the **20th of Dec. 1870**, 2 P.M. of which the following are the minutes, as taken by J. J. Fuller, Clerk. 2 o'clock P. M. Dec 20th 1870. Meeting convened according to appointment. Singing. Prayer by Warren Foote. Singing. **President Joseph W. Young** said, he and Bro. Richard Bently were bearers of a **letter from President Young**, which he proceeded to read. The following is a copy.

#### **St. George Dec 14th 1870**

Bro. James Leithead and the Brethren and Sisters residing on the Muddy: It proves that the survey of the line of Nevada, places you within the jurisdiction of that state, and consequently, by the act of Congress transferring to Nevada the territory you occupy without your consent, imposes upon you the onerous burden of taxation, and license, and stamp duties, with which that State is oppressed. Your isolation from market, the high rate at which property is assessed in Nevada, with the unscrupulous character of many of the officers of newly organized regions, all combine to render your continuance in developing the resources of the Muddy, a matter of grave consideration.

**P. 209**

**1870**

You are occupying soil, Climate, and water, which are capable of producing a most desirable country, but when you consider the drawbacks with which you are surrounded, you may think them too great to overcome, in view of the advantages to be obtained thereby. You have done a noble work in making and sustaining that outpost of Zion against many difficulties, and exposures, and toil.

We now advise that you gather together in your several settlements, and take into consideration your future course, and if a majority, after fairly canvassing the subject, conclude to remain and continue to develop the resources which abound with you, all abide by the result. But if the majority of the Saints in counsel determine that it is better to leave the State, whose laws and burdens are so oppressive, let it be so done, but it will not be prudent to reduce your numerical strength much and attempt to remain. May the blessings of Israel's God rest upon you and guide you in your decision.

We send you as bearers of this Epistle our beloved Brethren Joseph W. Young and Richard Bently, who will be present at your several councils, and counsel you in carrying out your conclusions.

It would be advisable whether you conclude to leave the State or not to petition the Legislature for an abatement of all back taxes, setting forth the disadvantages under which you labor, being entirely an agricultural instead of a mining people, and far removed from any market.

It would also be well to petition for the organization of a new County with all its county privileges. If perhaps the authorities of Lincoln county see proper to enforce the collection on their old assessment, or a new one, it might be well to forestall the seizure of property as far as possible by removing loose stock and other property out of the jurisdiction of the State. All measures should be thoroughly investigated by yourselves and acted upon according to wisdom. **Signed, Brigham Young, George A. Smith, Erastus Snow.**

Joseph W. Young made some remarks, and requested the Brethren to express their opinions in regard to abandoning the Muddy. Bishop James Leithead and many other, said they thought, -taking into account all the circumstances, that they had better vacate these settlements for the present. The meeting was adjourned until half past 6 o'clock P. M. Dismissed by Bro. Helaman Pratt. 6-1/2 o'clock P. M. Prayer by Bro. Andrew S. Gibbons. Singing.

Privilege was given for the brethren to express their minds upon the subject under consideration. After which, it was motioned that we abandon the Muddy, and appoint a Delegation to look out a new location.

**P. 210**

**1870**

The Brethren were requested to vote for or against the motion, stating their reasons. All the brethren who were present voted to leave, excepting one, also all the sisters but one. These two exceptions were Daniel Bonelli and his wife. They were in a state of apostacy from the Church, and were believers in what was called "The New Movement." Meeting was dismissed by Bro. Richard Bently.

Minutes of a **Conference** of the people of the Muddy Settlements held at St. Thomas, **Dec. 21st 1870.**

Meeting was called to order by Andrew S. Gibbons. After the opening exercises, the Conference was addressed by Bishop Starks, Elders Andrew S. Gibbons, Warren Foote, and Wm. Heaton.

A petition of the Legislature of the State of Nevada, asking for an abatement of all back taxes, for the cause of our isolation, great distance from market, the difficulties of reclaiming this desert land, and being an agricultural instead of a

mining community and having to feed a large Indian population, and also for a new county to be organized, to be called Los Vegas Co. and taking in the Muddy Valley, Los Vegas and Junction City.

Joseph W. Young, Bishop James Leithead, and Richard Bently came in bringing another petition which was read. The petition was to the Congress of the United States, asking for the ceding back to Utah and Arizona that portion detached from them and attached to the State of Nevada. The meeting was adjourned to sign the petition, Dismissed by Bishop Starks.

Conference convened at 3 o'clock P. M. Meeting called to order by James Leithead. Singing. Prayer by William Heaton. Singing.

Bishop Leithead reported 46 males for, and one against abandoning the Muddy in St. Thomas Ward. Bishop Starks of St. Joseph reported 49 in favor and one against. Overton Ward reported 28 in favor and one against.

Bishop Starks presented a resolution to the Conference to abandon the Muddy for reasons expressed in the Epistle of President B. Young, and Geo. A. Smith and E. Snow, and other reasons. Adopted.

Joseph W. Young stated that the object of the meeting was to take into consideration the time and manner of moving from the Muddy, and advised that every thing should be done in order and not to many of the brethren leave at once. Bishops James Leithead, Daniel Starks, and Heleman Pratt, and Elders Gibbons, Heaton, Stewart and Paddock were selected the delegation to look out a new location.

**P. 211** J. W. Young stated that he would go with them to **Berry=s Valley (Long Valley)** and other places. They were to call  
**1870** upon President Young at St. George and get his counsel in regard to the matter. J. W. Young spoke in favor of organizing a Cotton producing Company. Some of the brethren spoke in favor and some against the measure. J. W. Young said that ten men with the assistance of the Indians could raise a large amount of cotton, and also mature a great deal of wheat. It was agreed to postpone the question until the Delegation should visit President Young and get his mind. Bro. Daniel M. Thomas made a motion that we preserve our wheat and other property. Carried unanimously.

Bishop James Leithead motioned that, we do covenant and agree that we will stick together and assist each other in removing our effects. Voted unanimously.

J. W. Young counseled the brethren not to destroy our houses &etc as this valley was just as valuable to Zion as it was a year ago. Elder Richard Bently offered the closing benediction.

The people generally looked upon the vacating their homes and the labor of years thrown away joyfully, and fully resigned in the Providences of God, believing that He will overrule all for their good.

The following is a **petition to the Governor and Legislative Assembly of the State of Nevada.**

To the Honorable, The Governor and Legislative Assembly of the State of Nevada. Gentlemen:

Your petitioners respectfully beg to lay before your honorable body the following facts: Seven years ago we came to this valley and made the Settlement of St. Thomas and St. Joseph. The former place being (as we firmly believed) in the Territory of Arizona and the latter in the Territory of Utah. Subsequently to making these Settlements, Congress has seen fit to take one degree of Longitude from Utah and a small portion from Arizona and attach it to Nevada. We still believed that the boundary line of Nevada would pass to the west of our Settlements, and we have in good faith paid taxes in Utah and Arizona.

For the last two years the authorities of Lincoln County Nevada have attempted to assess and collect taxes from us, but we have refused to pay taxes in Lincoln County until the boundary was established. The boundary line is now established, and it proves that our settlements are in Nevada. We wish your Honorable Body to consider our isolated condition. We are an agricultural, not a mining people, and we have had to contend with great difficulties in trying to subdue these alkaline deserts, having expended at least fifty thousand dollars in labor on water sects alone. We have been compelled  
**P. 212** also to feed an Indian population out-numbering our own, and that too without the aid of a single dollar from the  
**1870** Government.

We are far remote from any market, and it is impossible for us to convert our produce into cash. We therefore respectfully ask your Honorable Body to abate all taxes assessed against us by the Authorities of Lincoln County.

We also petition that your Honorable Body will at the earliest practicable date organize a new county. To be called Los Vegas County, with boundaries as follows, to wit: Beginning at the point where the East line of the State of Nevada crosses the summit of the Beaver Dam Mountains; thence westerly along said mountains to the upper end of the Canon at the southeast end of Pah-ranagat Valley, Then: due south to the boundary line of the State of California, thence along said boundary line of California to its intersection with the Colorado river: thence up said river to where the eastern boundary line of the State of Nevada intersects said river: thence along said eastern boundary of Nevada to the place of beginning. And as in duty bound your petitioners will ever pray: that as you listen and grant our petition; so yours may be granted.

One hundred and eleven names were attached to this Petition. Citizens of St. Joseph, Overton, and St. Thomas.

**A Petition To the Honorable Senate and House of Representatives of the United States in Congress** Assembled: Gentlemen: We your petitioners, Citizens of the Muddy Valley, State of Nevada, would respectfully represent to your Honorable Body the following facts: Seven years ago we came to this Valley and made the settlements of St. Joseph and St. Thomas, and subsequently those of West Point and Overton. At the time of settling here, the Valley of the Muddy was included in the boundaries of Utah and Arizona, and we expected to remain under the jurisdiction of one or the other of those Territories.

**P. 213  
1870**

Subsequently your Honorable Body has seen proper to take off one full degree of Longitude from Utah Territory and a slice from Arizona and attach the same to Nevada, thus removing us within the jurisdiction of that State without our consent. It is well known to your Honorable Body and to the Public generally that, this region is a vast alkaline desert destitute of timber and grass. Our object in coming here, was the production of cotton for the clothing of ourselves and families, and to aid our toiling brethren in the Territory of Utah to do the same. We have expended at least one hundred thousand dollars in labor in constructing dams and irrigating canals. The little lumber we have been able to obtain has been hauled at least one hundred and fifty miles, over a sandy desert at a cost of twenty dollars for every one hundred feet. We are far remote from any market or base of supplies.

In addition to these and innumerable other difficulties we have had to feed an Indian population outnumbering our own, and that two without the aid of one single dollar from the Government, with the exception of some two hundred and fifty dollars, furnished these Indians by Col. Head Superintendent of Indian Affairs for the Territory of Utah. A certain Captain Fenton represents himself as a special Agent of the Government to the Pah Ute Nation, but he has never done anything to alleviate their condition as your petitions hereby testify.

We have constructed some one hundred and fifty dwellings, planted orchards, and vineyards and cleared about five hundred acres of cotton fields, and have done all in our power to establish homes in this Valley. It now transpires that the boundary line of Nevada is established, and the authorities of that State demand of us the onerous tax imposed upon its citizens of three per cent on all taxable property in gold coin for State and County purposes and four dollars in gold poll tax.

Being a agricultural people and far remote from any market and unable to convert our produce into cash we cannot pay those taxes. Therefore unless we obtain the relief sought for from your Honorable Body we shall be compelled to abandon this valley and remove from the State of Nevada, thus throwing away the result of the toil and energies of seven years. In consideration of all these circumstances, we your petitioners pray that your Honorable Body to cede back to the Territories of Utah and Arizona that portion of country detached from them and attached to the State of Nevada. And as in duty bound your petitioners will ever pray.

There was no notice taken of the foregoing petitions, neither by Congress or the Legislature of Nevada.

The people began immediately after conference to prepare for moving. I was kept constantly at the Mill grinding up all their wheat, so that they could haul their flour to St. George.

**P. 214  
1871**

The Delegation that went to Long Valley returned the forepart of January and gave their report. President Young counseled them to settle in Long Valley, provided that the old settlers would relinquish their old claims or would sell out. The first settlers were driven out of this valley by the Indians during the Black Hawk war about five years previous, and had established themselves in various settlements throughout Southern Utah. They are all consulted with regard to their claims. Some relinquished their claims altogether, some wanted pay, and some wanted to return to them.

We were counseled to continue our organizations the same as on the Muddy. Bishop Starks chose the lower place in the Valley formerly called Windsor for the St. Joseph Ward and Bishop James Leithead chose the upper place formerly called Berryville for the St. Thomas ward.

On the **third** day of **January 1871** my son David started for St. George with a load of flour (730 lbs.) He had a span of mares and had two old horses. One thousand pounds is about all that two span of common animals could haul up the Rio Virgin bottom as it is very sandy a great deal of the way. He deposited his load with Robert Gardner. On **Feb. 3<sup>rd</sup>** he started with another load of 1050 lbs.

Also on this day I had a **son born of my wife Artemisia**. We named him **Homer Clarence**.

A number of teams were sent down from St. George to assist the brethren in moving.

**Feb. 18th** I sent to St. George by one of these teams 315 lbs. flour 1 bus corn 1 bu barley 1 bu of wheat and some salt.

About the **8th of Feb.** The **Sheriff of Lincoln County** came down from Hico, and served a summons on all the brethren still living on the Muddy. The following is a copy of the one left with my wife as I was at the mill.

### SUMMONS

State of Nevada	In Justice's Court
County of Lincoln	Before C. W. Wandell, Justice of the Peace
Hico Township	In and for the Township & County aforesaid

The State of Nevada,

To Warren Foote, and all owners of, or claimants, known or unknown to the following described property to wit:  
House, Lot and land at St. Thomas, Greeting:

You are hereby summoned to appear before the undersigned a Justice of the Peace in and for Hico Township County of Lincoln on the fifteenth day of March 1871 at 12 o'clock M. to answer unto the complaint of the State of Nevada, which sues to recover the sum of eleven dollars and seventy nine cents, Gold Coin, delinquent taxes of the before described property, together with percentage and cost as is provided by law, as fully set forth in a complaint of file in my office. And if you fail to appear and answer, the Plaintiff then and there will take judgment against you for the aforesaid amount, together with all costs subsequently to the assessment of said taxes and of this action.

Given under my hand in the Township of Hico, County of Lincoln this **third day of February A. D. 1871**.  
(Signed) C. W. Wandell, Justice of the Peace for said Township.

**P. 215**  
**1871** Immediately after the Sheriffs visit, we held a council in which it was decided to move enmasse before the first of March so as to avoid having our teams and wagons attached by the Sheriff. We had sent all our loose stock out of the State by Bro. Rice W. Nelson, who were now at the Beaver Dams. Word was sent to St. George stating the position we were in, and asking for teams and wagons to assist us in getting-away.

In the mean time we had sold our crops on the ground to one Jennings, (an outsider who had lately come into the country) and one or two other persons for 1-1/2 bushels of wheat per acre to be paid after harvest. I was very much opposed to this sale as that was just the amount of seed sown per acre, and the prospect was good for a heavy crop. I stated that I had rather give my crop to the Indians than to these fellows to speculate on. But the people were in a state of great excitement and cared but little what became of it, consequently the bargain was closed and papers signed. (I will say here that this was a very bad move. President E. Snow was very much chagrined at this sale. He had intended to send men down from St. George to mature the crop and thereby keep the grain in the church.

Sometime after I had arrived in Long Valley I went down to St. George after some flour, Bro. Snow had some talk with me on the subject. He wanted to know if Bishop Leithead could not have prevented the sale. I told him it would have been very difficult as the people had become so excited they had lost much of their reason. Bro. Snow felt like chastising bro. Leithead, but after his interview with me I think that the matter was dropped, as I heard no more about it. The crop was a very heavy one and thousands of bushels of grain was lost to our Dixie Brethren. I finished grinding about the 16th of Feb. and in two days Bro Leithead had the water wheel, stones, smutter, and bolt, with some other things that were moveable, townr out and loaded on wagons ready to start for St. George. Several teams arrived from St. George to take all away.

My son David loaded what few things he had left and a few things of mine into my wagon and put both span of horses to it.

A wagon was provided for my wife Artemisia whose babe was only two weeks old. We fixed her bed into it and made her as comfortable as we could. The rest of my goods were put in five different wagons, with other peoples goods. (I had but little either.) My wife Maria and I rode on another wagon, when I rode at all.

All things being in readiness we started out on Monday the 20th day of Feb. and drove up a little above where the old California road leaves the Rio Virgin. The next day we drove up to Mesquet Flat. It began to rain in the evening. My wife Maria and children with myself had to sleep on the ground without shelter. The rain wet through our bedclothes somewhat and we were glad when morning came.

**P. 216**

**1871** On the **22nd** we drove to the Beaver Dams, where we found Bro. Nelson with our cattle. I went and looked at my two cows and found one of them with a calf and very poor. I did not think that she would ever reach St. George.

The **23rd** we drove to Camp Springs. The snow was about 6 inches deep over the divide, but there was but very little at the spring but the wind was cold, and we suffered considerably, after coming out of the warm country.

The **24th** was clear, and as soon as we got down on the Santa Clara Creek it got warm and comfortable. We arrived in St. George about noon. Bro Finley had taken my wife Artemisia into his wagon before we crossed the divide. He lived at Santa Clara and as he came to his house he stopped and took my wife in to dinner. She was very weak but after partaking of a good dinner and some wine. She stood the ride to St. George very well. We stopped at Bro. Robert Gardner's, in a room that he had prepared for us.

On the **26th** the brother that my wife Maria rode with, sent his son with his team, and took her over to Washington to Joseph Sander's, her cousin. I also went over but returned to St. George with the boy.

On the **28th** David and I in company with Bro. Gardner's Son, and some others started out towards the Pine Valley mountain after wood. We got to the cedars before night and loaded up. In the morning which was the first day of March we started for St. George. I rode with Bro. Gardner's son. It was a very cold raw wind and David took a chill before we got to St. George, and was very bad when he arrived. He had had the Chills on the Muddy, but had not got very well over them. The next morning he was better and I think he had no more chills after that.

**A Review of the Muddy Mission.** Before proceeding farther with my journal I will briefly review the Muddy Mission. The main object of this Mission was to raise cotton to facilitate our home manufacturing of cloth. I went voluntarily on that mission with the second company of volunteers.

My reasons for leaving Round Valley were as follows. The climate was too cold and frosty, and it appeared very doubtful if fruit could be raised to any great extent, besides the people were very much divided. I felt that it would be better for me to go to a warmer country where there would be no uncertainty of growing fruits of various kinds, but above all I felt impressed by the Spirit to respond to the call of the servants of God to assist in opening up that country. Hence I went with a full determination to stick to it, and make a pleasant home for my family.

**P. 217**

**1871** I took five yoke of oxen, eight cows and six head of young stock, making twenty four head of cattle. I also had three wagons. I traded my heaviest wagon and one yoke of oxen for a span of mules, and both of them died a short time after I got them. The Indians killed one yoke of my oxen, and three cows. I had two yoke of oxen mired through the carelessness of one of my neighbors. I had let him have them to assist him to take a load to St. George, and as he was going on up the river to Virgin City after his family he was to take the oxen to Toquerville and deliver them to Thomas Forsythe for the mules. But instead of leaving them according to agreement, he kept them to help haul his loading to the Muddy. He got into St. Thomas after dark and instead of delivering them to me, he turned them loose up in the alkaline hills. There had just been a rain, and made the gullies very mirey. The oxen had undertaken to cross the gullies, and the next day they were all found mired and dead. I never got any compensation for them.

I put all my labor into improvements, and in the fall of 1870 I valued my property in land, vineyards, and houses, &etc. at about \$3,000.00. For all this property I never received a single cent. Six years of my hard labor was thrown away.

I must say that this was a great trial to me, to leave my beautiful vineyard, that I had expended so much labor to level and terrace,--scraping down the sand knowls, and just as we were beginning to enjoy the fruits of our labor to come away, and leave it for that scoundrel Jennings to enjoy.

Our little cottonwoods that we had set along our streets had grown to be large enough for fence poles. I felt as though we might have saved a great share of our property, had the people kept their senses. I brought away two old horses one old wagon and two cows. Neither myself nor family had scarcely any decent clothes to put on.

I made considerable at the mill and generally raised good crops, and grain was generally at a high price, but clothing and groceries were as high accordingly. I paid \$40.00 for a plow, but I paid in flour at \$10.00 per hundred. Prints was 40 cts a yard, brown sheeting about 50 cts. Bleached 70 cts per yd. Sugar 50 cts per pound, Saleratus 70 cts, Soap 50 cts per bar of one pound. Hoes \$2.67. Gined Cotton only brought about 25 cents per lb and part of that in store goods.

It will be seen from the foregoing, that it cost something to live in that country, but we had conquered the worst, and began to get in very good circumstances. For the first three years, we had but very few of the luxuries of life, but always had plenty of bread and generally had plenty of molasses, because we could raise the articles. Hogs done extremely well.

I paid one year into the Tithing Office 30 bus of wheat, which was the tith of my wheat crop. The amount of my share of grain that I made at the Mill was 1102 bushels, Bishop Leithead's was 1608 bushels. Total 2710 bushels.

A great deal of labor was thrown away in digging ditches, by not digging them in the right places. It seemed as though every body was taken with large ideas-- larger than we were able to carry out, for the strength we had. This was especially the case with Mill Point and afterwards Saint Joseph.

**P. 218**  
**1871**

When Bro. E. Snow visited us, he brought his Counselors with him, instead of counseling with the brethren living there. This was more especially so the first years we were there. I suppose that hundreds were called to go to the Muddy Mission during the six years we were there. The most of those who actually went down there staid but a short season. They would make some excuse to go north, and then forget to come back again. This made it very hard for those who had stamina enough to stick to it. At one time nearly all had left but the old volunteers. They stuck to it "like a dog to a root" as Bro. E. Snow expressed himself at the Conference in Salt Lake City when asking to have more called to assist in the Mission. In leaving the Muddy my faith did not fail me. Although I was set very flat with regard to property, having no home-no shelter for my family, and very poorly clothed. I felt that the Lord had not forsaken me, but that He would open up the way before me, in such a manner that we would not suffer. I had proved Him before, and He had never failed me, for which I praise Him.

## CHAPTER 15

On the **second day of March 1871** my son David, and myself prepared to start on our journey for Long Valley. I had got a room of Bro. Gardner for my wife Artemisia, and her children to live in until I went to Long Valley, and got located. **Nancy** my oldest daughter who was **married at St. Thomas on the 5th day of July 1869 to Homer A. Bouton** was with us. The next day after he was married he started for Connecticut, and had not yet returned. So my first wife's family consisted of five children besides the baby.

Notwithstanding her weak condition when we left St. Thomas she stood the journey very well.

I got a mule of Benj. Paddock to put with one of my horses to make out a team. David had a span of mares but only one was fit to work. So he put one of my horses with his. By doing this it made a span for each wagon. The poorly one he took along without working.

On the **3rd** we left St. George and drove to Washington. Here I took in my second wife and four children, and such articles as were actually necessary for the journey and on the **4th** drove a short distance beyond Berry' Spring about 7 miles from Washington. Here we found Jesse Fuller and three or four other brethren.

Just at night Bishop Leithead & A. V. Gibbons arrived at the spring with several other wagons. We now formed quite a company.

On the **5th** we drove to Gould's Ranch. We had quite a job getting up the Hurricane Hill, but no accident. I found Thomas Day at this Ranch herding sheep. He had left the Muddy some two or three years before. He was very much pleased to see me as we had been very intimate at St. Joseph. In the morning he brought us some mutton, and took breakfast with us.

P. 219  
1871

It turned cool this morning and the wind blew pretty strongly from the north. We drove about 8 miles to the sheep troughs. This is a small spring on the side of the mountain which is conducted in troughs to the base and empties into larger ones for the purpose of watering stock. Here we found Bro. Nelson with our stock. He had left my poor cow with some others with Edwin Davis and two or three other Brethren who were traveling with ox teams from the Muddy. They barely made out to get my cow as far as Joseph Sander's and left her with him, a mere skeleton.

On the **7th** we drove to Short Creek. There are two roads from this place to Long Valley. One by Pipe Spring, and one by what is called the "Elephant." It was finally decided to take the "Elephant" road as it is much nearer. We drove about six miles and stopped to noon at the mouth of the hollow leading to the Pine Spring about 6 miles further on where we intended to camp at night. After nooning we started on and found the sand terrible. Our jaded animals could not pull over two rods without resting. Our chop feed that we had brought from the Muddy was about gone and there was but very little grass, and that was old and dry. The young grass was not yet started. We drove about two miles and stopped for the night at a place called Seep Spring. Here we had to melt snow for our animals to drink. There was plenty of snow in banks on the north side of hills.

On the **9th** we found the road very sandy. David and I concluded to put both spans on one wagon and take it two or three miles and then return and bring up the other. In this way we succeeded in getting to camp at Pine Springs. Here David's mare got at some snow and eat all she wanted which gave her the cholera. We were doctoring her nearly all night, and made out to save her but she was scarcely able to walk in the morning.

On the **10th** we took our wagons to the divide by taking one at a time. All our company had gone on, so we were alone that night.

The **11th** we got to within about two miles of the Virgin river. We had had to melt snow for our animals and ourselves these three days. After we had camped, David and I concluded that we would go and see how far it was to water. Our chop feed was all gone and our animals had given out. We found our company camped at the virgin at the foot of the Elephant hill. They said that they would send two span of animals back in the morning and help us in, which they accordingly done so.

The **13th** we made some bridges, and part of our company moved ahead about two miles. David and I doubled teams again and took my wagon on, and in the morning brought his up. We made some bridges and succeeded in going up as far as the "Old Barracks." The day before, two young men passed us from Rockville, going to Long Valley. Bishop Leithead sent word by them for the Brethren at the lower settlement to send down a few teams and help us up. Bishop Starks and

P. 220

**1871** his company had arrived there about three weeks before. They went by way of Pipe Spring and Cottonwood Canon. The **15th** we all started on but David and one or two others. Their teams were done out. We soon met some teams from the settlement who had come to assist us, among whom was John Hyatt. He went on down to help David and brought him up to the settlement. We drove about three miles above and camped.

On the **16th** we arrived at our place of destination a little afternoon, where we found some two or three families from the Muddy, one of whom was **Royal J. Cutler**. When we arrived at the old Fort which consisted of Log cabins built in two parallel lines, with cedar pickets between the cabins, We stopped our train and went and numbered the cabins, and then drew for them. After this was done, each man drove to his cabin and took possession. They were very filthy, and covered with dirt thrown on top of split cedars for roofs. We were very thankful for them as they would shelter us until we could do better. I drew a double cabin and David came up next day and occupied one of them. We were all glad to get to our journeys end. It was a very hard trip for ourselves and our poor animals. But the Lord brought us safely through at last. I soon cleaned out my cabin and moved in. It was very small and after getting up two beds there was not much room left, but we were quite comfortable.

As the valley was not yet surveyed we measured off the portion each one wanted to farm this season. We had brought some seed wheat with us, and David and I grubbed our portion of land and sowed about three acres.

Soon after our arrival Joseph W. Young came up from St. George, and we agreed on a plan of the town and size of lots. It was to be laid off with streets running north and south with streets crossing at right angles. Lots to be 15 rods square, and four lots to a block. A petition was gotten up for a post route to be established from Panguitch to Kanab running through this Valley and a Post Office at this place. This required a name for our town. Various names was proposed. **Bishop Leithead proposed Glendale** which was agreed on. The settlement below was called Mount Carmel.

As we couldn't bring but little flour with us I was obliged to **return to St. George** for a load about the last of April. I started down in company with Frederick Noyse and Sven M. Anderson. We drove the first day about three miles south of the "Elephant" hill. In the morning we found that our animals had taken the back track. Anderson and Noyse started on their trail and did not overtake them until they reached Mt. Carmel. They got back to camp about 3 o'clock P.M. We hitched up and drove to Pine Spring. The next day we drove to the troughs.

**P. 221**  
**1871** On the following day I got to St. George about sundown. My family and I were glad to meet again. Little **Homer** had been very sick, so that his life was almost disposed of. But through the blessings of the Lord,-the administration of the Elders and by the faithful care of his mother and Sister Nancy, he was restored to health. For which blessings we were truly thankful.

My wife was very anxious to go on to Long Valley, but it was impossible to take her yet. I staid in St. George one day and two nights. B. H. Paddock wanted his mule which he took but let me have another instead which was a very inferior one. I took my son George and started home in company with S. M. Anderson. I took my poor cow, which Joseph Sanders had almost raised from the dead by his strict care and attention, having to lift her to her feet every day for sometime. I felt very grateful to him and was determined to recompense if I should ever be able. He did not charge anything only for the cornmeal he had fed to her.

We drove seven miles to the Virgin river and camped. The next day we drove to about half way between Gould's Ranch and the Troughs. The following day we drove a short distance east of Short Creek. The mule I had of Paddock gave out before we got to the camping place and we had to travel very slowly. The day following we succeeded in getting to Seep spring. Here we concluded to take one wagon at a time to the divide. Bro. Anderson started out very early, and did not return until dark. The next day we got my load over the divide. Bro. H. B. M. Jolley passed us moving to Mount Carmel. I sent a few lines by him to my son David stating our situation and requesting him to meet me with a span of animals as soon as possible.

The day we left the divide we succeeded in getting both wagons about half way to the Elephant by the middle of the afternoon, and there being no water for our animals, we took one wagon and drove on to the Virgin and camped.

In the morning early we started back for my wagon. As we were hitching to the wagon we saw David coming with a fresh team. O what a joyful sight. We now pursued our way home without further trouble.

There had been a great many grasshopper eggs deposited in the Valley the year previous, and they were now hatching out by the million and began to eat up our grain, and before they got large enough to fly they destroyed nearly all the small

grain. They eat all of ours, so we planted it to corn. I succeeded in getting half a bushel of potatoes to plant, of John Harris, one of the first settlers of this valley, who had come back to live here. I also got some peas of R. Gardner and planted which look well.

The last of May I began to prepare to go to St. George again after my first wife and children. I hired Joseph Knight to go down with a wagon and one yoke of oxen and took my old horses and my wagon. They had been running on the range and recruited somewhat. We went by the way of the Elephant road and reached St. George in about four days, and found my family all well, but very anxious to get away from St. George. The weather was very hot there.

**P. 222** I hired a yoke of oxen of a man in St. George to put with J. Knights to come home with. The first day we went as far  
**1871** as Washington and staid over night with Joseph Sanders. The next day we went to within about three miles of "Hurricane Hill," and one of my horses gave out and we were obliged to stop for the night. The weather was extremely hot. In the morning we started early and made out to get up the "Hurricane Hill" all right and went as far as Goulds Ranch where we camped.

The next day we drove to the "troughs," and concluded to rest our teams until next morning. We found Bro. Jacob Terry and wife here keeping a dairy.

The following day we made out to get to Short Creek. In the morning we saw some person coming towards our camp while we were eating our breakfast,-on horseback. On coming nearer we discovered it was David. He had got a span of horses of William Swapp and had come to help us to Long Valley. We were very glad to see him as I was fearful that my horses would not be able to reach Pipe Spring in one day, it being 18 miles and 10 of it rising ground and most of it very sandy, and there is no water short of the Spring. I had quite a hunt for my horses, but found them at last and we started out. I had never traveled this road before. It is one sand ridge rising one above another, and it seemed as though we would never get to the last one, but we did at last about sundown. We stopped here and rested our teams and got our supper. We then started on and reached Pipe Spring late in the night. Bro Windsor was living here taking care of the Church Stock.

The next day we drove 13 miles to a very poor spring, called Wolf Spring. We started out very early from here and drove to the head of Cottonwood canon, and camped at an excellent spring We drove over the sand ridge the next day and camped on the Virgin. Our teams were nearly exhausted. The cattle I hired in St. George were a poor team. They could not stand the heat and Knight's had to pull nearly all the load.

On the following day towards night we reached Glendale, and was glad to get a place we could call home again. Our land now being surveyed into five acre lots, we drew for them. When we first came to the Valley, two young men came to Glendale wanting to sell a claim of 10 acres. David bought it, and gave them his old wagon for it. It lay near the upper end of town. David took one five acre lot, and I the other. In drawing for our land it was agreed to take enough five acre lots nearest town to go around to each head of family and draw for them first, and then draw for the ballace, so as to give each one 10 acres apiece. David and I got the town lots adjoining our five acre lots. We cleared off his lower five acre lot or the most of it and planted to corn the last of June. A cloud of grass-hoppers came along and ate our corn that we planted where we had sowed wheat close to the ground. It looked as bare as a house floor.

**P. 223** It began to look as though we would not be able to raise a crop this season. I now had to go to Saint George again and  
**1871** take the oxen home that I had hired. Bro Neils P. Ipsom went down in company with me after a load of flour. I took my son Franklin with me. I stopped in St. George with Bro. Joseph Hammond, who had promised to lend me some wheat. Their harvest was over, and they had trashed. I now had to hire a team to haul my load to Long Valley. When I was down before, I had spoken to an old brother by the name of William Myers for his mules. He was not able to work, and his mules were idle and their keeping was a bill of expense to him. After considerable consultation with his wives. (He had two old ladies) he concluded to let me take them.

I got some wheat of Joseph Hammond and what things I had left in St. George, and went to the Mill at Washington and got my wheat ground, and staid over night with Joseph Sanders. The next morning Bro. Ipsom and I started for home. We were in St. George on the fourth of July. They had a celebration there. About four o'clock P. M. I witnessed the burning of Bro. Brown's house, it was built of lumber and burned very rapidly. He and his wife was not at home. They had gone to spend the fourth in Pine Valley. Bro. Ipsom and I had no trouble on our journey home. This was my last load of provision and things I had in St. George.

Q what toil, and trouble, and anxiety I had passed through to get my family and effects into Long Valley. Without a team or means to hire, I had labored incessantly to get in a little crop and to accomplish this object. At times the way looked

very dark, but I often went to my God in secret, and poured out my soul to Him. He was my "stay and my staff," and often whispered peace to my soul. He continually opened up the way before me to accomplish what I had. For all these blessings I praise Him.

On my return home, I was surprised to see my cornfield looking green again. When I went away there was not a vestage of corn to be seen. Now it was about four inches high. I had never known grain to grow again after the grasshoppers had eaten it clean into the ground. Right at this time President Snow visited us for the first time. He gave us counsel and encouraged the Saints in our poverty stricken condition. Our peas done exceedingly well and were a great help to us, also other garden vegetables.

Joseph W. Young moved one of his wives out here and in company with his brother John R. commenced preparations for building a saw mill. Bishop Leithhead also had commenced to get out timber for his gristmill. Our crops were looking well, that is, the corn and potatoes &etc but was very late, and looked doubtful about it maturing before frost. About this time my daughter Nancy got a letter from her husband stating that he had returned to Salt Lake City and wanted her to come to him if she possibly could. One of my horses had died, so I was without a team.

**P. 224** My second wife was very desirous of visiting her mother and relatives in Round Valley (Her Father had been killed by the Indians during the Black Hawk war.) and I saw plainly that we would have to get some breadstuff from some quarter. I concluded to get another horse if possible and go to Salt Lake City. J. W. Young wanted a hand to hew timber for his sawmill. I contracted for an old gray mare, for which I was to pay \$60.00 in work at \$3.00 per day.

On the **10th day of August, (my birth day)** I commenced hewing timber. I worked 5-1/2 days and then prepared for going to Salt Lake City.

On Tuesday the **22nd** I started- out with my wife Maria and her 4 children and my daughter Nancy, in company with John R. Young who was going to Red Creek. There came up a light shower in the afternoon and we camped about 4 miles north of the divide. The next day we drove to Panguitch and I stopped with Joseph Kesler, who had left Glendale and settled here. It was a lonely drive down the Sevier, there being no inhabitants except two families at Hillsdale where George Wilson was building a sawmill. There was quite a heavy shower in the night.

On the morning of the **24th** we took breakfast with Sister Macfate, one of our Muddy neighbors. By the middle of the afternoon we arrived to where the road forks on Bear Creek, one going to Little Creek and the other to Beaver. I drove a short distance and stopped for the night. J. R. Young continued on towards Little Creek.

The **25th** I drove to Beaver, and staid over night with **Thomas Willis**. Here we made up our minds to go to Minersville and see Jerome Zabriskie and wife, and Campbell Billingsly and wife. Their wives are Maria's sisters. I drove down there the **26th** and staid until the **28th** when I started on our journey and drove to near the mouth of Wild Cat canon. The next day I drove about three miles north of Baker's canon and camped. Did not find much feed for horses. They came up to the wagon in the night and then went off again. I arose long before daylight to hunt them. It was bright moonlight. I hunted towards Corn Creek thinking that they might be trying to find water. After looking in vain in that direction, I returned to my wagon feeling rather blue. I then started on my back track, and found them about a mile from our camp. With thankfulness to my Heavenly Father I returned and ate breakfast, and pursued our journey and drove to Meadow Creek and stopped to noon with Jacob Ferguson, another Muddy neighbor. In the afternoon I went to Fillmore and stopped over night with James Huntsman my old friend. I found him very sick. He was unable to get out of bed. Here we had a treat to all the apples we wanted to eat.

**P. 225** The **31st** I drove to Round Valley (**Scipio**) and stopped with Mother Ivie. I staid here one day, and getting a fresh horse of Mother Ivie, I took Nancy, and my son Franklin and started for **Salt Lake City**, where we arrived on the **5th of September**, and stopped with Bro. H. Felt, Homer Bouton=s brother-in-law. Homer was not here. He was out at the terminus of the Railroad, (afterwards called Sandy) in the employ of that company. We had passed right by there in the forenoon, but did not know that he was there.

In the morning of the **6th** Joseph insisted that I and Franklin should take a ride out on the cars and inform Homer that his wife was in town. So, he bought two tickets for us and we started out at 7 o'clock A. M. and in about half an hour we were out at Dry Creek, south of Union, on the old range where I used to hunt my cattle. Little did I think when I used to tramp over this range that I would ever ride over it on a railroad. We returned soon on the engine to Salt Lake City arriving there about ten o'clock. It was quite a joyful meeting with Homer and Nancy after being separated two years lacking one day. I spent the rest of the day with J. H. Felt in looking about the City, We looked at the Tabernacle, inside,-the Theater, and

walls of the Temple. Salt Lake City had improved wonderfully since I was here seven years ago.

The Railroad had been built across the Continent and the Utah Central from Ogden to this place was making daily trips, and on Main Street there was great activity of business, with Saints and sinners. Homer gave me \$25.00 which I expended in shoes and necessaries for my family and started **homeward the 7th**. I drove out about 8 miles to Millers Mill and stopped with James Walker, who had learned milling with me at the Cottonwood Mill about 11 years before. He was running Millers Mill. As I was passing James Hamilton's place near the Cottonwood Mill, he was out by his bars, I hailed him. He came to my wagon and enquired where I was living. I told him that I had been at the Muddy mission for six years and lost all my property in the breaking up of that mission and was then living in Long Valley, and that the grasshoppers had nearly destroyed our crops, and after giving him a brief history of my life since I left the Cottonwood Mill, he wanted to know if I had an empty sack. I told him I had. Said he "get it and come with me." I did so, and he went to his granary and filled it with wheat and put it in my wagon. I thanked him very much. When I was working at the Mill I lent him wheat one season as he was short of bread. He had paid me according to agreement, but he had not forgotten the accomodation. James Walker ground this wheat for me and also gave me 200 lbs of flour.

P. 226  
1871 I drove from Walker's to John Tanner's whose wife is my niece and staid until next morning, and then went to Union and saw my old neighbors. They were all glad to see me, especially Bro. Richards and wife, Father Terry and wife, and Marion Brady and wife. I left here the following morning and pursued my way to American Fork, and stopped with David Adamson, my old partner. He gave me about 200 lbs of flour and about 50 lbs hulled barley. (This answers very well for rice). From this place I traveled to Scipio without any particular incident. Here Franklin Ivie gave me 5 or 6 bushels of wheat and Henry McArthur gave me two bushel. Campbell Billingsly had given me an order on Hiram Ivie for 5 bushels which I got and took it all to the mill at that place and got it ground. I had got near 1000 lbs of flour.

I got a mare of James Ivie to work with the one I got of J. W. Young, as my other horse was very thin, not having fully recovered from my trip to St. George when I started for the City. This mare I got of J. Ivie had not been worked for some time, and was inclined to be balky when first hitched up.

I had had some thoughts of leaving my wife with her mother through the winter, but when I came back from Salt Lake City she had no desire to stay. She said that she had rather go home and live on bread and water than to stay there.

I got an old harness for my odd horse so that I could work him on the lead in going up the hills. Having got all things in readiness I started out. The mare would stop a few times but soon got so that she went pretty well.

I drove to Fillmore and stopped again with James Hunstman. I found him no better. Every thing that he eat gave him great distress. In the morning I bade Brother Huntsman farewell and never saw him more. He died sometime after.

When I hitched up, my wild mare would not pull at all. I got Bro. Gabriel Hunstman's little boy to put his horses on the lead and drive up out of town to where the road descended a little, and from there I had no more trouble with her. She proved to be an excellent worker. I had good weather and good roads during our journey home, where we arrived the latter part of September and found all well.

Our corn was not yet ripe but we cut it up for fear it would freeze and spoil it entirely. It was a very heavy crop, and if it could have three weeks more would have been good corn. It was only beginning to glaze when we cut it up. My little patch of potatoes done well.

Joseph W. Young put up a log house on his lot and my son David and I worked some on it in November and finished the 17th. The latter part of Nov. President Brigham Young, George A Smith and wife Bathsheba, and others made us a visit. It commenced soon after they arrived to rain and rained the most of the time they were here. They gave us some good counsel, and were in good spirits. Their visit done us much good.

This was about the time that "Bill Hickman was getting up his triads against President Young and others, accusing them of employing him to murder certain persons, &etc. President Young stated here in public that he had never had anything to do with Hickman, and never allowed himself to be in his presence without some of the brethren were with him, for he always felt that he was a bad man, and did not want anything to do with him.

P. 227  
1872 After this storm was over the weather was very pleasant until Christmas. This gave the corn a chance to dry, so that we could use it for bread.

A few who succeeded in getting white flint seed to plant, had very good corn. The Old Settlers had left a handmill here and after a little repairing we succeeded in grinding our corn on it. It was kept agoing almost constantly. Although our corn was not fully ripe and the meal rather coarse, the bread and mush made from it tasted good to us.

Bro. James Leithead got the basement of his mill up and the stones in place, and water wheel in position ready for the water about the middle of January 1872. I helped him to put up his flume. The people dug the race. I dug the portion running by my land (about 40 rods) myself. The mill was ready to start about the 20th of Jan. He wanted me to run it for him again on the same terms that I did on the Muddy. I agreed to do so. Although there was no bolt or smutter, we found it a great improvement on the old hand mill.

The winter was quite mild, and was improved in grubbing and preparing for spring crops. I built a hewed **log house** on my town lot (of pinion pine and cedars), as we could not get into the canons for good house logs.

In April Bishop Leithead went north to Farmington. It stormed a great deal in April. The first of May I commenced plowing for corn, and planted about 7 acres. I had bought a five acre lot of Frederick Christensen the fall previous and his grass lot and all his claim in Lydia's canon for which I afterwards paid him \$50.00 on the **Temple** then being built in **Saint George**. I traded the 5 acre lot I drew, for the one joining south of it. This brought my two fives together.

After planting my corn, my son David and I went to work for J. W. Young again getting out timber for his sawmill. We sowed wheat on our town lots and part of our five acre lots.

I will say here that while I lived at the Muddy I occasionally received letters from my Brothers David and George and also my Niece Louisa Wagoner Daughter of my sister Irene. After I came to Glendale and got settled I wrote to them with regard to my losses at the Muddy. The following is the **answer** I received **from George** dated at **Ypsilanti, Mich, Sept 17th 1871**.

Warren Foote, Dear Brother,

I received your welcome letter the 13th inst. I had written three letters to you, and began to think that you were not living. We are all well. David and family are also well. I regret very much the loss of your property. I know what it is for I have met with the same misfortune twice, and can sympathize with you, but after all we do not need much here, and that not long. The safest way is to have treasures laid up in Heaven. I trust you have, and if we do not see each other in this world, we may meet above. You will please write me on receipt of this and let me know how you like the country, and how you get along.

**P. 228** From your Brother, George L. Foote.  
**1872**

On the **9th day June 1872** my **wife Maria** had a son born. It was a very puny babe and **only lived about two weeks**. We called his name **Edwin Moroni**.

Bro. Leithead had returned from the north and with some others went to work on J. W. Young's sawmill. I finished hewing timber and worked some on the frame. I worked for him to the amount of \$81.50. We had showers occasionally, and did not have to frigate often. My corn grew very rapidly. We harvested our wheat the first of August. It was very smutty.

I now began to prepare to take my first wife and her children north to visit our daughter Nancy and our old neighbors at Union and others. I got David to attend to my corn and potatoes during my absence. We started on our journey on the **12th day of August** and drove a few miles below Asay's Ranch, where there was but little grass. I got up very early in the morning and discovered that my horses had taken the back track. I followed them about two miles before I found them and drove that day about thirty miles.

On the **14th** we arrived at Beaver a little after dark, and stopped with Warren Ferguson. I did not know that he was living there until I got to Beaver. He had moved from Round Valley.

On the **15th** I drove to Dog Valley and the **16th** to Fillmore and stopped with Sister Polly Hunstman, widow of James Huntsman. The **17th** we arrived at Scipio and put up with James A. Ivie. We traveled from this place to Sandy very pleasantly, where we arrived on the **21st** and found our daughter Nancy well. Homer was at the terminus of the railroad at the point of the mountain but returned home at night. Business was very brisk at Sandy and much hauling to be done between this place, and Granite, at the mouth of Little Cottonwood Canon.

I went right to freighting and followed it about one month and made considerable money. I generally got loads both ways and generally made from 4 to 6 dollars a day. Marion Brady worked with me about two weeks. He made from 6 to 8

dollars a day. He had a stout wagon and could take heavier loads than I could. My wagon was light and I durst not put on over 26 or 27 hundred. Marion and I had been very intimate friends when I lived in Union, and we greatly enjoyed ourselves while working together.

During my stay at Sandy we made a few visits to our old neighbors at Union and to Augusta Tanner's (my neice). I also went to Salt Lake City with Nancy a time or two on the cars. With the money I made while at Sandy, I purchased clothing and other necessary articles for my family which was a great help to us,-as we were very destitute. Nancy wanted Artemisia to stay with her and we finally concluded to let her stay. About the 23<sup>rd</sup> of September we started for home.

**P. 229** On arriving at Scipio James Ivie concluded to let me have a horse to work home in place of the mare I had used so long.  
**1872** The horse was old but seemed in good plight, and was large and stout.

From Round Valley I drove to Fillmore and stopped again with sister Huntsman. We arrived in Beaver the second day about noon after leaving Fillmore. I got some wheat at Scipio for horse feed and at noon today I fed my team about the usual quantity, but the old gray mare did not eat as much as usual, and as I fed them in one box, the old horse ate more than he ought too. After I had drove about six miles from Beaver he began to lag, but I drove on over the Beaver Ridge to where the Fremont Pass road turns off, thinking that he would soon get over what I supposed to be the cholic. James Ivie had told me that he was used to eating wheat and there was no danger in feeding it to him. I drove about one mile from the forks of the road, and when I took the harness off he lay down and began to roll and tumble about, and appeared to get worse very fast. Seeing his situation we thought it would be best to hitch up and drive back to the main road, so if he should die we would be where we would be able to see somebody. After I had unharnessed again I gave him some soda in water. Bro. Naile of Toquerville drove up and camped with us. There were two young men with him. They assisted me to doctor the horse, but it was of no use he died early in the morning. We felt pretty blue, we were 10 miles from Beaver on a dry desert.

We had some water in our keg and Bro. Naile let us have what he could spare. His son was going to near Glendale by the way of Panguitch to his herd of cattle. He said that he would take a letter for me to David. So I wrote to him stating our situation. I now saw that there was no other way only to go back to Beaver and get a horse to help haul us back there. I got on to old gray without any saddle and went as fast as I could, which was not very fast, but I got there about 10 o'clock, and as Warren Ferguson was not at home and his horses were some distance off. I went to Bishop John Murdock, and succeeded in getting a horse of him, and got back to my wagon about the middle of the afternoon.

On my way from Beaver I met a man who lived at Buckhorn Spring who was going to Beaver. He had known me at Little Cottonwood he said and had worked for me a few days on our mill. He advised me to drive to Buckhorn Spring which was 14 miles from my wagon and not drive back to Beaver. He had stopped at my wagon and had urged my wife also to go to Buckhorn. We finally concluded to do so, and arrived there at 11 o'clock at night. This man had told us to go to his place and get some hay for our horses.

**P. 230** After we were camped I went there but I could not get any, so I had to turn loose not knowing where I would find my  
**1872** strange horse in the morning. There was a wagon camped there where I stopped, and the young man told me to turn my horses on ahead a short distance and they would find grass. In the morning I found my horses not far away, for which I was very thankful. I now had to go back to Beaver to return the horse to Bishop Murdock. I found that this young man with the team was James Jones son by his second wife, who had left him. I told him that I was intimately acquainted with his father, (who was now dead.) I told him about loosing my horse and that I had to go back to Beaver with the one I had borrowed. He became very much interested, and told me that he was going to Beaver and would return in two days, and said I could ride with him in the wagon. I was very glad of this privilege, as my ride on horseback the day before without a saddle had nearly worn me out.

He was taking a woman and her children from Little Creek Saw Mill to Beaver. He also had a man with him who was working at the mill, a very heavy drinker, and a rough customer. We got to Beaver before night and I stopped at Warren Ferguson's. He was up above the Soldiers camp in the Cedars chopping wood in company with his wife's brother.

The next day I went up to their camp to see if I could get a horse to take me home. He came down with me, and his brother-in-law got up one of his (Warren's) horses for me to take to put by the side of old gray to haul us home. I rode back to Buckhorn Spring with young Jones. The man he had with him had got a keg of whiskey in Beaver and was pretty tipsey when we got to the spring.

I was now prepared to pursue my journey homeward, and our hearts was filled with gratitude to our Heavenly Father for

opening up the way before us. I had had a pretty hard time of it going back and forth to Beaver, but the Lord sustained me in giving me strength to endure it. Bro Jones took our children into his wagon, and we traveled up Little Creek canon to near the summit where his road forked to go to the Sawmill. Here we stopped and got supper. (We had nooned in the canon.) By this time his man was very drunk. He made out to get out of the wagon and laid down on the grass. Jones took supper with us and then tried to get the drunken man into the wagon, but could not, so he started his team as though he would leave him. This soon started him up. We drove over the divide, -down Bear Creek Valley and camped. The next day we got along very nicely, and just as we were getting to Panguitch we met David with a span of horses who was coming after us, not knowing where he would find us, but expected to have to go to Beaver. It was a joyful meeting to us all. We journeyed from this place to Glendale without any particular incident, and was glad to get home once more.

**P. 231**  
**1872**

David and my son Franklin had cut up my corn and shocked it in the field. It was a very heavy crop. I soon got an opportunity to send Warren Ferguson's horse to Beaver. After my return I took charge of the mill again. Bro. Leithead finished the building and got the smutter and bolt in operation, so I could do pretty good work. The grinding only occupied about two days in a week.

I bought a horse of Bryant Jolley of Mount Carmel for which I paid 80 bushels of corn. He was a very good, kind gentle horse, but not very tough, but it was the best that I could do. After getting through our falls work and getting my winters wood, David wanted to take his wife to Sanpete on a visit. He had no team so I let him take mine, and about the last of November he started with his wife and two children. He intended to leave them to visit during the winter. He went on to the terminus of the Utah Southern Railroad at Lehi, where Homer Bouton was employed as agent. He did some freighting and returned home in January 1873.

I made at the mill for my share 44-1/2 bushels of wheat and 61 bushels of corn in the year of 1872. I raised on my land about 350 bushels of corn and about 40 bushels of wheat and a very good crop of potatoes. I hired a yoke of oxen and wagon to haul my corn from the field of Bro Elijah Billingsly with wich I hauled the most of it. I then hired a yoke of oxen and wagon to haul the rest of it of Bro Joseph Allen. It took me and my boys Franklin and George until sometime in January to haul it. I got the squaws to husk the most of it.

Thus ended the year 1872. It was a very prosperous year for the people in this valley. Crops were good, and it was a general time of health. Joseph W. and John R. Young had their sawmill running and we could begin to get a little lumber, which was a great blessing to the people.

## CHAPTER 16

As before stated my son David returned from Lehi and Sanpete sometime in **January 1873**. Not long after I received a letter from Homer Bouton stating that he wanted to move to this place in the Spring and would like to have David come there and assist him in moving. He said that the business he was in was wearing him out &etc. Sometime in March, David received a letter from Alma H. Bennett (his wife's brother) Stating that **Emma** (David's wife) **had run off with James Porter** and had taken the youngest boy with her and left the oldest with him. This was shocking news to us. Porter was one of her old lovers, but they had quarreled, and he had left the country before David ever saw her. He returned to Mount Pleasant, where Emma was visiting, and it seems that the old love fire kindled anew and they planed to elope

**P. 232** keeping it secret from her brother. They went to Palisade, Nevada where Porter was making it his home. On hearing  
**1873** this we arranged our business as soon as possible so that David could go after his son, and move Homer Bouton to this  
**1874** place at the same time.

He left here the latter part of March or the first of April. After arriving at Lehi it took Homer some two weeks to get ready to move. They left Lehi on the **6th of May** and arrived at **Glendale the 22nd**. Our daughter Artemisia was glad to get home again and see Father and Mother. Homer Bouton moved into David's log cabin and David and his son Warren R. lived with us. I had put in three acres of wheat on my land for Homer, and David had put in an acre and an half of barley for him.

One year ago this spring I got fifty apple trees of John Oakly at Saint George, and set them out, part of them on my town lot and some on the west side of the creek where I intended to build a house for my wife Maria. I bought some sawed logs of Bro Wm. Black to build it. In the summer I moved her over there into a kind of tent which we fixed up with a wagon cover under a large cedar tree. I got the house up during the summer and moved into it. It was very comfortable. I covered it with shingles. I built close to the millrace where water was always handy. In the fall I hewed logs for a house for Homer 16 by 16 feet. He and David scored them. We built it on a town lot I got for him opposite mine on the east. I traded a small piece of land for the lot, Homer paying \$10.00 besides.

Warren Ferguson and family made us a visit in September. I received letters occasionally from my brothers and friends. There were some trouble between the old settlers who had returned to their places at Mount Carmel and the brethren from the Muddy, about land claims which Bishop Leithead and his councilors were called to settle, occasionally, and we were visited by Bro. E. Snow at times, so the year 1873 passed away without any special thing transpiring in this place more than I have related. I made at the Mill 181 bushels of wheat, 53 bus. of corn and 6 of barley. The **Temple was commenced** last spring **in St. George** and Joseph W. Young had moved to that place.

**Jan. 1874 President Brigham Young and Councilor George A. Smith are in St. George** spending the winter. They are preaching the necessity of entering into the **United Order**. The latter part of the winter they organized a United Order in Saint George with a constitution and bye laws, and advised all the settlements in Southern Utah to Organize also. Pres. Young authorized John R. Young to visit the settlements in Kanab and Long Valley and organize them. We organized  
**P. 233** in Glendale Ward under his directions. Bishop James Leithead was elected president. Andrew S Gibbons, myself,  
**1874** being Bishop's Consellers, and James Brinkerhoff and Homer A. Bouton were elected directors. Homer A. Bouton was also elected Secretary and I was elected Treasurer.

All who joined the Order put in their improved lands, farming utensils, horses, cattle, wagons, harness &etc. All the property was appraised by a committee and each one was credited as capital stock. Erastus S. Carpenter was appointed Superintendant of the farming labor, with some overseers to direct the labors of each gang, and keep an account of the work of each person. There were a few in the ward who did not join the order.

Spring opened very late, and it was April before they could commence putting in grain, but they were not long in putting in the small grain, for it being something new there was considerable enthusiasn. All the grain each individual had on hand was weighed and stored in the grist mill and put in my charge, and each one credited with the amount they deposited on my book, I then gave them a receipt which was taken to the secretary and placed to their credit on his book. Bishop Leithead did not put his mill into the order, and I continued to run it for two fifths of the tole. Consequently I did not individually work in the order, but my boys Franklin and George did.

I went down to St. George in April in company with David my son and Homer A. Bouton, also James Watson went with his team. Homer was sent down to settle tithing with the General Tithing office in St. George, while I was in St. George I tried to find out how the order should be run but did not find any person who knowed anything more than myself. Presidents Young and Smith had returned to Salt Lake City, and I found that the board was in session very often and

running up expenses without bringing any thing in to the order, causing considerable dissatisfaction with those who had to perform the manual labor. We left Homer in St. George and returned home. We had a cold disagreeable time coming home although it was the latter part of April.

I was kept busy at the mill a great part of the time grinding for the public, Kanab, Mt Carmel and this place. They were organized in those places, that is, the majority of the people were.

**P. 234** During the summer the enthusiasm began to cool off, and matters did not run as smoothly as at first, and complaints were made that some were not doing their share of work &etc. Brother Leithead very often came into the Mill, and talked the matters over pertaining to the United Order over with me. Every member expected to be fed and clothed out of the proceeds of their labor, and all their little ones provided for, and they looked for the president and board to do this. We saw plainly that it was a greater task than we were able to accomplish with the prospective proceeds of the labor or income of the order. And besides that the farming implements were wearing out and left scattered about, and no one seemed interested in taking care of them, and it looked as though things were going needlessly to destruction.

When haying time came, each person cut their own hay and hauled it to their homes. When the enthusiasm was at its highth, we selected a place to build stables and stack our hay and grain. But there was nothing hauled there but the grain. The people of Glendale United Order nearly all came to the conclusion that we were not far enough advanced to have all things common. I saw plainly that we could not keep up. Clothes were wearing out and shoes and boots would be wanting for winter and nothing to buy them with.

In **September** Bros, Erastus Snow, George Q. Cannon and M. Musser came to see us. They tried to encourage us. Bro Cannon said that we must try and bring the slothful and careless ones up to the level of those who were energetic and saving. But we found that in most cases it worked the other way. Those who were faithful and willing, began to be discouraged and to say that they were not willing to support the idler and careless.

It was finally decided to settle up and divide the grain raised according to the amount of labor that each individual performed and give the owners of the land one third of the crop. Homer A. Bouton and I were appointed to perform this labor. We worked every evening (Sunday excepted) for about six weeks. After taking out the rent of the land, we divided the balance according to the amount of labor performed. Thus we settled up the affairs of the Order without coming out in debt to any one. It would be interesting to show the amount each individual received but I have not the books, neither can I find them although I have made a diligent search for them. They are lost in someway.

**P. 235** Before we finally concluded to dissolve the Order, there was a convention held in St. George to establish uniform prices of produce &etc. in the various Orders. Bro William Swapp Sen and myself were chosen delegates to that convention. It lasted five days. Bro. Erastus Snow was chosen president. After a great deal of talk and discussion, prices were established, but they never amounted to any thing. I made at the Mill this year 246 bushels of wheat and 73 bushels of corn. **Thus ends 1874.**

**A. D. 1875** I continued running the grist mill, and with my boys run my farm also. In Feb. I received a **letter from my brother George dated Feb. 7th** in answer to one I wrote on the 21st of Jan. The following is a copy.

Dear Brother Warren, Yours of Jan 21st came duly to hand. I am very much obliged to you for writing and for the information of our old acquaintances. But you say nothing about Betsy's and Laura's children. Are none of them living in Utah?

We are all quite well. Charles E. and George E. live here. Frank S. is at home attending the University at Ann Arbor. He is in the law department. It is nine miles from here--goes on the cars in the morning and back at night. He was 21 last Nov.--had been in the Law Office in Chicago one year. He wished to attend Law School, so I sent him to Ann Arbor last fall,--it is a two years course. Mary Ann was at David's the first of Dec. and Frank was there at Christmas to Wm's (David's youngest son) wedding. They were all well. David's health is better than it was a year ago.

We have had rather hard times for a year past for poor folks--but little doing, but the crops about here were very good. But wheat goin--down to a dollar per but makes money scarce and business dull. My business is affected very much by hard times. I have done but a small amount of new business last year. My old business brings me in about one thousand dollars a year, so that I could have gone to Salt Lake if I did not have to help my boys.

But I hope I may be able to go and see you yet.. Please let me know who of our connexion and acquaintance live in Salt Lake City. I will endeavor to write oftener.

We have had a very cold winter so far--dry summer and fall, and but little snow this winter, that is here. West in this State there is an abundance. We have had about two weeks very good sleighing, and continuel cold weather since winter set in. Ice in the river is now about two feet thick in fact the river is nearly frozen dry, so that the mills cannot do half their usual work. Your affectionate **brother Geo. L. Foote**.

**P. 236  
1875**

The last of February I received a **letter** from my **niece Augusta Tanner** my sister Almira's daughter. She writes that her father's third wife died in Jan. 1874 her name was Sarah and that her father had married another who was seven times worse than Sarah. It seems that his last wives have been very abusive to my sister Almira=s children. But they are all grown up and married. Augusta also writes that John Tanner, her husband has about three thousand shares in the Evergreen mine in Big Cottonwood Kanion, and expects big results.

About the **first of April** I received a **letter from my Niece Louisa Wagoner**, My Sister Irene's oldest daughter, living in Aledo Ill. The following is a copy.

Aledo **March 14th 1875:**

Dear Uncle

We received your welcome letter, and was glad to hear that you and family were all well. Mother's health is pretty good for her. She lives with me yet. Harrison is in Iowa. He writes that he is going to make us a visit next month. Mother went out to Moline to Emily's this fall and staid nine weeks. We live about thirty miles apart. Her family was all well two weeks ago. She has three little girls.

March 19th I will try to finish this letter.

It has been so stormy this week that our folks have not been to town. We live four miles from the P. O. We have had a very cold winter here and it is pretty cold yet. Mother says she would like to see you, and so would I. Mother sends her love to you and family. I put that letter of yours away, and could not find it until this winter, so you must excuse me for not writing before, for I forgot your address. The friends are all well as usual. Write as soon as you get this. I remain your affectionate Niece Give my love to all. **Signed Louisa Wagoner**.

I have been **writing** to some persons in the east by the name of Foote with regard to the **Foote Geneology** which I am anxious to get hold of (as the **Temple in St. George** is getting pretty well along) so that I can do the work for my dead relatives when the Temple is completed.

In looking over the columns of the New York Sun, I saw the sale of the pews in Henry Ward Beecher's Church in Brooklyn N. Y. and came across the name of a Mr. Foote the Nephew of Mr. Beecher's. I at once wrote to Beecher with a request to hand the **letter** to this Mr. Foote. The following is the answer to my enquiries.

**Brooklyn Apr 18th 1875.** Warren Foote Esq. Dear Sir; Your letter of Jan 28th 1875 to my cousin Rev. Henry Ward Beecher has been handed to me by him. Of course we are descended from the same Nathaniel Foote who settled in Wethersfield.

There is a **Foote Geneological Book, published in 1849 by Case, Tiffany & Co Hartford Conn.** In it on page 192 I find the following record which corresponds with your account. (Then follows the Record of my Grand Father Ebenezer Foote's family.) Now I cannot tell you where you can obtain one of the Foote Geneological Books.

My father George Augustus Foote of Guilford, Conn. now 86 years old has one, and H. W. Beecher has one here in Brooklyn and there are several others scattered about among the Foote Family generally. I'll try to find one for you.

I am Married, have been to sea for 15 years of my life, but two years ago, fell in love with (as Sailors do sometimes) Lucy Bullard, Niece of H. W. Beecher (on his wife=s side) married her with his assistance, and have one boy 20 months old tomorrow.

**P. 237  
1875**

How did you come to stray away to Utah? I have no business to ask though, after being a rover all over the world for 15 years. I am one of ten children, all living except George A. Jr. who died from wounds in the late war. My eldest sister is the wife of Gen. Jos.' Hawley of Hartford Conn. One Bro, Andrew Ward, lives at Guilford Conn. One lives in Florida with Mrs. H. B. Stowe, one sister married James H. Hague a mining Engineer, now living in San Francisco. My youngest brother Arthur is also an Engineer there. Another brother, Will, is in Guilford with my father, one sister Kate also there,

and my youngest sister, Lizzie is spending this winter with us in Brooklyn. I shall be happy to hear from you again. Tell me as much about yourself as you can, your family & etc.

We are having a tremendous fight here, but Mr. Beecher, (than whom no better man lives,) by the grace of God will come out victorious. He credits the Foote blood in his veins with being the best producer of his best thoughts and hugs us all with might and main. We who know him best, have perfect faith in him. His people love and reverence him. In fact knowing all the parties in this controversy, we are satisfied of his entire innocence of the charge brought against him by Tilton. With kindest respects to yourself and family,

My address is Samuel E. Foote, Fisher & Co. 8 Coeetus Slip New York City. The **following** is **my answer** to the foregoing letter. **Glendale Kane Co. Utah June 11th 1875**

Cousin Samuel E. Foote, Dear Sir,

I received your kind letter in answer to my enquiries with grateful feeling, and thank you sincerely for the interest you manifest in trying to obtain the **Foote Geneological-Book** for me. You wish to know something with regard to myself and family, and what brought me to Utah. My father embraced the gospel as taught by the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints in Greenwood Steuben Co. N. Y. in the fall of 1833, and was a member of that church until his death, which took place near Nauvoo Hancock Co. Ill. on the 22nd day of August 1845, I also believed in the same gospel, and have been with the same church since 1834.

That is what brought me to this country. My father had twelve children, eight girls and four boys. I am next to the youngest who died in infancy. My other brothers David, and George Lane, live in Michigan. David lives in Flint, Genesee Co. and George L. lives in Ypsilanti Washtenaw Co. David will be 64 years old next Aug. George L 61 last Apr. My sisters are all dead but one. She lives in Aledo Mercer Co. Ill. She is about 73. I will be 58 years old the 10th of next Aug. I have 11 children living six boys and five girls. My oldest son, David, has two sons. I also have daughters married,--all living here. I would like to know how far back your branch of the Foote Family and mine runs before they connect, and also where does Mr. Beacher=s come in.

**P. 238**  
**1875**

I wish you to tell Cousin Beecher that I have carefully read all the testimony in his case, as published in the N.Y. Sun and have felt to sympathize with him, for I believe him to be a persecuted man, and I assure you I know how to sympathize with the persecuted. I have read many of the sayings of Mr. Beecher, and admire them much. It seems to me that his great mind could not be confined within the narrow limits of sectarianism. But it has burst forth and grasped many eternal and sublime truths, which are far in advance of the Clergy of the day. His views appear very liberal. I have never seen any disposition manifested in his sayings or writings to persecute those who do not believe just as he does.

Whatever the verdict of the jury may be in his case it will make no difference with my views. I am satisfied he is a God fearing man, his enemies will fall in the pit they have dug for him I, also fear God, who has delivered me from many troubles, and am willing to receive truth from any source--knowing that all truth emanate with God.

As far as my knowledge of the Footes extend, they have independence of spirit enough to think for themselves, and our fathers fought to establish the constitution of these United States, wherein civil and religious freedom are guaranteed to all. I do not think that their posterity are so degenerated as not to maintain that freedom.

My Grandmother died at my father's house in Dryden N. Y. instead of uncle Simeon's. I remember her death well. She and her husband, Ezekiel Sanford had been living with father, I think about two or three years. Uncle Simeon moved from there into Pennsylvania where he died. My father married Irene Lane daughter of Nathan Lane of Windsor, Broome Co. N. Y. **one of her brothers George Lane was a noted Methodist preacher**, and about 20 years ago was an agent of the Methodist General Book Concern in New York City. I do not know where he went to from there. Please write again. Accept of my respects for yourself and family, Warren Foote.

Sometime in the forepart of this season **Bishop Leithead** desired to be **released** from the Bishoprick of Long Valley and **Howard O. Spencer** was sent **from Salt Lake City** to take his place. He came sometime in the summer, and as we were not working in the **United Order** in Glendale he passed on down to Mt. Carmel and joined the Order there. He proved to be very enthusiastic and looked upon us in Glendale almost as apostates because we broke up our order. There were two parties in Mt. Carmel. Nearly one half of the people had withdrawn from their Order there. The parties were not able to agree as to the division of their property. They finally agreed to leave it to arbitrators. They chose one from each side and they were to choose one from Glendale. They came up for Bro. Leithead, but he refused to go, and proposed to send me, which was accepted by them. This was about the 22nd of July. Bro. Allen Frost was arbitrator for the Order and

**P. 239** Bro. Elijah Billingsly for the party called Bryant Jolley=s party. Bro Heaton was the manager for the Order, and Bro  
**1875** Jolley for the other party. We found it a very difficult thing to settle and was very busy at it for three days. We tried to do justice for all concerned and I think we did according to the evidence obtained. But I do not think that all were satisfied. I never received a cent for my time spent which was four days. This was before Bro. Spencer came here.

In Sept. I received the following **letter from my Nephew Darius S. Clement.**

**Fairview Sanpete Co. Utah Sept 5th 1875**

Dear Uncle,

It is with sad feelings that I attempt to write and inform you of the **death** of Sister **Mary Irene**. She died two weeks ago to day Aug. 22nd of what they call Billious Cramp Cholic. She was taken with it the Wednesday night previous, about midnight, and with scarcely any food or sleep, she lingered in great distress until she breathed her last Sunday evening at a quarter past nine. According to her request I telegraphed to Thomas to come, also to her oldest daughter Nancy, who had gone on a visit to Dixie. This was on Sunday afternoon. She did not have much to say, but seemed to feel that she was going to die. She was buried Tuesday.

In consequence of the trains not connecting at Salt Lake City, Thomas did not get here until Tuesday night about midnight. Having hired a conveyance from the terminus he was obliged to start home the next day. He left a sick child at home. Nancy did not hear of her mother's death until at Parowan on her way home. She told her mother when she went away that she expected that she would work and make herself sick, and afterwards wrote and cautioned her about working too hard. When she got home and missed her mother, she was deeply affected, and blamed herself for going away. She was a great help and comfort to her mother.

**12th** After a week has passed, I will try and finish my letter.

I have been kept very busy early and late during the past week with grinding. This has been my occupation ever since I have been here, though not of my own seeking.

Last Dec. the mill was turned into the order, and afterwards assigned to me, with all the business pertaining to it, as a kind of stewardship, which, though not a first class concern, gives me plenty to do. I can say that I feel much better working in the new order of things than in the old way. Often reflecting on the circumstances which led me to come here, and the singular manner in which the way was opened, affording employment by which I could benefit myself and others, I think of my first lessons (in milling) received under your instruction, which has been a great help to me. Generally my health has been better since leaving the Dixie country, though the bitter cold of the long and tedious winters here is rather  
**P. 240** too much for me. I would like very much to hear from you. My best respects to you all. **D. S. Clement.**  
**1875**

During the spring and summer, **James Maxwell** and **Jacob Minchey** kept **goods at my wife Maria's house** for her to sell, taking butter, eggs, &etc in exchange. I kept a strict account of every thing.

Towards fall they wanted me to take quite a stock of goods to sell. There was but one room in Maria's house, so I thought that I would take the goods to my first wife's house there being more room and made arrangements accordingly. As soon as they found out that I was going to take the goods there, they and Maria objected.

Not being willing to be dictated by them what I should do or not do, I refused to have their goods on my premises at all, or to have any thing to do with them. Maria got very mad, and made some threats, but seemed to be about as usual, after her passion was over.

I have always wished to treat my wives impartially and it was not for benefiting my first wife and family more than my second that I wanted to take the goods there, but it was on account of more room, and more convenient to the public. In fact I never consulted my first wife about it, as I supposed that I was the head, and was able to judge in these matters.

In keeping goods for Maxwell and Minchey, they very often stopped there in passing to and fro, which lead to an acquaintance with the Minchey family and also the Degraws.

Maxwell had two of Sister Degraw's daughters for wives, and some three years before this when living at Mt. Carmel they were sick and Maxwell came up and wanted Maria to go down and take care of them. I consented to let her go for a week or two. This was her first acquaintance with them.

Maxwell was a rough character and kept rather a rough set about him, although they professed to be Saints. Maria was never the same after this, but began to be rebellious and unwilling to listen to my counsel in many things as she did before.

She began to drink in a very rebellious spirit after I refused to keep the goods. But there was no particular outbreak until the following spring, which I will relate hereafter.

During this year I furnished **James A Little** of Kanab (who in company with **R. J. Cutler** had a large herd of sheep) with a large amount of flour for which I was to receive wool in the following spring. I also bought orders on the Washington factory of various ones to the amount of about \$100.00.

In December my son George and I went to St. George and came back by the Factory and got cloth for dresses, and jeans for myself and boys, which made us very comfortable for the winter.

On the second day of Dec 1875 my daughter **Mary Irene** was married to **Morton Brigham Cutler** of this place. He is the son of **Royal J. and Theodus Cutler**. He was married by his father. They lived with us during the winter. I made at the mill this year 284 bushels of wheat and 113 bushels corn.

**P. 241**  
**1875**

I will now copy some more letters I received this year. I want them on record.

On **Dec 17th 1874** I wrote to **Redman S. Davis** an old neighbor, in **Greenwood N. Y.** For the purpose of obtaining the date of the birth and death of Mary E. Porter, his wife's sister. In the winter of 1836 & 37 we went to school together in Greenwood and fell in love, and although we were both young we promised to have each other at some future time.

She did not belong to the church of Latter Day Saints neither did any of her folks. In the fall of 1837 my father moved to Ohio, so we were parted. Having heard that she was dead, I desire to have her sealed to me for eternity. In answer, I received the following letter.

Greenwood Jan 1st 1875

Friend Foote; I received your letter of Dec. 17th. Found us all in good health. Mary E. Porter was born in McLean Tompkins Co. N. Y. Feb 2nd 1824. Her father Nathaniel Porter was born in Boston Mass. Her mother Lydia Porter was born in Jersey. Mrs Porter died in April 1843 and Mary E. Married a widower, Mr. Clawson in July 1843 and died the following October. Mr. Porter died twelve years ago last Sept. Wm. Porter died 25 years ago last Aug. James Porter died 15 years ago last spring-- Wm . Richardson was killed five years ago last winter, going home late and was drunk. He got fastened in his sled and his cattle drawed him home two miles and was dead when found. My sister Mary died eight years ago last Sept.

The last news from Dryden, Thadeous Pease and Michael Betts were well. Pease was 96 years old July 17th 1874. John Butcher and wife live on -the farm where they began. John Davis is in the same business as when you left here and is doing a good business selling goods. I have eight children the eldest 44 the youngest 23. I have 23 grandchildren and two great grandchildren.

The 22nd day of April 1825 I landed on this farm. If I stay here until next April 22nd it will be 50 years and I am about worn out...We have a Universalist church, a Methodist, and Catholic in our town, and a new schoolhouse for three teachers in our district with 100 scholars.

Please write if you receive this, and ask Ben Pendleton to write to me. Remember my best respects to all enquiring friends. Yours Truly **R. S. Davis**.

The Wm. Richardson mentioned above is a cousin of mine, Aunt Lowly's son, and John Dutcher's wife is also a cousin, the daughter of Uncle Eliasoph Sanford, my father's half brother. Mr. Pease was a middle aged man when I was a small boy and a close neighbor. So also was Mr. Butts. They live in Dryden where I was born.

The following **letter** is from **my brother David dated Feb. 14th 1875. Flint Mich.** Dear Brother Warren; I have just received a letter from George, with one enclosed from you, and I assure you I was glad to hear from you once more. It is a long time since we had any correspondence, which is altogether my fault or negligence. I have often thought I would write, but I finally lost track of your address, and then I thought I had good excuse for not writing.

Myself and folks are in usual health at present. My health has been very poor for the past two years, until last fall I began to get better, so that now my health is about as good as usual. I went out into the country about 20 miles two years ago  
**P. 242** last May to work on a steam Saw Mill and stayed there until Oct. When I was taken with chills and fever, which with

1875 other difficulties kept me down until last fall.

My wife's health is rather poorly, she has lost about fifty pounds of flesh within the last few years which makes her very thin.

Our children are all living here in Flint. Warren C. is in the picture business and has been doing well. Times are rather dull at present. He has made himself a good home, and has established a good reputation for the business. William H. our youngest son, works for Warren at the picture business,--he will be 21 years old next June, and was married last Christmas eve. So you see he has commenced the married life pretty young but I hope it is all for the best. He and his wife are boarding with us at the present. Albert E. is with us at present. He has been clerking in a store for the last six or eight years but is out of work at present. Mary E. our only daughter is here in town, She married a man by the name of Charles A. Muma. He is a traveling agent for a grocery firm in Detroit, and getting \$1500.00 a year, and his expenses paid on the road. So you see he is in a fair way to make something if he sticks to it. They have four children, three girls and one boy, and I think as nice children as I ever saw.

Flint is a very thriving and pretty place of from 8,000 to 10,000 inhabitants, and strangers coming here say they think it is the smartest place of its size in Michigan. They are building a Union Schoolhouse which will cost with the grounds about \$125,000.

I will send you a picture of it as soon as I can. There are two Methodist Churches here, with about 350 members each. We have a very smart preacher in ours, and is well liked by every body. You see I have filled this sheet, and have written but little news. I hope you will write as soon as you get this and let us know all about yourself and family and all our friends there. Give my love to all, and I remain your affectionate Brother, David Foote

The following is **from David's wife dated, Flint, Feb 15th 1875.** Dear Brother Warren; In looking over some old letters, I came across one of yours written to George over a year ago, requesting the record of the Foote Family. As we had the one George copied from the book, I have copied it and David has sent it to you. You ask the record of our family, and particularly the birth and death of our son who was killed in the--war. 25th. I have copied the record of our family and will send it in this.

We were very glad indeed, to hear from you, although it came second handed. I do not blame you at all for not writing to us, for David has been shamefully negligent, but he very seldom writes to any one, he says he will but still neglects. I cannot tell when we wrote to you last, Irene was here nearly seven years ago and made us a visit of ten weeks. I suppose she is still living.

**P. 243** We have had an exceedingly cold winter thus far,-- have had considerable snow, and are just now having the first thaw.  
**1875** The thermometer has been below zero a good many days and nights; sometimes as low as 28 or 30. We are glad to have it a little warmer) but March is to come yet.

David's health has been very poor for about two years, but he has been better for the last six months, so that he has worked about home making furniture and improving our home I should like very much to see you all, but probably never shall unless-you come here, for I am sure we never shall get so far away.

A year ago last Sept. we went to Ypsilanti and made a visit of three weeks, and enjoyed it very much. The Detroit Conference met in Ypsilanti at that time. Next fall the Conference meets in Flint.

Mary Ann was here in Nov. and staid a week. George did not come. It is pleasant to live where we can exchange visits once in a while. We would like to have your picture. The one we have is so small. We will send ours as soon as we can. I have none of mine. I hope we shall hear from you often. Your sister Mary.

On the 26<sup>th</sup> of Sept. I wrote to **Redman S. Davis**, to see if **Dimis Dutcher** could send me her Father's Family Record. I **received the following from him and Dimis.**

**Greenwood Oct. 18<sup>th</sup> 1875**

Yours of Sept 26th found us in general health, and was read with pleasure by a number of your old friends. **Dimis Dutcher** wished me to write to you. They have lived on the farm alone for ten years past with occasionally a grand child or hired hand. The will gives her full possession while she lives. John Dutcher (her husband) died Feb 27th 1875. He had no sickness--seemed to be unwell a few days before he died--would not have a doctor called in to see him. He was 75 years old. (The following is from Dimis) Ezekial Sanford was born in 1745, and died in 1831 at Soton Sanford's in Springwater Livingston Co. N. Y. Elisaph Sanford, son of Ezekiel was born in Lebanon, New London Co. Connecticut, 20th day of

Nov. 1785. Rebecca Wheeler his wife was born in Croyden Sullivan Co. New Hampshire Dec 8th 1780. They were married in Dryden Dec 12th 1804, on his father's 60th birthday. Elisaph Sanford died March 1870 in Nunda Livingston Co. N. Y. at his son Thomas' house. Rebecca his wife died 23rd of Dec. 1860. Children, Dimis Born 22nd Sept 1805 Married John Dutcher. Soton, born 11th Sept 1807 was killed Jan. 1st 1861. He was run over by a wagon loaded with wood. He had 12 children. Lyman Sanford, born 1st Sept. 1809. Lucy born 6th Sept. 1811, been dead 18 years. Cloe born May 6th 1814, Married David Goldsmith, lives in Michigan has 10 children. Rachel born Apr 1st 1816 has been dead 15 years, had five children. Thomas born July 12th 1818, lives in Nunday N. Y. Lyinus born Feb 5th 1821 lives in Springwater N. Y. Elisaph Jr, Born Feb 10th 1824 lives in Prattsburgh Steuben Co. N. Y. John, Born Dec 16th 1827 been dead 30 years. Aunt Cloe Reed father's half sister three years older than father has been dead 8 years last March.

**P. 244**  
**1875** I am an old fashion Jos. Smith Mormon. I do not believe in Brigham Young=s polygamy. I take young Jos. Smith=s Herald and Sunday School papers, and they are opposed to polygamy. Why did not God take all of Adams ribs and make women. Then polygamy would have been right. I think that if God had had a Turk and Mormon to have advised with, all the ribs would have been made up to order, but the sequel shows that God was infinitely wise.

A man out west goes to see his girl falls in love--is married both for time and eternity. The eastern man goes to see his girl falls in love is married until death parts them contract fulfilled in time. Now what is your hope for eternity. When this body dies, it is buried in the ground, dust to dust, ashes to ashes, but the spirit will go to the God who gave it. Then this mortal shall put on immortality, this corruption put on incorruption, then shall come to pass the saying, O, death where is thy sting; O, grave where is thy victory. But thanks be to God who giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ. **Yours Truly Dimis.**"

I answered the forgoing letter very lengthily and told her the hope I had of eternal life and explained to her the principle of Celestial Marriage as revealed to Joseph Smith the Prophet. What she writes in the foregoing letter shows her's and Davis' ignorance with regard to that law, and the principles of the gospel.

I worked at the mill all through this year and made 216 bus. of wheat and 100 bus of corn. The winter of 1875 and 1876 was a very hard winter and snow was very deep on the divide, which made our mails very irregular.

Ben Minchey was caught on this side of the mountain and made his home at my wife Maria's house. I discovered before the winter was over that he was courting my daughter Olive. I was very much opposed to it, but I found that Maria encouraged him. As the fellow pretended to be sick, I did not feel like driving him away, but I was very glad when the weather got so that he could leave.

My objection to him was this. He was a stranger to me and there were some reports of his character which was not creditable to him. I commanded Olive to not make any engagements with him until we knew more about him. But her mother seemed determined that they should be married. In the spring he was back again occasionally. He found out that I was opposed to letting him have my daughter, and Maria told him not to ask me for her because I would insult him if he did.

She concealed his visits from me all she could. I talked with Olive, and she promised me that she would not have him. Maria's rebellious spirit caused me much trouble, for I felt that she was bringing herself and daughter into trouble, which the sequel will show. During the past year I have been furnishing James A. Little with flour for wool. On the 9th of March 1876 I settled with him and found due me two hundred and eleven dollars, and thirty five cents, to be paid in wool at one cent less than the price at the Beaver Woolen Factory.

**P. 245**  
**1876** This being the Centennial year (1876) of the Declaration of American Independence, they are holding a Centennial Exhibition in Philadelphia which is attracting the civilized nations of the Whole world. It is represented to be a grand affair.

A great many hands are at work finishing the inside of the **Temple in St. George.**

I concluded to take my wool to Salt Lake City to sell, and as Bro **Charles S. Cram** was going to take his second wife and children to that place, we agreed to go in company. I took my wife **Artemisia S.** And little son **Homer** and started about the 2nd day of July and went as far as Little's Ranch and loaded up 1100 lbs of wool. Bro Cram met me at this place, where we staid over night. We were ten days on our journey to Salt Lake. I found that wool had fallen to ten cents per pound, but I succeeding through the influence of Bro Joseph Felt to get eleven cents in goods, at wholesale prices and some articles below that price. So it will be seen that I lost 13 cents per lb. besides the freight by the fall of price on wool.

We visited my niece **Augusta Tanner**, and the old neighbors that were left **at Union** and then started on our way home. I drove from Union to American Fork and staid over night with Bro. Cram's wife's brother-in-law. I took breakfast with Bro. Reuben Broadbent next morning and then drove to Pleasant Grove and visited **David Adamson** until next day. Bro Cram came up with us and we continued our journey homeward.

We passed through Payson on the morning of the 24th of July, as they were gathering at that place to celebrate that day.

We arrived home without any mishap and found all well. We were about one month in performing the journey. After I returned I went to work at milling again.

The latter part of August Joseph Sanders and wife came up from North Creek (near Virgin City) and made us a visit. He is a cousin to my wife Maria. We got my daughter Olive to go home with them, as Ben Minchey was still after her. They thought that they could get her off the notion of marrying him. After she had been there some time she wrote to me that she had given up having him.

About the 18th of Nov. Joseph Sanders brought her home, and through the influence of her mother and Minchey's secret visits, she consented to marry him, and on the night of the **26th of November**, Minchey got young Jim Little to come over from his ranch and marry them in the dead hours of the night.

P. 246  
1876

Now all these transactions were kept a profound secret from me. In a week or so after they were married my wife went over to Ben Minchey's father's pretending to go on a visit. She took my little sons John Ammon and Charles L. With her. After she had been gone a few days, my son Franklin told me that Olive and Ben were married. Olive was still at her mother's house, I went over there and gave her such a talking to as she never had before, and Franklin also, because he was knowing to all these things and, in fact was an accomplice in rebelling against my authority. I said that their mother would have to suffer for her rebellion, and she should bear the sin of their disobedience to me, because she had influenced them to disobey me. A few days after this a team was sent over from Minchey=s for Olly and her things. I went over to the house in the morning that they were to start and found that they had packed up all the things that Maria had left,-- dishes, clock, stove &etc ready to load in the wagon. I made them unpack all but Olives own clothing, and told them that I would take care of the other things. They were very much disappointed.

Franklin had sometime previous asked me if I had any objection to his marrying Ben's sister Emiline. I told him I had not. Whether his mother wanted him to have the use of them during her absence or whether she was intending to leave me for good I could not tell at that time, but I found out afterward.

Now I had intended in Nov. to go down to the Washington Factory and get some cloth for our winter clothing, as I had quite an amount due me there. But the spirit impressed me not to go, but to send down by my son David. I found out afterwards why I was so impressed. I had five hogs fattening at Maria's place, and I learned that they, and Ben were intending to kill them as soon as I was gone and take them and what other things they could get hold on and clear out. But they failed.

On Christmas day my son James Franklin and Emiline F. Minchey were married at Hillsdale. Franklin came over soon after and said that he with his mother and Ben Minchey were going to Round Valley to visit his mother's folks. I told him I had no objections and gave him some pork and some corn to feed their animals on their journey.

On the **25th of Nov.** I bought a cow and a 2 year old mare colt of a man moving to Arizona, for which I paid 8 bus. of wheat and 22-1/2 bus. corn. I named the colt Jane. This proved to be a good investment. I raised 100 bus of wheat machine measure, and about 100 bus corn. I made in the mill about 230 bushels of wheat and 9 of corn. Thus ends 1876, a year of trouble and anxiety to me.

## CHAPTER 17

**1877** I am still running the gristmill. I have been writing to various persons in the eastern states, to find out if there are any of the **A Foote Genealogy's** that can be obtained. In answer to a letter that I sent to the "**Case, Lockwood & Brainard Co.** Hartford Conn. I received the following letter.

Mr. Warren Foote, Glendale, Kane Co. Utah. Hartford Conn. Feb. 15<sup>th</sup> 1877

Dear Sir, Your favor of the 31st ult. is at hand. A man was in our office within a few days saying he had a copy of the Foote Genealogy. But it did not occur to me that you wanted one. I can however get it at any time, and will do so if you desire. The price is five dollars. I will await your further advice before getting it.

**P. 247**

**1877** Very Truly L. Brainard.

I felt to thank the Lord that I had at last got track of one that I could obtain. I immediately forwarded the five dollars. The **Temple is completed** so they can dedicate it preparatory to commencing work for the living and the dead. President Brigham Young and George A. Smith are in Saint George this winter, and will inaugurate the work. They gave notice that the General Conference will be held in the Temple at Saint George.

About the first of **March 1876** I received the following **letter from Franklin Allen**. It has been a long time since I have heard from him. It is in answer to one I wrote. (This should have been in the previous Chapter, but I overlooked it.)

**Bertram, Linn Co. Iowa Feb 21st 1876**

Dear Uncle, I am glad to have the chance to write to you. We received your kind letter, and was glad to hear from you. We thought you were all dead or had forgotten us. We are all well and hope this will find you the same. We are keeping a dry goods and grocery store and boarding house. I had to go at that business after I lost my hand. We are making a good living at it. Our family are all living that we had when we left you but Lovina and the baby. Lovina died three years ago and left three little girls... We have had fourteen children and nine are living,--three married. We have seven grandchildren. Our youngest will be four years old the 28th of July next. Rebecca wants Sidnie to write to her. I will close as it is a hard matter to write with my left hand. Write soon. From Franklin Allen.

The latter part of March I received the following **letter from my cousin Moses F. Clauson**. He is the person that I mention in my journal when I drove stage in Illinois.

**Salem Iowa March 8th 1897**

Dear Cousin Warren, I was real glad to get another letter from you. It is true that I have used you real mean in not answering your letter last summer. I thought that I would write to you when I got back from the Centennial Exhibition I had forgotten you wrote in Oct. and was real glad to hear from you, and intended to answer right away, but I was very busy after I got back. I built a new cattle shed and hay barn. The shed is 24 feet wide, 12 feet posts, 144 feet long. Barn 56 feet long and 32 wide, 20 feet posts. Under all is a cattle rim, with hay boxes to feed in. We have a horse barn 36 by 48 with room for about 30 tons of hay over head. I think that we have room for 100 tons of hay, and plenty of crib room for corn. These buildings are all good solid frames, but enough of this.

We are in tolerable health. I am not very strong, I guess I need rest both for body and mind. If there had not been so many "Ifs" in the way I would have went out to see you last fall, one was we had talked of going to the fair for the last year and my wife thought she could not give up going and another Aif@ was, we had lost so much last year, it seemed as if I could not spare the money and time. This past year we have not raised anything but hay on account of wet weather.

**P. 248**

**1877** It will cost me about \$700.00 to carry our stock through this. Should we raise a good crop this coming year we will in part retrieve our losses. We have had to run in debt some, but hope we will get out before long.

I do not know anything of the Greenwood friends. We got a letter from one of Aunt Betsy's grand children. They were all well. Uncle Stephen Wilmot and Aunt Betsy are both living. We have heard from Turner lately (Eliza Richardson's husband) they were all well. They have two boys and are both married. They are well off.

Ebenezer Clauson lives at Pleasant Vale, called now, New Canton. I have not seen him for a little more than a year. I have not been up to see Franklin Allen yet, nor have I written to him, but I think I will this week. I mean to go and see him sometime. Cold weather set in very early here, and lasted until the first of Feb. and then warm until the first day of March, and has been cold and stormy ever since. The mercury is 15 below freezing as I write 3 o'clock P. M. Times are real hard here at this time.

Now I would like to have you write the names and places where your brothers and sisters live I think you said that one of your sisters lives in Warren Co Ill. That is nearly opposite us, about 35 miles from here. Which sister is it that lives there.

How I wish you could come out here, and visit your brothers and sisters.. We are living on the direct route that you would most likely travel on. We could then have a good time visiting. I was looking on a map and wondering if you are living on the Colorado river. Please tell me what stream you are living on, and give me a description of the country, the climate, soil, its products, timber, and your nearest place of market, and anything else you think will interest me. I have wanted to go to Colorado, "Pike's Peak" and vicinity. Is there a road running from Pike's Peak to your place.

You wanted to know how I feel about our early teaching. I am so poor a hand to write my thoughts, that I will hardly try to say what they are, they are badly mixed up. I suppose if I could see you and have a long talk, it may be I could give some idea of my mixed up thoughts, for they are hardly settled convictions.

Now Cousin you can hardly believe how glad I would be to see you. You always done me good when I was with you.

I don't know as I ever told you of my father's death. He died in Jackson Miss. in 1859. He lived with us one summer. Do you know anything of my mother, whether she is living or not, and where she was the last you knew of her. Now Cousin I will try and answer all your letters. Give our love to all your family. Your affectionate Cousin, M. F. Clauson.

**P. 249**

On the 19th day of Feb. I wrote to the **Postmaster at Dryden** to see if I could learn anything of Hyrum McLean's Children. I received the following answer.

**Dryden March 12th 1877**

Mr. Warren Foote, Esq. Dear Sir; Your letter of the 19th of Feb. came duly to hand. In answer would say. I have passed your letter around to all the older inhabitants of Dryden. Hiram McLean died 2 or 3 years ago at Rock Island Ill. at his son-in-law's Matthew Johnson. One of the girls married D. Givens in Dryden Village, Another married Robert Seager, all in fair-circumstances. Warren McLean, Hiram's oldest son, lives about 3 miles east of here. I suppose you remember the Houpts, Henry Haupt says, he and you went to school together. They are men in fair circumstances and "Democrats." David J. Baker and wife remember you, and seemed quite interested in your letter. Darius Clement taked that he knew you well. In fact I stirred up quite a large number of your friends and acquaintances. It is possible you may have quite a correspondence.

I will now give you the history of the Tucker family. Orin is now seated at my left dictating the same. The Tucker boys are all dead except Orin. The girls are all living except Emiline. There is but one of the girls living here, which is Mary who married a man by the name of Dupee. Mr. Tucker died 26 years ago last June, and Mrs. Tucker died some 20 years ago. I suppose you knew the James H. Hurd family. They are all dead except the old lady and the youngest daughter who was born about the time you left here. Uncle Thaddeus Pease died about two years ago, at the good old age of 96 or 97 years. John Burch is still living on the farm known as the "Thad Pease farm." You will also remember the Asa M. White family that lived on the corner. Mr. White has been dead some years. Mr. White died last year. Harriet White married A. Benjamin. He died two years ago. Mariah White lives in this place and married John C. Lacy. The boys live in Cander, Tioga Co. -N. Y. and one of them is quite wealthy. Orin Tucker says you cannot help remembering the "White boys" as they used to train in your Military Company.

As I have exhausted my paper, I shall recommend you to Orin Tucker and as many others of your friends as you think best. Orin Tucker says he wishes you would give him a history of the Foote family from the time of their leaving Dryden until now. Respectfully yours, D. C. Gardner, P. M. Dryden.

In reading the foregoing letter I was carried back to my youthful days. The boys and girls mentioned were my school mates, and the "Military Co." was our boys trainings. I was elected Captain. O how we used to charge the mullen stalks. In a few days after receiving the foregoing, I received a **letter from Warren McLean**, (my namesake) as follows.

**Dryden March 17th 1877**

Dear Uncle, as I may so call you. You wrote to Dryden to find out where Hiram McLean and his family are, I will answer. Father died in Illinois in 1875, 4th July. I have four sisters living. My youngest sister is Helen. She is in Illinois. The rest of us are all living in, and around Dryden. We are all in good circumstances, and are all well at present, and hope these few lines find you the same. There are some of your old friends living around Dryden yet. They ask about you once in a while. I knew nothing about you or where you were until you wrote to our Postmaster. Write and let me know what you are doing, and about your family. I will answer all letters you may write. I will bring my letter to a close, so good bye. From your Nephew Warren McLean.

**P. 250  
1877**

Soon after receiving the foregoing letter I **received the following)**

**Dryden March 19th 1877**

Mr. Warren Foote; I take this opportunity to write a few lines to you, to let you know something about your friends and relatives in Dryden. Some of them are yet alive Hiram McLean is dead. His oldest daughter, Nancy, married Darius Givens. They live in Dryden Village. I married Almira McLean so you see it is now Almira Seager. I had ought to have called you Uncle. I knew you when a boy, but not so well as I did your Brothers David and George. George was at my house some years ago, and stayed over night. I have not heard from him since. He told me he would write when he got back home. He then lived in Michigan. If you know any thing of his whereabouts please let me know. Warren McLean lives in Virgil the town east of Dryden. He is a large man weighing something near two hundred pounds. Harriet McLean, the third girl, married my nephew. They live in Virgil. Helen, the youngest girl married Matthew Johnson, and moved west to Illinois. Some of the old folks are alive that you knew when you lived here. Abram Tanner, and his wife,--you knew her, she lived the next house east of you, before she married. Her name was Betty Lum. Michael Butts is still living,--his wife is dead. John Southward is yet alive, also John Tyler. Edward Hunting and wife are both dead. Israel Hunting and Mozier Hunting lives west. Cathrine Hunter who is now Mrs. Gager lives near me on the James Lewis farm. I live north of the Hunting farm on the farm that William Lewis owned when you lived here. Father McLean has told me a great many times that my wife looks like her mother. Well if that is so, your sister must have been good looking. We have had three children, two of them now living, and both married. My wife was weakly,--she was sick for 14 years but she now enjoys tolerable good health. She has talked often about you and your folks. She wants you to write about your family, and country, and all your friends. We all send to you our best wishes and hope you will come and see us, for I think I can talk to you better than I can write. I heard from you by the way of our Postmaster. Direct your letter to Robert Seager, Dryden, Tompkins Co. N. Y.

**P. 251** About the **first day of April** my son David and I started for **St. George**, to attend the **General Conference**.

**1877** We went by Joseph Sanders and took him some flour that I was owing him. We got to St. George the 5th and stopped with Charles Terry. Conference commenced on the **6th**. President Brigham Young, and his son John W., John Taylor, Orson Hyde, Franklin D. Richards, Erastus Snow, Orson Pratt, and some others of the Twelve were there. Presiding Bishop Edward Hunter, and quite a number of my old friends from Salt Lake City and that part of the country were there. As I shook hands with Bishop Hunter, he wanted to know where I had been since I left the north. I told him that I had been down on the Muddy Mission. He replied "O. your salvation is sure if you have been on the Muddy Mission, your are all right." It seemed like old times to see so many from the north, especially President Young and Bishop Hunter and so many of the Twelve. It was a splendid conference, and every body felt well. Just before conference closed the last day, the wind blew terribly from the north raising a cloud of dust and sand. President Young continued the meeting a short time, thinking it would soon quit blowing, but it did not, and as they came out of the Temple, hats, &etc were flying and the owners chasing them. It blowed nearly all night and turned quite cold. The next day after conference, we started home and got in company with Bro. J. Leithead and others from Glendale. It was cold and windy.

My >Foote Genealogy" came along the latter part of March, and I was well rewarded for all the trouble and expense I have had in obtaining it. I found that I had a great deal of work on hand for the dead. My son Franklin came back here, and I rented my land to him and my son George. He moved his wife over, and lived in his mother's house. I let him have his mothers dishes, stove &etc to keep house with. He left his mother and Ben Minchey in Round Valley.

In May I **received a letter from Thomas A. Clement my Nephew** as follows

**Plain City Weber Co. Utah May 13th 1877**

Dear Uncle, I am glad to hear from you and that you are all well. I am really ashamed that I have not corresponded oftener. Uncle do not think I have forgotten you, nor the rest of the family. I assure you such is not the case. You are often in my mind, and I often wish I could see you all. I feel my weakness when I undertake to write. I hope you will excuse me this time, and I will try to write more regular-in future. Truly it is comforting to me to receive letters from my relatives. We are all well and prospering. I often feel that I do not appreciate the blessings of the Lord. Crops are looking splendid up here, grasshoppers also are hatching out very numerously.

**P. 252**

I am glad that you have got the Genealogy of your ancestors, and hope you may still be prospered in the good work you have begun. (He here gives me his family record which is recorded in the Book of Family Records. They have had to this date, two sons and five daughters. Four of his daughter are dead. He then proceeds as follows.) You see by this record that the Lord has for some cause took four of our little girls unto himself. Why it has been thus I do not know. I thought I was trying to do all in my power for their welfare. I know if we do right we shall have them again in the Kingdom of our God. But if we apostatize from the gospel we can have no claims on them worlds without end. You see the Lord has given us another daughter since he took the others, in accordance to the desire of our hearts. I hope he will permit us to keep her. We send our best wishes to you all. Write soon. I remain your affectionate Nephew Thomas A. Clement.

After I got the Foote Genealogy I learned by it that some of Uncle Simeon Foote's sons lived in Nicholson Pennsylvania

when the book was published. I wrote to the Postmaster at that place to ascertain if any of them were still living there.

The latter part of May I **received the following letter.**

**Nicholson May 16th 1877**

Mr. Warren Foote, Dear Sir; I received from our Postmaster this morning your kind note of Apr. 30th. I cannot give you all the information you wish, but I will give you all I can. I believe the Simeon Foote you speak of is my Grandfather. His sons names are respectively, Ebenezer, Gideon, Nathan, and Simeon. I am Gideon Foote's youngest child. He died when I was small. Simeon Foote is dead. I cannot give you the date of his death, but I think some of my brothers can. I will give you their address I had an aunt Lovisa that married a Clauson and had a son. I never saw her, but my mother has often told me of her. I am her namesake. My dear mother is dead. She died the 10th of Feb. 1875. I would be very glad to have you write to me. I have had trials and sorrows. My Father and Mother are dead, my dear brothers and sisters are scattered, and I am living alone. My Bro. William of Wilkesbarre, Pa. owns this place where I live. He is very kind to me and says I can live here as long as I please, and he often helps me besides. I am poor but my trust is in God. **Lovisa S. Foote.**

I immediately answered Lovisa's letter. I asked how it was she was living alone and unmarried &etc, and in due time **received** this answer.

**Nicholson June 18th 1877**

**P. 253  
1877**

Mr. Warren Foote, Dear Cousin; I received your kind letter the 12th inst. I was so busy, I did not find time to write until today. But now having begun I scarcely know what to say. There is a kindred tie of blood between us that draws my affections to you, and I long to clasp your hand and call you my dear brother,--and then the reverse will come, and I think that cousins are far distant and they don't love each other as those of nearer kin. But dear brother are we not brother and sister in Christ. If our creed is not the same, we are both trying to serve one master, and both striving for the same home at last, for there is but one God our Father, and one Christ our Savior.

I see my former letter to you has caused questions to arise in your mind concerning my life. I am sorry I don't feel as though I could explain my past life, and yet I want too. I have never told my brothers and sisters, and they know but little more than yourself. You think strange because I live alone. Dear Cousin don't think wrong of me, for in the sight of God I am a widow. I never claimed my husband's name, as we parted never to meet. Never.

O, Sir I was left among strangers, friendless and alone. I cannot write, the tears blind my eyes. The horror of those terrible days I cannot recall. Oh, the anguish that sweeps over my soul--for four long months I was insane, and when my little son was born I came to my reason, but I was as one dead with fright. I was sure he would be an idiot. Oh, I did not think then that God's hand was in it all, and O my dear cousin, the good Father has given me as fine little boy as can be found. He is six years old--he reads in the Fourth Reader, he studies Arithmetic, Geography, and Astronomy, and he is learning to write.

My dear brother in Christ, can I not truly say the Lord has taken care of me. He gives me all that I need. How I wish you could see this delightful little home where I live. The ladies when they call to see me say, it is the pleasantest place they ever saw. My garden is full of roses, grape vines and flowering locusts. I have a large well cultivated garden, and the best neighbors in the world. The place belongs to my brother William, may the good Father bless him. He says that I can stay here as long as I wish, and my dear little son is the comfort of my life. I do mean to bring him up in the fear of God.

Dear cousin this is a long and poorly written letter. You will be tired before you get it read. Oh please don't think evil of me because I can't tell you all. I want you to be my friend. I want you to be my dear brother. It is not likely that we will ever meet in this world but Oh; if we strive to live as our dear Savior has commanded us, we will clasp hands on the other shore. I have lived here about three years. My dear mother died here. Be yours a lot most pleasant, be good wherever you be, pray a corner in your heart for lonely ones like me. Lovisa. Dear cousin will you please write to me. **Lovisa S. Foote.**

I wrote a comforting letter to her in answer to this, setting forth some of the principles of the gospel.

**P. 254  
1877**

About this time I got a letter from Darius S. Clement dated May 30th 1877. He sent me his Father's Family Record and also his own, which is recorded in "Family Records@. His son has been working on the Temple grounds at Manti, in the United Order. He writes that my wife Maria called in to see them in Mount Pleasant and that she and her mother had gone to Round valley. He says, "I am really glad that you have been so successful in getting your Genealogy. It look as though it would take you a long time to do such a work alone."

Immediately after the General Conference at St. George, some of the Twelve came out to Kanab and organized the **Kanab Stake** of Zion. Leonard John Nuttal was chosen President, and Howard O. Spencer and James L. Bunting Counsellors.

They came from Kanab to Orderville and held meeting. George Noble was with them. He was our neighbor at St. Thomas. He was conveying Orson Pratt. George came home with me, and staid over night. The apostles John Taylor, Orson Pratt, Lorenzo Snow, and company passed in the morning on their way home. They stopped in the street opposite my house. Bro. Leithead and I went out to them. I had on my mill hat, and Bro. Taylor asked me why millers wore white hats, I answered him, "To keep their heads warm." He laughed, for he thought to catch me, but he found that I was familiar with that conundrum.

The **forepart of June I wrote to William G. Foote, brother of Lovisa** to see if I could get any information with regard to the date of the death of Uncle Simeon Foote. **I received answer**, which I will put on record here.

**Wilkes Barre Luzerne Co. Penna**

"To Warren Foote, Dear Cousin, My father Gideon Foote died Oct 10th 1851. Grandmother, your Aunt Lovisa, died I think in just two weeks after in the same months. Grand Father Simeon Foote died in July 1852. My mother died Feb. 12th 1876. I cannot tell you any thing about aunt Lovisa"(This is Moses F. Clauson's mother. After she and Charles Clauson parted, she married a man by the name of Carr, the last I knew of her.) "Aunt Anna died at Nicholson I think about 1838, I do not know the exact date. Uncle Simeon died I think about seven years ago. It may be longer I do not know. His wife and some of his children are living in this county at Scranton. My brother Hubbard died in Indiana, I think in 1863. My wife died April 27th 1864. I have four children. Mary E. born Feb. 2nd 1844, married John Leatham,--no children. Emma was born April 1st 1849, married Charles Martin. James B. born March 9th 1851, married Hannah Stanton. They have four children. My youngest son, George W. was born June 24th 1859. He will be eighteen next Sunday. From your cousin **Wm. G. Foote.**"

The wife of his uncle Simeon mentioned above is a sister of my brother in law Wm. Ferguson. They were married in Dryden. I well remember them. I got a letter from Augusta Tanner, my Sister Almira's daughter. She writes that they are all well, and wants to see us-- hope we will come up there.

**P. 255** On the 12<sup>th</sup> of last April I wrote to Orin Tucker in order to get his father=s family record. His father was our near  
**1877** neighbor, and frequently changed work with my father. My brother George and I used to plow his corn and potatoes, George holding the plow and I riding the horse. The two families were very intimate, and I feel impressed to do some work in the Temple for them.

In July I **received the following record, dated Dryden N. Y. July 19th 1877**

Mr. Warren Foote; You have doubtless been waiting for a reply to your letter of Apr. 12<sup>th</sup>. Orin Tucker my brother, to whom your letter was addressed, is in very poor health--we think in the advanced stage of consumption and has delayed writing hoping to feel better and more equal to the task. He finally requested me to write in his stead, so I will endeavor to answer your inquiries. I am next younger than Orin, and though younger than yourself, I distinctly remember your pale face. My husband, William Dupee was born on the old Darius Clement place. I have one child, a daughter Hattie aged 18. My father Nehemiah Tucker was born in Providence Rhode Island, July 28th 1776. He was married to Polly Rounds Dec 25th 1806. He died June 8th 1851 aged 75 years 10 months and 11 days. His wife was born Jan. 23rd 1786 in R. I. and died March 8th 1855 aged 69 years 1 mot and 13 days. Stephen their oldest son died Dec 3rd 1843 aged 35 years 11 mot and 11 days. Aurelia who married Christopher Dow is now visiting in Dryden, and at present sits near by with her knitting work. She is 70 years of age,--a widow and lives in Rushford Alleghany Co. N. Y. Eseck died in Killawag N. Y. in 1875. Clarissa who married George Byram, is a widow and lives in Brookville Ind. Cloe was first married to Geo. Hubbard of Dryden, afterward to David Sanders, and lives in Strykersville Wyoming Co. N. Y. Nehemiah Jr. died 1834 aged 18 years-9 months. Eliza Ann married Henry Dearman, and lives in Lynden, Cattaraugus Co. N. Y. Emiline who married Jacob Chase died Jan. 19th 1863 aged 43 years 9 mot and 17 days. Orin married Mary Ann Sharp and lives in Dryden. Myself, Mary was 54 the 9 of last March. Erastus died in Sacramento Cal. Oct 23rd 1875 aged 49. He was never married. I doubt you will need a breathing spell after reading this long record, at least I do after writing it. I suppose our Postmaster furnished you the news in general. We shall be glad to hear from you at any time. Orin and Aurelia send their regards. Yours Respectfully **Mrs. Mary Dupee.**

In answer to my letter to Lovisa Foote of July 16th I **received from her the following.**

**Nicholson Aug. 4th 1877**

**P. 256** Mr. Warren Foote, Dear Cousin, I received your kind letter on the 30th July. The delay was caused by a strike on this line.  
**1877** I have read your letter over many times. I cannot understand it all. I know nothing about the Mormon religion but if there is a pure religion where holiness is obtained and loved, most gladly would I accept it. I know there is a lack of holiness in the Churches. I have been taught that it was pride that killed pure religion in the Churches of the present day. If you want to see the most extreme of fashion, all you have to do is to go to church. I am very far from being good, every

day I need to ask God to forgive my sins, but I do believe in holiness, it is surely taught in the Bible that we can and must live pure and holy lives. How glad I would be to have my heart cleansed from all sin. But dear Cousin Warren, all my life I have been taught that the Mormon religion was a humbug. I could not tell all that is said,--I would not want to. I never believed half the bad things that is said about them, and your kind letter disposes me to believe far less. But Dear Cousin Warren, I am going to ask you a few questions. I know they will sound silly to you, but please answer them because I want you to.

Does Brigham Young have as many wives as they say he has and do they worship him? Do all men have as many wives as they please? And do they make slaves of them? Can the elders oblige girls to marry whom they please whether she loves him or not? Now I know you will laugh at me, but dear cousin I believe you are good, and if you feel angry with me you will forgive me. Now I am going to ask all the questions I want to. I have heard they had a bible of their own, but I dont believe that now, for you quoted from our own bible.

I would come out there if I had the means to come with but I am not able. How could I earn my living when I got there? I wish I could understand what you say about our friends who are dead. Oh how I wish I could see you, and hear you talk, and tell me all about that religion. Dear Cousin I want you to write me a long letter. I would never get tired reading it. I have read the paper you sent me. I like the sermon in it, I think it is good. The people around here are very much prejudiced against the Mormons. I shall always remember the promise, you said you would always be my dear brother. I cannot write more this time. Good bye Brother for this time. **Lovisa.**

I answered the foregoing letter and answered all her questions, and told her to ask all the questions she pleased, and I would answer to the best of my knowledge. **Apostle Erastus Snow** came to **Orderville** and held a **conference** on the **5th day of Aug. 1877**. This is the first conference held in Kanab Stake of Zion. He **organized a ward in Orderville**, with Thomas Chamberlain Bishop, and **a ward in Glendale**, with James Leithead bishop, Royal J. Cutler and John S. Carpenter, his Counsellors, also a **ward at Mount Carmel** with H. B. M. Jolley bishop. I was voted a member of the High Counsel. After conference adjourned, Bro's Snow, L. J. Nuttall, and H. O. Spencer and others came up to Glendale and had an evening meeting. I was **ordained an High Priest under the hands of Erastus Snow, Leonard John Nuttall who was mouth and Howard O. Spencer**, and set apart a high councillor in **Kanab Stake** of Zion. James Leithead was set apart for bishop of Glendale Ward, and R. J. Cutler and John S. Carpenter were ordained high priests, and set apart for Counsellor to the bishop. Shortly after this, Bishop Leithead called a meeting to organize the Teachers and Deacons. He called on me to take the presidency of the Teachers in Glendale Ward. I did not desire it, but finally accepted of it. I did not think that a high councillor should act in the capacity of a teacher, but my opinion was overruled, so I accepted of that position.

P. 257  
1877

The latter part of Sept. I received another very lengthy **letter from Lovisa Foote** from which I will make a few extracts.  
**Nicholson, Sept. 16th 1877**

Dear Cousin Warren, I received your kind letter dated Aug. 18th on the evening of Sept 14th. I don't see why they are so long coming. I thank you, dear cousin, for your kind interest in my welfare and I am willing to be taught in the way of truth, and holiness.

Dear Cousin how could I help but be not only ignorant but prejudiced against the Mormon religion. I never in all my life heard one good word spoken of it until I received your letter. I never saw a person that belonged to that religion in my life. I want to tell you how I read your letter, and how I felt. I commenced reading it Saturday evening, and when I came to your request for me to read it with prayer, I did raise my heart to God for wisdom to understand aright, and I am going to tell you as near as I can, but it will not be very plain, for I am a poor writer.

I trust in God for my daily bread, and for all the blessings of life which I enjoy. I am willing to go where he leads, and if I do this I do believe He will never let me starve or beg. I am willing and can cast aside all my prejudice against the mormon religion and be taught in it if it agrees with the bible. I could not help but reject it if it did not. I long to seek and obtain holiness of heart, for I do greatly fear I can never see my God in peace without. I would rejoice to do something for my departed friends and the living to.

Oh, my dear cousin are those things true, can we be the means of their salvation, and would God bless and help us in such a labor of love? I do believe He would. It does seem to me that God directed your first letter to me.

If you take God and His holy word for your guide, and I believe you do, I will gladly accept you as my teacher if you will be, and learn the true way of you.--Will you teach me first the right way, and then we can labor for our friends. I wish you could come out here and we could get acquainted. I want you to tell me all about your religion and yourself and family.

Please give my love to all your friends. Write often. **Lovisa.**

**P. 258**  
**1877** **Wednesday Sept. 5th 1877**, at one minute past 4 o'clock P. M. **President Brigham Young departed this life**, surrounded by his family and intimate friends. I will take a few extracts from the Deseret News of that date. After giving a very brief sketch of his life the News says. "He had a strong desire to live to dedicate the Temple of the most High God, and set in order the Priesthood, and organize the various Stakes of Zion according to the pattern revealed from heaven. These privileges were granted to him. He saw the Temple at St. George fully dedicated and prepared for the administration of the ordinances for the living and the dead. He arranged and explained the duties of the various quorums of the priesthood. And last Sunday the organization of the different Stakes of Zion was completed. His desire has been fulfilled, and now he has departed....."

The last words he uttered that were distinctly understood were, "Joseph, Joseph, Joseph, Joseph." Other remarks relating to Joseph were expressed, but in a manner that was not understood.....On Tuesday night about ten o'clock, while lying in a kind of stupor, his son John W. asked him, "do you know me father." He responded, "I should think I ought to." About two hours previous to his decease, when several brethren administered to him. he responded in a clear distinct voice, "Amen" ...He was 76 years, two months and 28 days of age. Dec. 5th 1847 he was elected President of the Church by the unanimous vote of the Quorum of the Twelve, and also, on the 27th by the unanimous vote of all the authorities and members assembled in a conference held at Council Bluffs, Iowa, with Heber C. Kimball and Willard Richards as his Counselors." **I was present at that Conference and voted for them.** He has finished his work in this probation, and the Quorum of the Twelve again stands at the head of the Church with **John Taylor President of that Quorum.**

I omitted to mention the **death of President George A. Smith** in its proper place, and will say here that he died **Sept. 1st 1875**, and John W. Young was chosen first Counselor to President B. Young, He is a son of Pres. Young.

I heard from **my wife Maria** occasionally through the summer, as she wrote to my son Franklin. About the middle of Nov. I received a letter from her from which I extract as follows.

**Scipio Nov. 8th 1877**

Dear husband, I thought I would write you a few lines, since you weighed me on the heavy side of the scales. I want you to weigh in your mind all I have said and done, and the causes for it, and then your own, and if you think they are about even, let me know, and I will meet you half way in doing right.

Dear Warren I had almost made up my mind never to see you again, and leave this country forever. But thank God I have not done any wrong, for I have not talked with the man, and I refused to see him when he was here, and went to Thistle Valley with John Sanders, and was to see him this fall. You accused me of wanting to have Jake Minchey and did not know but I would have some young Ramsey. This and all other yarns that was told you, you was ready to believe, and refuse the truth when I told it to you. This with many other things has caused me to do what I have. I am willing to bear all I am guilty of in Olive=s case and no more.

**P. 259**  
**1877** It was your own threats that caused her to marry the way she did. If you want me to come back, I will forgive all that has been said, and ask your forgiveness also. I will try on my part to regain love and confidence for the sake of our children. If this meets your mind let me know it, for our Nevada home is waiting for an answer. You will think it strange all this is done without me, but it is so. I will tell you sometime, it would not do to mention names at present. I would like to see you, and have you come for us if you can. I never wanted to see you until now, for I thought you hated me, and only wanted the boys but if you think enough of me to pray for me you will not be unkind when I go back. I would like to tell you something I have heard that Sidney has said, but it is of no use, it is you and me for the future. May God bless us and help us to renew our covenants and live purer and happier lives is my prayer. **From your wife, Maria Foote.**

I received the following from Ammon and Charles in the same letter.

Dear Father; We was so glad to hear from you, and was a heap gladder when Ma promised us that she would go back. We will be good boys and work for you both. O, Father we love you and mother so well we cant hardly wait to be with you. Ma says she don't know when we can go, without you come for us, or send Frank. If Ben and Olley is going back we dont know. It is getting so cold now. Our school will be out in two weeks, and Ma has to pay half money. If you can please send two dollars when you write again. Oh Father may the Lord spare our lives until we meet again. I am so glad I don't believe I can sleep till I see you and Frank. **Ammon and Charles Foote.**

When I got the above letter Franklin had gone down to Silver-Reef, but I expected him back soon, so I wrote to Maria that

as soon as he got home I would send him after them. I sent the two dollars to pay their school bill. I was preparing to go to St. George to work in the Temple, and could not go after them myself without a great deal of inconvenience. I sent some cloth from the Washington Factory to make them some winter clothes, and money to get the boys some boots. Franklin came home by the way of Panguitch and Hillsdale, (as his wife was over there on a visit) in about three weeks after I got the letter from his mother.

Since writing the foregoing I have found **two letters from Ammon and Charles written in October, and my answer**, which should have been copied before the above letters, and as they will explain some that is written in them I will insert them here. I think this is the answer to the first letter that I wrote to them.

**Scipio Oct. 12th 1877**

Dear Father; I received your letter, and was glad to hear from you, but was sorry to hear that you were not well. But I hope this will find you much better. I was sick with the putrid sore throat when your letter came. I would like to see you and live with you and ma both. I could not think of leaving her to come back.

**P. 260** We are going to school and we will be just as good as if we were with you. I wish you and mother would make it up.  
**1877** She had a good cry, and said she had good reason for not writing to you. She heard after she wrote to you at Hillsdale, that you did not want to see her or hear from her in twenty years. I want to see Homer and Dolphy and all of the boys. You had better send us some clothes. Ma is running a bill in the store. They say you must keep us. The folks wants ma to sue you, but Charly says O dont it will kill pa, and I want you to make it right and live together. I don't want a step father in mine. There is a very rich man wants me. Maybe she will have him, I don't know, when we ask her she says, "I will have to do something, we cant live on nothing." We will be good boys for your sake. God bless you, Goodbye From Your Sons **Ammon and Charles**.

This is **my answer** to the above letter.

**Glendale Oct. 28th 1877**

My dear little boys, Ammon and Charles; I received your kind letter last Wednesday and was very glad to hear from you, and that you are well. My health is better than it was. I read your letter to Franklin. He felt very bad, and could not keep back the tears, when I read about your mother marrying. I had heard before, by the way of Minersville, that your mother was about to marry a gentile.

You say you want ma and me to make it up and live together. My dear little boys I am willing to do anything that is right, but I do not know what your mother wants. She has never informed me. The way she wrote to me at Hillsdale, and the way she wrote to Franklin last spring, I expected that she would come back when she got her visit out. As for me saying that I did not want to see her or hear from her in twenty years, I have no recollection of saying it, but I was very angry when I found out that she had got Olive married, and might have said it. But ask her if she remembers of telling me that she would be glad if she could never see me again. That is longer than 20 years. You, and she knows that I have worked hard to make her and you a comfortable home here, but if she will not live on it, I cannot help it. I intend that you and Franklin shall have it, if she will not enjoy it. I cannot support her there.

You know very well that I never told her to leave her home, and I have never refused to support her. You know that when she went away I expected that she was only going to Panguitch and would be back again in four or five days, and when I found out she was going to Sanpete, I supposed that she would come back in the spring. And when Franklin came back, he said he expected she would come back this fall. If she has any charges to make against me, why does she not come here and make them if we cannot settle our difficulty ourselves. Here are the Church authorities to settle it--I will abide their decision.

**P. 261** O my little boys my heart aches for you. I am willing to put up with all that is required of me in righteousness for your  
**1877** sakes, and leave the event with God our Father. Has not your mother sense enough to know that if she goes to law that she will get nothing, but will only rob her children of what little I intend for them, as it will take all for costs. She knows that I have not got much any way. Our stock is nearly all gone, we cannot find but little I suppose that it has been stolen. Whoever is advising her to sue me is as foolish as she is.

I got a letter from Olive yesterday. She writes a very kind letter. Franklin is here now. He has taken Emiline to her mothers to stay this winter. He talks of going to Leeds with a load of lumber and maybe work there next winter. Olive thinks that they will come here next winter. If she does I want you to come with her. Sister Leithead's mother and brother are here, and are going to St. George and back home through Scipio. If I can get them to take some cloth I will send it to you.

Now my dear little sons do not forget to pray to our Father in heaven, and if you get sick ask Him to heal you, and remember that your loving father prays for you daily, and your mother also. I commit you into the hands of our Father and God, who knows the thoughts and intents of our hearts. I believe that He will preserve you to become men, that you may do a good work in your day on the earth. Write to me as soon as you get this. May the Lord bless you is the prayer of your affectionate Father, Warren Foote.

**In reply to my letter Maria sent the one already recorded on page 258, and not long after my sons wrote the following.**

Dear Father we got your last letter two days after the first. I could not answer it until I worked a day to get some money to buy stamps with. We are all well, and hope this will find you the same. We got our boots and hats and was so thankful to you for them. The boots was two dollars and forty cents, my hat was eighty cents and Charley's was ninety. We will let you know when we get those things. (meaning the cloth I sent by Sister Leitheads brother.) The folks says Ma is a fool to go back and live in hell as she has done. I am in a hurry to go to school, and Ma is to go out to work, so goodbye till we see you which I hope wont be long. From your sons, Ammon Foote, & Charles Foote.

On the 27th of Oct. I received a **letter from Olive dated Tintic Oct 16th 1877.**

**P. 262**  
**1877** Dear Father; It is with pleasure that I sit down to write a few lines to let you know that I am well and hope this will find you the same. I want to see you so bad. I have wrote one letter to you and never got any answer, so I will try again. Ben is cutting wood here, and I am cooking for 8 men. He gets \$2.50 per day cash. I guess you think that I had forgotten you but I was waiting for an answer to my letter. I never had better health in my life than I have this summer. I think we will go there next winter. Ma is in Round Valley. Ben lost one of his horses. I don't know whether he is stole or not. There was a lot of horses stolen about the same time he was missing. I saw Emma Porter in Sanpete. Arlington is a big boy and looks just like David. They call him George Porter. It is getting dark and I must close. Give my love to all and accept a share yourself. Write soon. Your affectionate **daughter Olive.**

The following is an **answer to the foregoing letter, Glendale Oct 28th 1877**

My Dear Daughter Olive; Your kind letter came to hand yesterday. I was very glad to hear from you. Yes, I thought that you had forgotten me, and turned against me like your Mother, and I wondered at it too, for I thought that we parted good friends. My dear girl I thank the Lord that my children have got an affection for their father, notwithstanding the course their mother has taken. I wish my children well, and will do all I can for their welfare. I am glad to learn that your health is so good.

I got a letter from Ammon and Charley last week. They were well.

Olive do you know that your mother is thinking of marrying a gentile? Can it be possible that she is so far sunk in darkness that she will disgrace herself and children by doing such a wicked act. O my heart aches for my poor little boys. This is what Ammon writes. "The folks wants ma to sue you, but Charley says, 'O don't ma, it will kill pa, and I want you to make it up and live together. I don't want a step father in mine.'" It does seem that if your mother had any feeling or respect for herself, she would pause and reflect. Olive, you know that I have labored hard to make a comfortable home here for your mother and children. You know that when she went away, she pretended that she was only going to Panguitch, and I supposed that she was coming back in four or five days. You know that I did not drive her away from her home but expected to support her and the boys as well as I could. Now if she will not enjoy her home I cannot help it. I cannot support her in Round Valley. Had she taken my counsel things would have been different from what they are today. You know the spirit she has manifested to me for two years past before she went away. It was "I will do as I dam please." I suppose she has the spirit yet. If she has any charges to make against me, why does she not come here and prefer them. I am willing to do what is right. As long as I have a name and standing in the church, her future destiny is in my hands, and no man can take it from me.

**P. 263**

She may marry as many gentiles as she pleases she will have to foot the bill. Ammon writes again, "There is a very rich man wants ma. Maybe she will have him, don't know. We have asked her, she says, 'I will have to do something we can't live on nothing. This shows that she intends to have him, does it not? I think that if you have got any influence with her, you had better write to her and reason with her before she finally seals her doom forever.

She will not write to me--has never answered my letter I wrote to her last spring. So you see I don't know what she wants me to make up, or what she demands of me.

O Olive I sometimes think my troubles are greater than I can bear. But I trust in the Lord. It certainly will not be many more years that I will have to bear it. A few more days or years at least, I shall go to that place where the weary are at rest and the wicked cease from troubling. But I hope to live to finish my work here on earth.

I have got the "**Foote Genealogy**" the book you have heard me talk about, and it contains something about three thousand names of our relatives, for whom some of us have got to do the work for in the Temple. O that we were all united so that we could go into the Temple and do their work as well as our own. I pray God that my sons and daughters may be led to take up this work and continue it after I am gone behind the veil. I want you to come and see me, and I think you had better bring your mother and the boys with you, if she will come, if not bring the boys anyway.

Well Olive I wish you well. I think that I have been badly treated, but I hold no spite against any one. All I have to say, let the Lord judge between us. I never got the letter you say you wrote to me. I want you to write as soon as you get this, and may the Lord bless you and give you his spirit that you may discern the right way and walk in it is the prayer of your affectionate Father, Warren Foote.

I received in **reply to the foregoing letter** the following. **Fountain Green Nov. 27.**

Dear Father; I received your kind letter, and was glad to hear from you. We are well. I did hear Ma say she would marry a gentile but I thought she was joking, and did not think any more about it. I did not think Ma would do it. Some of her brothers wanted her to write and tell you that she would sue you, and it would scare you, so she could get all her things in the house. She would ask Ben and me what we thought about it. We said do what you think best, but if I was you, I would go back home, for we did not think any body ought to have the raising of the children but you. Charley always said he did not want a stepfather in his. Ammon said he would go back anyhow whether ma did or not. I know that you have worked like a slave to make homes for your family. I don't know what she wants to make up, for I never heard her say.

I am glad you got the Foote Genealogy, and I don't think there will be any trouble about being united. I want to see you so bad. I got a letter from ma, and she said she had made up her mind to go back, and you dont know how happy it made me feel. I don't know whether we will go up there this winter or not, if not we will come in the spring. I am going to school this winter. Ben and I send our best respects to you and all the folks. I have prayed every night that the Lord would bless you and ma, and that you might live together and that we all might be united yet and live so as to be a comfort to each other. Write as soon as you get this. From your affectionate **daughter Olive.**

I **replied** to the foregoing letter immediately which I may as well insert here.

**P. 264  
1877**

**Glendale Dec. 9th 1877**

Dear Daughter Olive;

I received your letter, and was glad to learn that you were well. We are well as usual. Artemisia has been quite poorly but is getting better. I am nearly worn out by work in the mill. I have been busy day and night for two months. I shall quit the last of this month and go to Saint George to commence work in the Temple.

Franklin started for Leeds three weeks ago yesterday with a load of potatoes and corn, and I have not heard from him since. He was to have been back in ten or twelve days. Eugene Minchey went with him. I do not know what is keeping him. I have been waiting for him to come, so we could make some arrangements to get your mother back here.

I got a letter from her and the boys The boys are happy to think they are coming back. They say they will work for me, and they want to see me so bad. I sent them money to buy their boots and hats, I also sent them cloth for two pair of pants and coat each, and twenty one yards gray lindsey. I wish they were here. I want to see the dear little ones. Ammon says that the folks there say your mother is a fool to come back here and live in hell. I wish you would tell me which ones of her brothers wanted her to sue me. I think that she has had some very poor advisers.

She says that she refused to see that gentile, but was to give him an answer this fall. Now Olive, I want to know if you know any thing about this affair more than you have written to me. It is a terrible thing, and I would like to know all the facts in the case. Your Mother writes that she thanks God that there is no wrong done. I hope it is so.

I am willing to do what is right and acceptable in the sight of the Lord as far as I know, or can find out. I have never sought to wrong her, nor no one else. I do not want to do any thing that will bring a disgrace on my children or myself. It is for the life to come that I am trying to live for. I have never had much happiness in this world, nor do I expect to have, but dear daughter, I feel that there will be a better state of things in the life to come. I desire to meet my wives, and children there beyond the power of-Satan, where we can be united forever, and no evil designing person will be able to tattle and make

discord and dissensions in our midst. There the pure love of God will fill our hearts, and we will be free from the temptations of the evil one. No sorrow, no mourning, no parting, but an eternity of happiness before us. It is to attain to this glorious state of existence that I have been striving for all my life. I have waded through poverty, sorrow and tribulation, and much of my sorrow has been caused by the feeling that have existed in my family.

Now Olive I pray that the Lord will give me strength to endure to the end, and that He will not suffer the devil to lead any member of my family away, so as to become lost forever. Now as regards Ben I will say, that I do not consider that he has treated me with that respect which is due me as your father. He took a wrong course and cannot be justified in what he has done. He knows that it is contrary to the law of the gospel, but as I wrote before, I hold no spite towards him. I wish him well. May the Lord bless you, and direct you aright is the prayer of your father. Warren Foote.

**P. 265** A short time after writing the foregoing letter, I **received another letter from Maria** which astonished me greatly to  
**1877** learn how quick her mind had been changed. It is as follows.

Dec. 11. Mr. Warren Foote;

I have tried to make up my mind to go back, but the more I try the further I get from it. I know what I have undergone for your sake. You know I have stood many a slap from your family, and never went back on you for what they done. You know what has passed for two or three years. I can't stand any more trouble in the way I have done. If I must have more it must come in some other way. I demand a Bill of you immediately. If you don't give it I will consider myself free from you. I have sent my grievances to John Taylor asking for the same. The children are well and I intend they shall go and see you once a year, and when they want to go to live with you I will not try to stop them. The things you sent them came yesterday. This will be my last letter to you. From your once loving wife, **Maria**.

We can see from the foregoing how hard it is for a person who has received the ordinances of the House of the Lord and made the sacred covenants required in the law of Celestial Marriage, when they get into darkness and transgression to repent and retrace their steps. As for the trouble she speaks about, she made the most of it herself in not listening to my counsel. I do not know what she has reference to by the "slaps" for she has lived in her own house, and done as she pleased for several years, without any interference from my first wife and family.

After receiving this letter from her I wrote the following **to Olive**.

Glendale Dec. 24th 1877

My Dear Daughter Olive. I write to inform you that I got a letter from your mother demanding a bill of me. In the letter she sent me just before I wrote to you last, she calls me "Dear Warren," in the last it is Mr. Foote. I suppose likely she has concluded to take that gentle. My heart aches for those little boys. They felt so happy to think they were coming home to live. They must be terribly disappointed to find that their mother would not come. Ammon has not written to me since.

Franklin was going after them, but it is of no use now. He is over to Bro. Minchey's. It may be that they have written to him before now. Emiline has had a boy. Jacob Degraw is here to mill now. He says she is getting along well.

Now Olive, what do you think of the course that your mother is taking. What hopes can she have of a future state. I told her three years ago that the course she was taking would lead her to hell. You know that she opposed me in every thing, and turned a deaf ear to all my counsels. Had she taken my advice, she might have been here now in a happy home with all her children instead of having them scattered to the four winds as they are today. She says she has suffered a great deal for my sake. Olly do you know what I have suffered for her sake? No you do not, nor no one else, but that Being who knows the thoughts and intents of the hearts of all. It was a father's love that caused me to oppose your marrying Ben until he had proved himself innocent of those things he was accused of, by living a straight forward and honorable life.

And I now think that you would all have been better off if you had listened to your father, and not been so headstrong. I cannot but think, that the course that Ben took in defiance of my feelings and counsel, is one cause of your mother's  
**P. 266** being where she is today. These things will come home to him some day should he ever become a father. But as I said  
**1877** in my last letter I hold no spite towards him or any one else. I think that he will yet see the day, if he has not already, that he will regret the course he took. I want him to bring Ammon and Charley to me, that I may see them again. I will meet him as a friend if he wishes it. I am not his enemy. I hope that he will do well, and from henceforth live according as the gospel requires.

Dear daughter, I liked the spirit of your letter. You expressed a desire and a feeling that we would all be united again in love. What will be your feelings when you learn the course your mother is taking. You have one parent's sympathy. I feel

for you and your brothers, when I think of the disgrace your mother has brought on herself.

My dear girl, I ask you to seek to the Lord for strength and comfort, for wisdom and understanding, and he will not leave you comfortless. Were it not for the faith I have in the promises of the gospel I should have been borne down long ago, under the enormous load of trouble that has been heaped upon me. I trust in the Lord, and I commend you to His grace.

I want to start for St. George next week. I shall probably stay there two months if nothing prevents. O I wish you could go there with Ammon and Charley and help me in the Temple. What is Ben doing that he cannot take you down. I have rented a room of Bishop Milne's wife to stay in, he is on a mission. Direct your letters to St. George, and write often if you cannot come. May the Lord bless and comfort you is the prayer of your affectionate father. Warren Foote

I have written these letters in my journal for the purpose of preserving them to my posterity (if this record is preserved which I trust it will be) so that they can learn the truth with regard to my wife Maria in the course she has taken. It may be that my children by her, and their posterity will see it some day. If they should, I certify to them that these letters are correctly copied. They can judge by them who is to blame, and who will have to bear the responsibility, and may the Lord direct them aright, that we may all be saved in His kingdom is my prayer.

In November I received a letter from Moses F. Clauson. He writes that they have had another wet season in Iowa where he lives, and crops are light except grass. Last spring there was a tornado which blew down his new barn and cattle shed, and he has been rebuilding them. It took sixty six thousand shingles to cover them. He had made Franklin Allen a visit and Franklin had been to see him since he wrote to me last. He had thought-some of coming to see me, but his misfortunes prevented him for the present. I am trying to get ready to go down to St. George with my wife Artemisia S. to work in the Temple for our dead relatives. I have hired a room of Bishop Milne's folks to stay in while there. Thus ends another year. It has been full of trouble and anxiety to me. I have made very well in the mill--about 350 bus. wheat. The boys done middling well on the farm.

## CHAPTER 18

**P. 267** It took me until the **tenth of Jan.** to close up my labor in the mill.

**1878** About this time I received another **letter from cousin Lovisa Foote.** I will make a few extracts.

"Nicholson Dec. 28th 1877

Dear Cousin Warren. I received your kind letter dated Dec 3rd 1877 about two weeks ago. I thank dear cousin Artemisia for the few lines she wrote, I hope she will write again.....Dear cousin I keep all your letters. I did not show them to brother William. He would not like it at all if he knew that I thought of going out there. I have let cousin Lucy read them. If you don't want me to let me know....I want to ask you lots of questions. If you believe that it is right for a man to have more than one wife, why do not you have more? I don't know but you have, but it don't seem so to me. Do you think that it would be right for a woman to get married again if she had a husband and did not know whether he was dead or not. It seems to me that the bible teaches when we are once married we cannot get married again without committing a great sin. Will you please tell me what you think about it.

Do you think it is right for a woman that professes to be a Christian to wear jewelry and dress in the extreme of fashion? I hate the fashions, it makes me sick when I see the ladies walk along the streets.

Sunday 29th Dear cousin, I am going to try to finish my letter this evening. I am all alone. There is great times going on in all the churches here, it is decoration day. They wanted me to go to, but I had rather stay at home. Little Johnie has gone with them. I love the Lord tonight, and I am determined to obey his commandments. I must bid you good bye. Write soon. Love to all, **Lovisa.**"

I will say that in a former letter she informed me that she was living with the Postmaster Mr. R. D. Newton and would work for him through the winter.

On the **14th day of January** we started for **St. George with** our sons **David and George**. David was going to Leeds with a load, and George was taking his mother and me with provisions to last us two months and some flour to sell. There had just been a light snow, but it was clear today and quite cold.

**15th** It is a cold frosty morning. The weather moderated through the day and was quite pleasant. We arrived in St. George the 16th at night and unloaded our things. We found a very comfortable room with a little stove in it.

**17th** George started back home, and I fixed up things in our room.

After I got the "**Foote Genealogy**" I wrote to **Timothy Foote** at **Nephi**, informing him of it and invited him or some of his family to meet me in **St. George** this winter and **work with me in the Temple**. Just before I left home I received a letter from his sister **Lucia Foote** informing me that she was in St. George and would be glad to join me in working for our dead relatives. I went to see her today, to let her know that I had come and would commence work next week. I found that she was several years older than myself and that she was one of Joseph Smith=s wives.

**P. 268**  
**1878**

The **19th** being Saturday, I went to the Temple to get some forms for drawing off names. I obtained a form of Bro. M. F. Farnsworth who seemed to be chief clerk. I found Bro. John Angus to be Door keeper. He was an old neighbor of mine at the Cottonwood Mill.

On Sunday the **20th** I attended meeting in the Tabernacle. The following day I copied 28 names beginning with my ancestor Nathaniel Foote the Settler down to my Grandfather Ebenezer, which is five generations, and then commenced back again to the third generation. The names for all those for whom work is done will be found recorded in my large Book of Records. I also copied 29 names for my wife to be baptized for.

**Jan. 22nd** We commenced our first work in the **Temple** for the dead, by being baptized for those I had copied. We feel very happy in our labors, and thankful that our lives have been spared to see this day. Tuesdays of each week is for baptisms and Wednesdays, Thursdays and Fridays for endowments and sealings. We have to be there at seven o'clock A. M.

**Jan. 23rd** I was endowed for my father and Artemisia for my mother and had them sealed. We now have fulfilled my mother's request before she died 32 years ago. Also a commandment I received of my father in a dream I had about the same time. My wife and I were sealed over the Alter.

**24th** I was endowed for my son Warren who died in St. Thomas. As all the names and dates are recorded in the large Book of Records as I said before I shall give but few here.

On **Feb. 1st** I was endowed for father Jacob Myers, and Artemisia Sidnie was endowed for her mother Sarah Coleman Myers, and had them sealed the same day.

On the **20th of Jan. I wrote to my daughter Olive** being the second I wrote to her after getting the letter from her mother demanding a divorce. The following is a copy.

**St. George Jan. 20th 1878**

Dear Daughter; Franklin did not get over to Glendale before I left home. So I have not seen him since I wrote to you last. They were well the last I heard from them. Your brothers and sisters were all well when I left home. George came down with us and went back last Thursday. Little Homer C. is with us here. Auntie wishes you were here. She wants to see you very much, and sends her love to you. We shall commence work in the Temple next Tuesday. I wish you would write once a week while I am here and I will do the same. I was in hopes to get a letter from Ammon and Charley before I left home but did not. I saw your Aunt Amanda last night. Her health is not first rate, neither is bro. Sanders. I will send you a few postage stamps.

O my daughter I know that you will shed many a tear when you think of your father and mother. You will never know the sorrow and anguish of my heart, and the sleepless nights that I have passed through, caused by the course your mother has taken, but you are all in the hands of the Lord, and I trust He will overrule all things for our good. May the Lord bless and comfort you my dear daughter. Rely upon Him under all circumstances, and He will deliver you. I remain your affectionate Father. Warren Foote.

On the **13th of Feb.** I had Mary E. Porter sealed to me for eternity. Also Harriet Elizabeth Foote, and Caroline Elizabeth Foote.

**P. 269** Mary E. Porter lived close by us in Greenwood, N. Y. We went to school together and we promised to have each other.  
**1878** She did not belong to the Church of Latter Day Saints. When I left Greenwood in 1837 I thought I would go back sometime. But as the church left Kirtland Ohio in the spring of 1838 I never went back. She married a widower in July 1843 and died the following October. Under these circumstances I think that I have the best right to her. The other names are taken out the Foote Genealogy and was unmarried.

On the **14th** I had the following girls sealed to me. Taken from my Genealogy. Juliaette Jane Foote, Maria Foote, Clarissa Foote and Laura Ann Foote.

**The 21st day of Feb. 1878, I received my second Anointing and my wife Artemisia Sidnie Myers Foote was anointed to me by Wilford Woodruff, and J. T. D. McAlister held the horn.** Bro. James L. Bunting and wife were anointed at the same time.

Soon after I went to St. George I received another **letter from my daughter Olive.**

It was dated **Fountain Green Jan 10th 1878.**

"Dear Father, It is with the greatest of pleasure that I write you a few lines to let you know that we are well. I have not heard from Ma for three weeks. She then wrote and told me that she was going to marry a man by the name of **Peter Elliott of Payson.** That is all I know about it. She said she might as well stay here and die as to go there and die. So all my happiness was for nothing. I knew nothing about it. I want to see you all so bad I do not know what to do. It is to cold weather to go down there although I want to come. I am going to see Ma and try to get the boys to go up with us in the spring. I pray God to bless you and Ma if she is married and the boys. I try to live as near right as I know how. I feel well in the gospel. They have good meetings here. I hope it will not be long before we meet. There is a tear and I cannot help it. Every time I think of you and Ma, I have to cry. I think I will live so as to be a blessing to you in your old age instead of a curse. I again ask the Lord to bless you. From Your affectionate daughter **Olive.**@

My wife and I continued working in the Temple until the 8th day of March. During this time I had 510 baptized for and 51 endowed and sealed.

**P. 270**  
**1878** George and Homer A. Bouton came down after us at this time. During my absence from Glendale, the brethren there took measures to homestead the farming land. They put my name to homestead three forties, because my house is located on one of them. I had to go home by the way of Toquerville to file on said land. We stopped over night with my cousin Moses Clauson. The last week I was in St. George I took a severe cold and I felt very bad while in Toquerville. I got better on the way home. Our little son Homer was very bad with a cold a week before we left St. George.

We enjoyed our work in the Temple very much, and visiting our old acquaintances. Sister **Lucia Foote** done considerable work with me for our ancestors. She is my fourth cousin a **descendant of Robert Foote through his fourth son, John.** I am descended through Robert Foote's first son Nathaniel, I left her in St. George still working in the Temple.

On the 25th day of March I wrote the following **letter to my daughter Olive.** I had received a letter from Franklin informing me that she and Ben Minchey had parted.

**Glendale March 25th 1878.**

My Dear Daughter Olive; I looked for a letter from you sometime before I left St. George, and wondered what the matter was. Since I came home I learn that you and Ben have parted. The cause of your parting I have not heard. It seems strange that it should be so, when I think of the last letter you both wrote to me. You said you would come and help me in the Temple and Ben said you might come if it took four years. I want to know if you have changed your mind, or if you are still willing to come.

My dear girl don't you begin to think it is best to take your father's counsel? Do you remember the letter you sent me when you were down to Joseph Sanders? You said that you would obey me, and not go contrary to my advice. Now do you not think it would have been much better for you today, if you had kept your promise? Would you not have saved yourself, and me also, a great deal of trouble? O my dear girl I do not wish to harrow up your feelings, for we cannot help what has passed, but we can take a course in the future that may redeem us in a measure. You are yet young and ought to be under your father's care.

Now I will promise you, if you will come to me and obey my counsel from this time forth, you will be blessed of the Lord. You cannot now realize the joy you will experience in the Temple of our God in laboring for the salvation of our dead relatives.

From those kind and affectionate letters you sent me, I had formed the fond anticipations of soon seeing your face. Now shall I realize those anticipations, or will you go on in disobedience to your father and add sin to sin. O my daughter remember the prodigal son, and do likewise. You shall have a home with me. Resolve in your heart to do right, let others do as they will.

Remember that the Lord's eyes are upon you, and if you do right He will bless you, but if you take the opposite course, there is sorrow and trouble for you. Now why did you not write to me and let me know your trouble. You certainly must know that I am your best friend. Let me know what your troubles are. I feel anxious to hear from you. Why does not Ammon and Charley write to me. I suppose you are with them from what Franklin wrote to me. Tell them that I want to see them and shall expect them to come and see me. I want you to write as soon as you get this. We all want you to come home. May the Lord bless you is the prayer of your affectionate father Warren Foote.

P. 271  
1878 I am writing to all my father's children that are alive, and the children of those that are dead to obtain their family records, so as to record them all in a book. I wrote to Franklin Allen for his, but he refused to send them. He seems to think that I have some design to rob him of his children some way. He thinks the work we have been doing for our dead is all useless, and that we are on the wrong track. I told him the object I had in collecting the family records. All I have written to have responded but him. Consequently his children's family records are blanks.

I am taking the Louisville Courier Journal, and in looking over Children's Department I saw a little letter from a little girl by the **name of Foote** living in **Cayuga, Hinds Co. Miss.** As I had a cousin named Ebenezer Foote who went to Alabama, and we never heard from him after, I did not know but it might be one of his children or granddaughter. So I wrote to her, asking the name of her father or if they knew of any person by that name. I received the following **answer from her father.**

"Cayuga Hinds Co. Miss. May 15th 1878.

Mr. Warren Foote, Dear Sir; I received yours of Apr. 22nd in due course of mail, and now proceed to answer your queries. My Father, Grand Father, and Great Grand Father were all named Richard, and lived in Virginia in Prince William Co. on Cedar Run. My ancestors on my fathers side came from Truro Cornwall Parish England,--and some of the name I have been informed are still living there. My mother's name was Steuart, and her ancestors came from Scotland. I never had a relative by the name of Ebenezer that I ever heard of. I had a cousin by the name of George, and one by the name of Philip, who settled in or near Huntsville Alabama. Their descendants are living some in that state and some in this state.

There is a judge Wm. H. Foote, now living in Macon, Noxubee Co. Miss, who was born I think in South Carolina, who perhaps can give you some information respecting your relative Ebenezer. My relations are scattered through the southern states, many are still living in Virginia, some in South Carolina, some in Alabama, and some in Tennessee. Gen. Henry S. Foote, formerly Governor of Mississippi, then Senator in Congress, and since then, member of the Confederate Congress from Nashville Ten. Where he now resides, can perhaps give you more information respecting the family than I can.

I have relatives in Louisiana, Texas, and West Virginia. I have copies of letters written by one of my Great Aunts, from England to her brother Richard, living in Stafford Co Va. dated Aug 12th 1713, also a partial Genealogy of the Foote Family commencing in 1632. One of my Aunts married Bradshaw, one of the Judges who had Charles the first beheaded.

I have given you a sketch at least of the Foote Family, will you in turn please inform me, from what state did your ancestors come. There is a tradition in the family, that there were three brothers, One settled in New York, one in Maryland and one in Virginia, from whom all the Foote Tribe have sprang.

You will please inform me how it happened that you reside in Utah, and if you are a Mormon, and if so how many wives have you. I have had three wives, lawful ones too, without going to Utah. My father had four, one of my Uncles three, another two, making three wives apiece without going to Utah or turning Mormon either.

P. 272  
1878 I came to Miss. from Va. in 1836 and my brother Wm . S. Foote, my sister Elizabeth Washington Foote who married Dr. Francis T. Chevis came that year also. My sister Helen Maria, and sister Sarah Stuart Foote came in 1840, all are now dead except sister Elizabeth, who lives near Washington St. Landrys Parish La. and who knows more about the Foote Family than I do, and would be pleased to give you any information respecting them that she has.

We have fine prospects for a crop this year,--are eating potatoes, peas, beets, cabbage &etc and have everything but money.

I should be pleased to hear from you at any time. Tell me all about Utah, especially about the religion, wives &etc. I am nearly 67 years old. Yours **Hayward Foote**

P. S. My little girl says that I have not mentioned her at all. She is ten years old--quite smart--wants to study Greek, Latin, and French--knows the Greek alphabet and has peeped into French--is very fond of poetry. She has too much imagination and is unsuited for the times and surroundings, as times here are too hard and require too much hard work for poetry. She is my only child by my present wife, and of course is petted a good deal. H.F.

I **answered** the foregoing letter as follow.

**Glendale July 15th 1878**

Mr. **Hayward Foote**,

Dear Sir; Your letter of May 15th came duly to hand. I thank you for the information with regard to your ancestors &etc. I owe you an apology for not answering sooner. When I received your letter, I was just starting on a journey of a hundred miles, and when I returned our mails had stopped, owing to change of contractors. They are now running regularly again.

My ancestor Nathaniel Foote came from England about the year 1632, and was one of the first settlers of Weathersfield Conn. I am the seventh generation from him. My father was born in Connecticut, but came into the state of New York when quite young and raised his family in that state. He embraced the religion of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints in 1833, and settled in Missouri in 1838--was driven from there by the mob in the spring of 1839, and settled in Illinois where he died in 1845 being 77 years old. I accompanied him in all his moves, and when the people commonly called Mormons were expelled from Ill. I came with them to Utah. So you see that I have been associated with the Latter Day Saints almost from the beginning.

As it regards wives, I must yield to you the palm. You say that you have had three lawful ones. I have but one wife, although I am a firm believer in plural marriage as set forth in the Bible. I know that it is believed by most people who live at a distance from Utah, that all men who embrace "Mormonism" must of necessity have more than one wife. There is no compulsion in this matter. I do not suppose that one in ten has more than one wife.

As it regards the religion of the Latter Day Saints, I can only give you some general principles in this small sheet. Firstly, we believe in repentance and baptism for the remission of sins, and the laying on of hands for the reception of the Holy Ghost, as taught by Christ and his apostles, as you will find recorded in the New Testament. We believe that every person thus baptized should live honest upright lives, keeping all the commandments of God blameless. We believe in the Constitution of our country, and in the doctrine set forth in the Declaration of Independence, that <sup>A</sup>All men are created free and equal,<sup>@</sup> and should be sustained in their rights both civil and religious. Every person should have full liberty of conscience, and act upon their own agency that they may give an account to God to whom alone are they accountable.

**P. 273  
1878**

We believe that the time for the second coming of our Savior draws near, as the signs that he predicted should precede his coming are plainly transpiring. Witness the wars and rumors of wars, and distress and perplexity among the nations, the frequency of earthquakes, tornadoes, tidal waves &etc. Now we believe that in order that the inhabitants of the earth might be warned and prepared for these things, the Lord sent His Angel to Joseph Smith, and committed to him the same priesthood which the ancient apostles held, with authority to preach the everlasting gospel to all nations, that the honest in heart might be gathered out therefrom and stand in places of safety until the judgments should pass over.

This is a brief statement of the religion of the Latter Day Saints. For a more detailed exposition of their religion I refer you to their Church publications. Please write again. Yours Respectfully Warren Foote.

The **20th of June** my son David and I started for St. George. We went by the way of Virgin City and took some flour to Joseph Sanders who lives six miles up North Creek. I had bought some apples of him the fall before. We went through Toquerville and Silver Reef, where I engaged for a two horse harness--price \$50.00 We put up in St. George with Charles Terry.

When I was in St. George last winter working in the Temple, I engaged a secretary of Bro. Ephraim Wilson. I took some flour down for him to pay for it. We staid in St. George one day and two nights. It was very hot. We started home by the way of Silver Reef with my secretary. It commenced raining after we got to Harrisburg but stopped before we got to Silver Reef. I got my harness and drove to Toquerville and staid over night with cousin Moses Clauson. We arrived home the second day after leaving Toquerville, and found there had been considerable rain in Long Valley.

I received a letter in May from my Niece Louisa Wagoner, my sister Irene's daughter. She sent me her family record and also her brother's and sister's which are recorded in the "Book of Family Records." I also got a letter from R. S. Davis from Greenwood N. Y. and some other letters in answer to my enquiries with regard to my mother's genealogy. I did not learn much from these.

My son Franklin took up some land below Hillsdale joining Minchey's and staid with his father in law.

I did not get any letters from Ammon and Charley this year, but I got one from Olive in answer to the one I wrote March 25. It was dated Apr. She wrote that she had concluded to stay there a year so she can get a divorce from B. Minchey. I wrote her a very lengthy answer advising her to come home and prepare to help me to work in the Temple. I think her mother's influence has prevailed over her.

I do not think of any thing worthy of note that transpired this year to record more than I have written. So I will bid **adieu to 1878.**

## CHAPTER 19

P. 274  
1879

Last October I commenced keeping the mail contractor's horses and giving the mail carriers their dinners. It is a daily mail from Richfield to Kanab. James Farmer is subcontractor and he has let this part of the route from Marysvale to Kanab, to John Mathis and Jacob Minchey. My son Franklin seems to be in with J. Minchey. He comes occasionally with the mail. The mail from Kanab and Panquitch meets here at noon and then returns same day to each place. I do not think that they are making much.

About **Jan 8th** I received a letter from my Nephew, **Warren H. Ferguson, My sister Almira's son**, as follows.  
**Marysvale Piute Co. Jan. 5th 1879**

Dear Uncle and Aunt;

After so long a silence, I take this opportunity to write to you. We are all well excepting bad colds.

We have had two daughter since I have written to you. The eldest we call Almira. She was three years old last April, and dont talk yet. She had a severe sick spell when she was one year old. I don't know whether she-will ever talk or not. The doctors called the disease the Brain Getus. The other girls name is Clarissa Augusta. She is a big smart girl seven months old. We are getting along very well.

I am working in the mine for \$3.50 per day. The mine is small only a prospect yet. There is not much news to write. I have not had a letter from my folks this winter. The last time I wrote to you we did not agree about the order. I think we will agree better now. I heard that you soon got enough of it. I am glad you did, for your children's sakes. I knew Aunt Sidnie's spunk would not stand it long, for which I give her credit.

Now we will suppose that the order runs as it is running for a hundred years, what kind of folks would they be, marrying so young and abusing human nature. Their heads will not be as good a shape as baboons or monkeys, besides they are slaves. I love freedom. I am a freeborn American, and claim all of the rights of a free man. I don't want any one to tell me what I shall do, or what not to do or dictate to my children, except in school.

Give my love to aunt Sidnie and David and his family--to Nancy and family, and all the rest of your children. Elizabeth and the children sends their love to you all. We would like to see you all. Write soon. From your Nephew **Warren Ferguson**.

This is the first letter I got from him since we worked in the United Order. He is not much of a believer in religion, and I fear will go to ruin.

I have been writing to my old acquaintances, and relatives in the east and after receiving answers **I wrote to my brother George** giving him such information as I had obtained from them, **and received the following answer.**

**"Ypsilanti, Mich. Feb. 26th 1879.**

P. 275  
1879

"Dear Brother Warren;

Yours of the 12<sup>th</sup> inst, received today, and I was right glad to hear from you. I have no excuse for not writing to you before. Your letter before this last one, I prized very highly. It gave me information in regard to our old neighbors, and relatives that was just what I wished for. I will write you a short letter now, and send you our Photos, and soon see if I can do better, though you know I never was much on letter writing, and writing so many business letters does not improve me for letter writing.

Well we are in about the same condition we were when we commenced life together. We are alone this winter, in a large house,--have a large coal stove that warms parlor, dining room and two rooms in the chamber where we sleep, and bedroom below, when we have company. I have my office in the house, that I have a wood stove in.

Our boys are all married and gone. Charles E. and George E. moved to Battle Creek one hundred miles west of here. And Frank S. was married last April and lives twelve miles south of here. So you see we are alone again.

We are quite well, although we have had severe colds. I had mine in December. It did not take much fat off of me. I was weighed two or three weeks ago, and weighed 179,--more than I ever weighed before.

Morning of the 27th." There has been a great many deaths all over the country this winter. We have a cold winter,--it set in the last days of November. The frost has not gone out of the ground since. We have had excellent sleighing. The thermometer has been down to 14 below zero. This morning it is down to five below. It is the coldest since Dec. It is a

clear fine morning, and looks as though it will spoil the sleighing. I hope you will not get discouraged, but continue to write. We send our love to all our friends. Your affectionate brother, **George L. Foote.**"

My brother George is an agent for the Michigan Mutual Life Insurance Company. I generally have to write two or three letters to him before he writes to me.

In February I wrote to my second cousin **Moses F. Clauson**, in **answer** he writes as follows

**"Salem, Iowa. March 9th 1879.**

Dear Cousin Warren, Yours of Feb. last has just come to hand. I will try to write a few lines to you tonight. The clock has just struck nine, but I will try to answer your kind letter. I was glad to hear from you, and that you were well. I should like to go and see you very much, but see no chance yet. The times are very hard, and men in all pursuits of life are going under every day, and I have all I can do to weather the storm, but hope I will be able too if the times get no worse.

You had not written to me any thing about our cousins in Penn. I do not know enough about my cousins on mother's side to form any idea who they are.

I would like to see you, and had thought I should have done so, but instead of making money lately I have lost enough to have made quite a number of visits.

I have been hearing from Frank Allen. He has been here twice, once, a year ago last fall, and again last fall soon after I visited him. We have had the coldest winter I ever saw in this country--had sleighing six weeks. It is turning quite warm now. The snow is all gone and I expect to go to plowing in a few days if it keeps warm and dry.

**P. 276  
1879**

Give my love to all enquiring friends. Your Cousin **Moses F. Clauson.**"

About the same time that I received the foregoing letter, I received one from my bro. David, dated  
**Flint, Michigan, March 16th 1879.**

"Dear Brother Warren; I received your letter dated Feb. 12th, about one week ago, and was very glad to hear from you. It had been so long a time since I heard from you, that I began to be quite anxious to know you were, and I thought for a long time I would write to you, but kept putting it off from time to time, until I was almost ashamed to write at all.

We are all very well at present. My health has been much better for the last year or two than it was a few years before. Our Children are all living in this city, and are well, except Mary. She is having a bad cold, which I hope will be better soon. She is rather slender and has a family of five very nice children--three girls and two boys. Her husband --Charles Muma,-- is a traveling agent for a Detroit house. Warren is still in the picture business and doing very well. Albert still remains single and boards with us. He is in the Boot and Shoe business. Willie is married and has one child a bright little girl.

We have had a steady cold winter from about Christmas until the first of March when the snow all went off, and it has been so warm that the robins have come, but I think they made a mistake, as the last three days have been very cold. There has been quite an amount of sickness this winter from colds, which is unusual when we have such steady cold weather as we have had this winter.

You wrote that you wanted me to send you a record of my children's families. We will get them and send them to you soon.

Give my love to your family and all our friends, and accept a share yourself. Please write as soon as you receive this, and I will try and do better. From your affectionate **Brother David Foote.**"

I got a **letter from my niece Louisa Wagoner** about the same time I got David's. I will copy a small extract.

It is dated **Montpelier March 17th 1879.**

After writing about the cold winter and other matters she writes, "Mother says, Aunt Laura's oldest child's name was Lucinda, and George was the next. She don't know anything about the dates of their births, but Lucinda was three month younger than Uncle David.

She says tell you she is pretty well this winter for her, and she would like to see you very much, but don't expect to in this world, but thinks she will in the next. She says, if she could write she could tell you a great deal, says she has not forgotten you, and I think I have not either. I used to think Uncle Warren was about right.

Mother wants to know if you know anything about aunt Almira's children, and aunt Betsey's also. She sends her love to Aunt and children and yourself. Give my love to your family and receive a good share your self. Enclosed you will find a likeness of mother taken when she was up in Mich. eleven years ago. She looks some older now. We would like to have one from you. Please write soon. I remain your affectionate niece **Louisa Wagoner.**"

**P. 277** As I received several letters about this time from various sources, I will continue to copy. The following is **from my**  
**1879** **second cousin Helen Riser,-- daughter of Elihu Allen by his wife Loly Clauson.**

**Centerville, Alameda Co. California, March 2nd 1879**

"Dear Cousin Warren;

I received your welcome letter, and was glad that you had not forgotten me. We are all as well as usual, except bad colds. I have hardly been able to speak aloud for the last two weeks, but am getting better now. It has been a bad winter for colds here, almost every one has one in this place. I have had company from Oakland ever since I received your letter and could not answer before.

I have not heard from Franklin Allen for several years. I have written to him, but got no answers to my letters. Is he still at Bertram? Caroline is in Los Angelos Cal. Elihu is at or near Ogden Utah. Phebe is at Promontory Station Utah. I do not know where John is. Joseph is in this country. Laura is dead, been dead eight years next June. She left four girls (they are all married) and two boys. We have not heard from Samuel Myers in a long time. My son Frankie wrote to him and did not get any answer to his letter, and did not write any more, as Samuel wrote that he was going away, and we supposed that he had. When you write to him give him our kind regards and say that we would like to hear from him.

We have six children living, three boys and three girls. We have lost two boys. Our youngest is six years old. I shall be 51 years old the 23rd day of next June.

How old are you and Sidnie. John, my husband is four years older than I am. Yes Warren you say truly when you say we are getting old, and it is not very likely that we will be here much longer, but as you say, I hope that we will go to a better and happier place.

Is Almira Ferguson alive yet? Tell Sidnie that I have not got any picture now, but will send her one as soon as I can. I would like one of yours and hers. Nothing more at present. My best love and kind regards to you and Sidnie, Write soon, and dont wait six years again. If you do I may not be here to answer it. From your cousin, **Helen Riser.**"

I received a letter from my **Nephew Warren McLean** dated **Apr. 1st 1879** in answer to one that I had written to him about two years before. I wanted his fathers family record, which he sent to me. It will be found in the "Family Records." He says that the old schoolhouse where I went to school is still standing although it has been greatly repaired.

In Apr. I received a letter from my niece **Caroline M. Weeks** dated at **Green Meadows Los Angelos Co. Cal. Apr 10th 1879.** She gave me her family record, and says that she would like very much to see me.

I have written to different ones by the name of Lane in order to ascertain some information with regard to my mothers genealogy.

Sometime in May, I received the following **letter from Emma T. Wetherell, Norton, Mass. Dated Apr. 30th 1879**

"Warren Foote, Dear Sir,

Your letter came duly to hand. It should have been answered at once. I fully intended to have done so, but must plead sickness and additional cares and labors in consequence. There is no Genealogy (of the Lane Family) but there is a kind of Table, or Outline which Judge Lane of Illinois (whose son Dr. E. S. Lane resides in Chicago, 745 Michigan Avenue) made out some years ago. I presume he would willingly lend you a copy, and possibly could spare one for you to keep. He sent one to the Lane family here and it has been in the care of our President. We hope some one will write a good Genealogy of the Lanes, as it is a large family, and its older members are fast leaving us.

**P. 278**  
**1879**

We had yesterday the sad news of the death of our respected President Augustus Lane. He resided at the Old Allen Lane place, where we have held our annual family gatherings, so that we do not know as we will be able to get together this year.

My mother was Harriet Lane, and Daughter of William Lane and Grand-daughter of Ephraim Lane, and Great

Granddaughter of Col. Ephraim Lane a descendant of John Lane, who is supposed to have been a brother of William Lane of Dorchester who you say is your ancestor.

My mother is Postmistress, has held that position 23 years this month,—she succeeded my father who was P. M. for a good many years, up to the time of his death. Mother has been very sick for nearly five weeks, thus adding to my cares, both in nursing her and taking her place in the office, this is one reason why I did not attend to your note sooner. Hope you will be successful if you attempt a Genealogy—don't know as you intend to only had an idea that way. Very Respectfully Yours.  
**Emma T. Wetherell.**"

In July I received a **letter from our old Greenwood neighbor Redman S. Davis**, from it I extract a portion. It is dated June 24th 1879.

"There has been three Methodist Churches built at Andover (A town west of Greenwood) in the last 45 years. The last one is built of brick, with parlors, session, and cook-rooms. Last Christmas the Masons hired a hall close by, and went to the church for supper. The young folks took the Mason Hall and danced all night, and took their suppers at the Church. Those who could not dance, or would not, staid at the Church and did what they chose to do. Alonzo Porter heard the Methodist Minister say, they might as well have the profits of the whole thing as other people. Now what would our Methodist people thought of this 50 years ago? It would have been denounced the worst kind. What is religion in one age is looked upon with distrust in the next age."

In Aug. I got a **letter from my Niece Nancy Augusta Tanner**. It contained her family record and also her brother Isaac Ferguson's. In the forepart of Sept. I received a letter from my Niece Louisa Wagoner from which I extract.

**Montpelier Iowa Aug. 24th 1879**

"Dear Uncle;

P. 279  
1879 I will try to answer your letter after so long a time. We are all well except Emory. He turned over with a load of barley six weeks ago and broke his leg. He gets around some on crutches now. I think that mother's health is not as good as last spring, the hot weather does not agree with her very well. We had a cold dry spring, but rains came on and crops came along pretty well after all.

"Sept 30. I will try to finish this letter. As I got to writing one of the neighbors came in and I thought I never would get at it again. We are all well as usual and hope these few lines will find you and yours the same. The friends are all well as far as I know. It has been dry and cool here since the middle of Aug. but no frost till night before last. Today it is warmer.

My son Henry has sold out here, and I am going back home to Ill. between this and next March but I will write and let you know when.+++++

You say you would like to have my sister write. She has got to be almost as careless as I am about writing. Emery hardly ever writes to any body. If I could sit down and write as you can, and put a letter together so it would sound any how, I would not care, but I don't write often enough to keep in practice.

O how mother and myself would like to see you, but there is a long road between us.

Emery's foot or ankle does not get along very well. The bone has got well, but the ankle is lame. The Doctor thinks he sprained it.

Well I don't think of any thing more. So love to all and keep a share for yourself. I remain Your **Niece Loisa Wagoner.**"  
**In answer to the foregoing letter** I wrote the following:

**Glendale Kane Co. Utah Oct. 12th 1879**

Dear Niece;

Your letter dated Aug 24 and Sept 30th, arrived a few days ago, I am glad to learn that you are all alive. I did not know but you had passed away I was so long in getting an answer. I and my family are all well as usual. We have had a terrible dry season here. The ground has not been thoroughly wet for a year. Grass is all dried up on our range, and considerable stock has perished in some places. Crops in this valley are about an average, excepting potatoes. I have about one third of a crop of them. I have not heard any thing from any of our connection since I wrote last.

Well Louisa I had a very peculiar dream last night. It is very seldom that I pay any attention to dreams, but this has made such an impression on my mind I thought that I would write it for you.

I dreamed that I was in possession of the old homestead in Dryden, and your Aunt and my eldest daughter (Nancy) and one of her little children started out for a walk, and I went directly to a ravine on the farm, with which I used to be very familiar as there was a spring and elm trees, and some dogwood &etc.

When we arrived at the ravine I thought it all looked natural. I went directly to the spring--the water was clear and beautiful. I looked and saw a stairway, the foot of which was at the spring. This surprised me very much. They looked very old and dilapidated.

**P. 280**  
**1879** I began to ascend them very cautiously and got within a step or two of the top, and looking around I saw my wife coming up. I told her that the stairs might break with the weight of both of us, and she had not better come up until I was off, but she came on and was by my side before I got the words out of my mouth. At the top of the stairs I found a door which I opened and went in, followed by your aunt. I found it to be an old workshop which had been occupied by your father and your uncle David many years ago. (I thought that I knew that your father was dead.)

I began to examine the room. There stood the work bench at which your father had worked; and under the bench I found a handaxe, which I thought had been his. I turned around and saw a barrel full of corn meal. I put my hand in to it and examined the meal, and said to your aunt, this meal is as good as it was the day it was ground.

At the southwest of the room was another work bench where I thought that your uncle David had worked. The floor of the room was covered thick with shavings and rubbish. On the north side of the room I found potatoes covered over with rubbish. I saw that they were good.

By this time I thought there were several persons standing around on the outside of the building on the north side, with whom I was acquainted.

I looked to the south side of the room and saw smoke issuing from the shavings. I seized upon a vessel I found there and ran down the stairs for water. The vessel was small and I could get but little water at a time, but I succeeded in putting out the fire at that place, but I saw smoke arising at the south west corner. I looked around and saw an old wooden pail. I grabbed it, and ran down stairs again for water. I threw it on the fire, but it had got down under the end of the joist and the water did not reach it.

I spoke to a young man, (whom I know very well) to run and get some more water. He did so, but I thought that he was gone a long time, I looked and he had passed the spring and gone to a little brook a little way off.

I pulled up a piece of the floor and throwed the water on the fire and put it out. I then went to the east side of the room where I saw smoke rising again, and turning around I saw smoke arising from the shavings all over the south portion of the room. I began to despair of putting it out at all, and I thought that if the building burned it would catch a large barn that stood a short distance north of it.

I said to the young man "run down to the foot of the stairs and hand up water from the spring, and I will stand at the head and take it and we will do all we can to put out the fire." We done so, and I throwed water all over the shavings to wet them so that no more of them would ignite, and we finally made out to extinguish all the fire.

I then went to examine those potatoes again, and turning to those standing by on the outside, I said to them. These potatoes were raised by my father more than forty years ago, and they are as fresh and as good, as though they were just dug. Just at this time my son George came up and I said to him. "George see here is the kind of potatoes they raised when I was a boy." -I thought they were what we used to call the flesh colored potatoes.

**P. 281**  
**1879** I thought I looked down to the ground on the out side of the building and there stood my brother-in-law Hiram McLean, and he asked me for some of the potatoes. I told him that I wanted to save them to plant. He said that was what he wanted of them. I gave him two or three for that purpose. (He has been dead for some years.) I thought that I was very choice of them. I now thought that it would be best to clean out the shop so that it would not catch a fire again.

I then went out and started to go some place with my son David, and went a short distance, when I stopped and said to him, "I am afraid that that fire is not thoroughly extinguished and if I go away it will catch again and burn up the building, and on looking around I saw smoke which looked as though it came from the southeast corner of the building.

I ran back, and up the stairs into the room, and found my son George there with two or three other persons, who had

cleaned the room thoroughly. The floor was neat and clean. The smoke that I had seen came from a chimney of another building east of the shop. I thought that we were all astonished and wondered how the potatoes and meal could have been preserved through upwards of forty years.

It seemed that no person had ever entered the shop since your father left it. I felt very proud of the handax because it had been your father's. Thus ends my dream. Write soon. I remain your affectionate Uncle **Warren Foote**.

About one year ago I bought two swarms of bees of Wm. McAlister, Kanab and two this fall of Bro Standerford, Kanab. I with my wife went to Kanab on the 24th day of Oct to get them. We staid over night with bro. E. Pugh. We returned the 25th.

Our first frost this fall was on the night of the 8th of Oct. and about the 12th there was a little snow.

**Oct. 31st**, My wife started for St. George with Homer A. Bouton (my son-in-law) with his family. She goes to take care of their children while they do some work in the Temple.

**Nov. 2nd**. No meeting to day. Yesterday I got a **letter from my niece Caroline Weeks**, and answered it today. She lives in Green Meadows, near Los Angeles Cal. Her letter is dated Oct. 17th 1879. She writes that they are all well. After giving me some information about her children's family records she says, "I would like to see you and talk over old times. Corie, (her daughter) and I often talk of you. When she named her baby boy they could not find a name pretty enough for him, and I says name him Warren. Her husband liked the name as well as Corie did, so they named him Warren Frank. William and Willie join with me in sending love and well wishes to you all. Good Bye, Your affectionate Niece, **Caroline M. Weeks**."

**P. 282** **Nov. 7th** The weather has been very fine until today the wind blows strong and cold from the northeast. There has not  
**1879** been any storm for over a year to wet the ground more than an inch or two. Crops in this valley was about an average excepting potatoes. They are about one third of a crop. I raised about 110 bushels. We had about 80 bus. of wheat. Our fruit was all killed last spring excepting a few apples.

Today I wrote letters to my brothers David and George also one to Moses F. Clauson my second cousin who lives in Salem, Iowa.

**8th** Snowing today. I wrote a letter to my Nephew Darius S. Clement who lives in Fairview Sanpete Co. Utah.

I borrowed a paper of one of my neighbors published by Joseph Smith Pres. of the Reorganized Church. In it was a republication of **Oliver Cowdery's letter** giving an account of Joseph Smith's obtaining the records of the Book of Mormon &etc. I extract the following from it.

"It is necessary to premise in this account by relating the situation of the public mind relative to religion at this time. One Mr. Lane a presiding elder of the Methodist Episcopal Church visited Palmira and vicinity. Elder Lane was a talented man, possessing a good share of literary endowments and apparent humility. There was a great awakening or excitement raised on the subject of religion, and much enquiry for the word of life. Large additions were made to the Methodist, Presbyterians, and Baptist Churches. Mr. Lane's manner of communication was peculiarly calculated to awaken the intellect of the hearer, and arouse the sinner to look about him for safety. Much good instruction was always drawn from his discourses on the scriptures, and in common with others our brother's (Joseph Smith's) mind became awakened."

This Mr. Lane is **my mother's brother, George Lane**. He was a very noted preacher and subsequently was appointed a General Agent of the Methodist Book Concern in New York City.

**Nov. 9th Sunday**. It snowed all day.

**10th** This morning the snow is about 8 inches deep, and very wet and melting. Homer A. Bouton camped last night at the head of four mile Kanion on his return from St. George. He came in on horseback for help to bring in his wagon. Snow is about one foot on the hill. They got in at half past four P. M.

**11th** There is no mail from the north this week yet. Some stormy yet.

**12th** I wrote to Bro. James Farmer Sub Mail contractor with regard to the mail. It cleared off warm and the snow is mostly gone. Shelled 10 bus corn.

**14th** My son George and I went to Kanab. It is clear and pleasant. We staid over night with Bro. E. Pugh. Got two pair of shoes for Artemisia and Clarissa.

**15th** Returned home. Left Kanab at 11 o'clock A. M. and got home at seven P. M. I have a severe cold. We have had only one mail from the North this week.

**P. 283**  
**1879**  
**16th** The wind blows very cold from the north. Bro **Jacob Hamblin** and **Charles S. Cram** came and **staid over night**. The north mail came in about four o'clock. The carrier reports that the roads are very muddy.

**17th** I let Bro. Cram have five bushels of corn. Very cold winds from the north.

**18th** Pleasant today. The mail got here from the north about half past five.

**19th** **Morton B. Cutler** started for Salt Lake City this morning. It is warm & pleasant.

**20th** **Bro. Shimmin** my old fellow laborer in the Cottonwood Mill 20 years ago called on me today. I had not seen him for fifteen years, and did not know him at first. He has been down in Arizona two years, now returning home.

**21st** Bro. **Robert Marshall** moved out of my house across the creek, going to Mt. Carmel

**22nd** I sold R. Shimin 50 lbs flour for \$1.75 also bought two oak barrels for three bushels corn. My health is very poorly yet. I received a letter from Olive today.

**23rd** Sidnie and I went to our daughter Irene's and took dinner, and then went to meeting. George went to Cutler's sheep herd and got a fat sheep for Franklin.

**24th** I bought 13 gal. of molasses,--paid 4-1/2 bus. of potatoes, 100 lbs corn and 170 lbs flour for the molasses and barrel.

**26th** Snowy and cold winds from the south. Priesthood meeting tonight.

**27th** It snowed about three inches last night. Clear this morning. Snow gone by night.

**28th** I received a letter from sister **Mary Foote** brother **David's** wife. Her letter is dated Nov. 19th 1879 at Flint Mich. After giving me a family record of their children's families she writes.

"My health has been quite poor the last year and a half. David's health has been very good for him until In Sept. he went to Ypsilanti to visit Bro, George, and when returning home, when at Wayne station he jumped off the cars and got pretty bruised on his head and face, besides being jarred all over, and three or four days after, he took cold which settled in his back and hips, and he had the sciatic rheumatism. We feared he was laid up for the winter, but he is better and able to work again.

George and his wife were well when he was there. Their children are all married and gone from them. Charlie and Evelyn live in Battle Creek this state, and Frank is west somewhere. Charlie's youngest child died the 8th of this month of diphtheria. We have not heard from sister Irene for sometime. When you write please let us know where she is now. ++++ How far and in what direction is Glendale from Salt Lake City?

It is snowing this evening. In July and August it was very dry here, but this fall we have plenty of rain. In Sept it was unusually wet for the time of year. After that we had summer weather all through October. Wheat never was so large as it is now in the fall. The farmers have had to turn their cattle and sheep on it to pasture it. **Mary Foote.**"

I received a paper today from brother George giving an account of the death of his grandson as stated in Mary's letter. He was five years old.

**P. 284**  
**1879**  
**30th** Bro Samuel Mulliner who crossed the Plains in my company, having joined the United Order at Orderville, came up to see us. He and Bro. H. Spencer preached at our meeting this afternoon. Mulliner is very enthusiastic on the Order. Bro=s Webb and Esplin were also present and talked to us.

**Dec. 2nd** It is very pleasant. I sowed some wheat today.

**5th** Elders H. Lunt from Cedar and Jesse N Smith from Arizona and Adams from Parowan came into town this after noon and held meeting this evening in our schoolhouse. They gave us some good instruction.

**6th** Our **quarterly conference** commenced at **Orderville**. H. A. Bouton and I went down. Elders Lunt, Smith and Adams, edified the people very much. The Bishops gave very good reports of their wards. Conference was well attended.

**7th Sunday**. Went to conference again, The weather is very pleasant. The spirit of the Lord seemed to be poured out upon the preachers and hearers. All the authorities of the Church and of this Stake were unanimously sustained.

**8th** We killed our hogs today. It was squally and disagreeable. Turned cold at night.

**9th** This is a very cold day Spent the day transcribing my journal for 1840.

**10th** I received **letters from Samuel Myers, Moses F. Clauson, and James Farmer**. After giving me an account of his circumstances &etc M. F. Clauson writes. "I would like ever so much to see you. Your brothers and sister are all out here, it would be so nice to come by me and make us a visit. Is the railroad any nearer to you now? And how near is it? Is Uncle Moses Clauson still living? He must be quite feeble by this time I am fifty eight years old and he is twenty years older. How the years fly. It seems but a few years since you went to keeping house on Millcreek, Ill. Your wife was so young. I wonder if I would know her? I would like to see her so much. Give my love to her and your children. I suppose they are no longer children but fathers and mothers. Tell them of me and give them my love. Please let me hear from you often,-- I will try and answer all your letters, although I am a poor writer. Good bye for this time. I remain your **Cousin Moses F. Clauson**."

**15th** It is very warm and pleasant. My bees are flying lively.

**16th** My son Franklin came from Hillsdale last night and wants George to go and move him over here. They started this afternoon Wether pleasant

**18th** I got a letter from my Nephew Darius S. Clement. They are all well. I sent a letter to **President John Taylor** for information with regard to mothers baptism. As the administrator did not stand in the water I wanted to know if her baptism would be considered legal.

**20th Morton Cutler** got home from Salt Lake City. It commenced snowing about noon and rained and snowed all the after noon.

**21st** It is very cold. George got home just at dark. He says the snow is two and an half feet deep on the divide.

**22nd** No mail from the north. It came from Kanab, and mail carrier staid all night.

P. 285

**1879** **23rd** Snowed some last night. It is now about nine inches here.

**24th** This is a very cold day. Wind from the north.

**25th** I am sure that last night and the night before was the coldest we ever knew here. The Relief Society has a dance tonight. No mail from north or south.

**26th** The weather has moderated some, and looks like it would storm again.

**27th** Snowed all day. No mail from the north yet, and none from Kanab today.

**28th Sunday**. It snowed all last night and today. It is very bad on stock.

**29th** The snow is 2-1/2 feet here. A company has gone on the hill to hunt stock. It stopped snowing last night. Cleared off tonight.

**30th** This morning it is clear and cold. No mails from either way yet.

**31st** The days are clear and nights cold. Thus ends 1879 cold and dreary.

I will end the year by copying a **letter I got from my brother George** dated Dec. 7th 1876 in answer to my letter regarding the **Mountain Meadow Massacre**.

"Dear Brother Warren;

I have been very negligent in writing to you. I have so much correspondence on business, that I am likely to forget to write to my friends, and I am from home a great deal of the time. I was very much pleased to receive so long a letter from you, and am glad to learn that you are getting along so well, and am very much obliged for the information with regard to our old friends in York State. We are all quite well, my weight is one hundred and seventy to seventy four, so you see I must be in good health. David and family are usually well.

Now as to that Mountain Meadow Massacre. I have no doubt but some of the Mormons had a hand in it and ought to have been burned at the stake. But that the Mormon Church as a Church had any thing to do with it. I do not believe that they would uphold any thing so barbarous or so heathenous. But I do believe that the leaders and B. Young did know of it soon after it occurred if not at the time and ought to have punished the wretches for that horrible crime, and I have but little doubt but future history will hold the leaders of your Church responsible for that terrible deed. Your affectionate **Brother Geo. L. Foote**.

The **foregoing is in answer to a letter I wrote to him during the trial of J. D. Lee**. There was great excitement with regard to J. D. Lee's trial for the part he took in the **Mountain Meadow Massacre**. The News papers, generally were greatly exercised over it. After writing about other matters **I wrote as follows** with regard to the massacre.

The News papers generally seem to be terribly excited over the "Lee trial" and are getting very savage, on the Mormons, just as though the whole community participated in that savage butchery of the Mountain Meadows. Now would there not be just as much sense in saying that every individual in the United States was guilty in shedding the blood of innocent men women and children in Missouri, in Illinois and other places? Why was there not such a hue and cry made about the slaughter at Hauns Mill in Mo. Also the dastardly massacre of Joseph, and Hyrum Smith, and after that the slaughter of the old, the helpless, and infirm who were left in Nauvoo, who according to treaty stipulations with the mob were to remain there in peace until they could be helped away. "O" says these savage editors, "they were Mormons, that was all right, they are such fools as to believe God will fulfill his own words which he spate by the mouths of His prophets, they ought to be killed every one of them." This seems to be the feeling of a great portion of the Christian world.

P. 286  
1879

Now as regards the **Mountain Meadow massacre**, every Latter Day Saint considers it on a parallel with the Hauns Mill and the other Massacres I have named. Although many of the men in that company of emigrants were very insolent and threatened what they would do when they got to California, and boasting of the brutal deeds they were guilty of, in mobbing the Mormons in Mo. and Ill. it was no excuse for those who done the horrible deed.

No true Latter Day Saint would have imbrued his hands in their blood. This was, and is now, the feelings of President B. Young, and all the authorities of the Church, and every Latter Day Saint. I well remember when the news reached us at Salt Lake, how every individual I conversed with condemned it as a most barbarous and savage act. And those individuals who were suspected of participating in the deed, were, and ever have been looked upon as murderers, and the guilty ones will have to atone for the act either in this life or the next, "Well" you may ask, "Why were they not brought to justice at that time?" You will remember that a hostile army were in our borders, for the avowed purpose of annihilating the Mormons,--in fact for the purpose of committing the same like deed that was committed at the Mountain Meadows, and the whole Territory were engaged in preparing to defend ourselves as best we could.

So you see that it was no time to hunt up criminals who were 300 miles from Salt Lake City on the frontiers and who could skulk away among the Indians, and mountain fastnesses at any time.

After peace was restored, and Governor Cummings with a new set of Judges were installed in office, President Young offered to use all his power and influence to assist in bringing the criminals to justice.

Judge Cradlebaugh with a guard of soldiers went through a farce of a trial at Provo, but when he found that he could not wring in B. Young and other notable men as aiders and abettors in the murders he adjourned his court and raised the hue and cry that justice could not be administered in Utah. What more could he have wanted?

P. 287

Right here was the "flower of the American Army" at his elbow and the authorities of the Church to assist in ferreting out and bringing to punishment the criminals. Now I ask whose fault is it that they have never been brought to justice? There

has never been the least obstacle thrown in the way by the Mormons, notwithstanding the reports of the lying Judges that we have been cursed with. As it regards Lee's guilt or innocence I can not say.

I will send you a copy of the Deseret News, containing the plea of Lawyer Sutherland, (Lee's council) to the jury, which I want you to read and judge for yourself. (Sutherland is a non Mormon.) It has been generally believed that Philip Klingensmith was a ring leader in the affair.

There is another thing that our enemies are making a great blow about,--that is Blood Atonement as they are pleased to call it. I would ask does not the whole world believe in blood atonement, whether they be civilized or uncivilized. Where is there a nation on the earth but what has incorporated in their laws that the murderer must atone for the murder committed with his life. That is what we believe, and as the scripture says, "He that shedeth man's blood by man shall his blood be shed." And furthermore we believe that there is no forgiveness for a shedder of innocent blood in this world neither the world to come. No matter how much a priest may pray over them on the gallows,--no matter how much the culprit may profess to have received a forgiveness of his sin,--no matter how much he expects to soon be wafted into the presence of Jesus, he is deceiving himself, he will wake up in hell having a clear consciousness of the awful guilt resting upon him, and will learn that the blood of Christ makes no atonement for his sin. This is what the Latter Day Saints believe in regard to blood atonement. What is there so dreadfully criminal in believing it.

And again, where is there a true Latter Day Saint, believing as we do, that would put forth his hand to take the life of any human being except in self defense? There is none. It is only the "Bill Hickman" stripe who in erlier days infested this Territory that commits these bloody deeds. And the "ringites" in Salt Lake City with the Rev. Mr. Lyford of Provo belong to the same clan who would delight to see every "Mormon's" throat cut from ear to ear.

Why is it that they are so intent in trying to destroy this community? Why is it that they are continually crying out "Crucify the Mormons, annihilate them, they are not fit to live &etc? What evil have we done? I am not conscious of doing any thing very criminal. I do not steal nor take the name of God in vain. I have never shed the blood of man nor consented to the shedding of innocent blood. I do not seek to take the advantage of my fellow beings in cheating and defrauding them. I have never committed whoredom, nor lusted after my neighbor's wives. Neither have the foregoing sins been taught or countenanced in this Church of Christ, but directly the opposite.

The word of God is strict against all who do these things. The love of God dwelleth not in them neither have thee the fear of God before their eyes. There have been such characters in the Church, whose deeds, as soon as made manifest, have been cut off from it, and then they have turned against us, and fain would make all the world believe that we are the guilty ones. Say they, "The Mormons are the ones that murder, steal commit adultery, and that break the laws@ &etc. AO yes,@ say they, "We are innocent, we are honorable, we are upright, and it is because of our righteousness that the Mormon Church has cut us off and persecute us.@ This is their cry and it is echoed and reechoed by editors of the various papers throughout the length and breadth of the whole world.

**P. 288  
1879**

Of this class is Bill Hickman as big a cut throat as ever went unhung. He has caused the destruction of many a promising youth in leading them to steal and other wicked acts. One of cousin Moses Clauson's sons, a promising boy was led astray by his gang and finally was shot down like a dog.

All such characters are cut off from this Church as fast as their deeds become known. And all who teach or practice any thing that is evil, or any thing that is contrary to the principle of truth, virtue, integrity, purity and holiness before the Lord, will be cut off if they do not repent and forsake their sins. God will not wink at these iniquities. He cannot look upon such sins with the least degree of allowance. O how straight is the gate and narrow is the way that leads to eternal life and as the Savior says, "few there be that find it.

Now George I cannot think for a moment that you believe that I am guilty of the heinous acts that we as a people are accused of. You cannot believe that I have become so degraded as to be associated with such an awful abominable set as we are represented to be by our enemies. No, I do not believe any such thing, but thinking that perhaps you might be somewhat influenced by the falsehoods that are going the rounds of the press, I felt impressed to make a plain statement of facts to you.

Our Motto is "Peace on earth and good will to man." Freedom of conscience to all, and loyalty to the Constitution of the United States. And when you hear of any body charging us with any acts contrary to this you may set them down as liars.

The foregoing letters should have been copied in this journal for the year of 1876. But having been mislaid, I found

them among my letters for 1879. Considering them worth preserving I deemed it a fit place to insert them at the end of this book.

**John D. Lee** was sentenced to be shot, which sentence was executed (on the spot where the massacre occurred) on the 23rd day of March 1877.